CONTENTS

Full Cisco Trademarks with Software License

CHAPTER 1

Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels

Restrictions for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

Restrictions and Guidelines for Reversible Password Types

Restrictions and Guidelines for Irreversible Password Types

Information About Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

Preventing Unauthorized Access

Default Password and Privilege Level Configuration

Additional Password Security

Password Recovery

Terminal Line Telnet Configuration

Username and Password Pairs

Privilege Levels

AES Password Encryption and Master Encryption Keys

How to Configure Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password

Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption

Disabling Password Recovery

Setting a Telnet Password for a Terminal Line

Configuring Username and Password Pairs

Setting the Privilege Level for a Command

Changing the Default Privilege Level for Lines

Logging in to and Exiting a Privilege Level

Configuring an Encrypted Preshared Key

Monitoring Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges
Login Authentication Using Group Name 29

PPP Authentication Using AAA 29
PPP Authentication Using Kerberos 29
PPP Authentication Using Local Password 29
PPP Authentication Using Group RADIUS 30
PPP Authentication Using Group TACACS 30
PPP Authentication Using Group Name 30

AAA Scalability for PPP Requests 31

ARAP Authentication Using AAA 31
ARAP Authentication Allowing Authorized Guest Logins 31
ARAP Authentication Allowing Guest Logins 32
ARAP Authentication Using Line Password 32
ARAP Authentication Using Local Password 32
ARAP Authentication Using Group RADIUS 32
ARAP Authentication Using Group TACACS 32
ARAP Authentication Using a Group Name 33

NASI Authentication Using AAA 33
NASI Authentication Using Enable Password 33
NASI Authentication Using Group RADIUS 33
NASI Authentication Using Group TACACS 34
NASI Authentication Using Line Password 34
NASI Authentication Using Local Password 34
NASI Authentication Using Group Name 34

Specifying the Amount of Time for Login Input 35

Password Protection at the Privileged Level 35

Changing the Text Displayed at the Password Prompt 35

Double Authentication of PPP Sessions 35
 HOW Double Authentication Works 36
 Accessing the User Profile After Double Authentication 37

CHAP or PAP Authentication 37
 Enabling PPP Encapsulation 38
 Enabling PAP or CHAP 39
 Inbound and Outbound Authentication 39
 Enabling Outbound PAP Authentication 40
Contents

Refusing PAP Authentication Requests 40
Creating a Common CHAP Password 40
Refusing CHAP Authentication Requests 40
Delaying CHAP Authentication Until Peer Authenticates 40
Using MS-CHAP 41
Domain Stripping 41
How to Configure Authentication 42
Configuring Login Authentication Using AAA 42
Configuring PPP Authentication Using AAA 44
Configuring ARAP Authentication Using AAA 45
Configuring NASI Authentication Using AAA 47
Preventing an Access Request with a Blank Username from Being Sent to the RADIUS Server 49
Configuring Message Banners for AAA Authentication 50
Configuring a Login Banner 50
Configuring a Failed-Login Banner 51
Configuring AAA Packet of Disconnect 52
Configuring Double Authentication 53
    Enabling Automated Double Authentication 54
Configuring Domain Stripping at the Server Group Level 56
Configuring Non-AAA Authentication Methods 57
    Configuring Line Password Protection 57
    Establishing Username Authentication 58
    Defining PPP Authentication Using MS-CHAP 60
Configuration Examples for Authentication 61
    Example: Configuring Method Lists 61
    Example: RADIUS Authentication 63
    Example: TACACS Authentication 65
    Example: Kerberos Authentication 66
    Example: AAA Scalability 66
    Example: Configuring Login and Failed-Login Banners for AAA Authentication 67
    Example: AAA Packet of Disconnect Server Key 68
    Example: Double Authentication 68
        Example: Configuration of the Local Host for AAA with Double Authentication 68
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Accounting Methods</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Accounting Types</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Accounting</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXEC Accounting</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Accounting</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Accounting</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Accounting</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Accounting</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Accounting Enhancements</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Session MIB</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Attribute-Value Pairs</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Configure AAA Accounting</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring AAA Accounting Using Named Method Lists</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppressing Generation of Accounting Records for Null Username Sessions</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generating Interim Accounting Records</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring an Alternate Method to Enable Periodic Accounting Records</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generating Interim Service Accounting Records</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generating Accounting Records for a Failed Login or Session</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Accounting NETWORK-Stop Records Before EXEC-Stop Records</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppressing System Accounting Records over Switchover</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring AAA Resource Failure Stop Accounting</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring AAA Resource Accounting for Start-Stop Records</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establishing a Session with a Device if the AAA Server Is Unreachable</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring Accounting</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting Accounting</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Examples for AAA Accounting</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Configuring a Named Method List</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Configuring AAA Resource Accounting</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Configuring AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Configuring per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: AAA Session MIB</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Information about RADIUS  134
RADIUS and Switch Access  134
RADIUS Overview  134
RADIUS Operation  135
RADIUS Change of Authorization  136
  Change-of-Authorization Requests  137
  CoA Request Response Code  139
  CoA Request Commands  140
Default RADIUS Configuration  142
RADIUS Server Host  142
RADIUS Login Authentication  143
AAA Server Groups  143
AAA Authorization  143
RADIUS Accounting  143
Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes  144
Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication  155
How to Configure RADIUS  155
  Identifying the RADIUS Server Host  155
  Configuring RADIUS Login Authentication  157
  Defining AAA Server Groups  159
  Configuring RADIUS Authorization for User Privileged Access and Network Services  160
  Starting RADIUS Accounting  161
  Configuring Settings for All RADIUS Servers  162
  Configuring the Device to Use Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes  163
  Configuring the Device for Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication  164
  Configuring CoA on the Device  165
  Monitoring CoA Functionality  167
  Feature History for RADIUS  167

CHAPTER 9

RADIUS Server Load Balancing  169
  Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing  169
  Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing  169
  Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing  170
  RADIUS Server Load Balancing Overview  170
Contents

Transaction Load Balancing Across RADIUS Server Groups 170
RADIUS Server Status and Automated Testing 171
How to Configure RADIUS Server Load Balancing 172
  Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group 172
  Troubleshooting RADIUS Server Load Balancing 172
Configuration Examples for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 174
  Example: Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group 174
  Example: Monitoring Idle Timer 176
  Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with the Same Authentication and Authorization Server 177
  Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Different Authentication and Authorization Servers 178
  Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Overlapping Authentication and Authorization Servers 178
  Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Subset of Authorization Servers 178
  Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Superset of Authorization Servers 179
Additional References for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 179
Feature History for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 180

CHAPTER 10 Configuring Kerberos 181
Prerequisites for Kerberos 181
Information about Kerberos 181
  Kerberos and Switch Access 181
  Kerberos Overview 182
Kerberos Operation 184
  Authenticating to a Boundary Switch 184
  Obtaining a TGT from a KDC 184
  Authenticating to Network Services 185
How to Configure Kerberos 185
Monitoring the Kerberos Configuration 185
Feature History for Kerberos 185

CHAPTER 11 MACsec Encryption 187

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x ( Catalyst 9600 Switches)
Contents

Prerequisites for MACsec Encryption 187
Restrictions for MACsec Encryption 187
Information About MACsec Encryption 188
  Recommendations for MACsec Encryption 188
MACsec Encryption Overview 189
  Media Access Control Security and MACsec Key Agreement 189
    MKA Policies 190
    Definition of Policy-Map Actions 190
    Virtual Ports 191
    MKA Statistics 191
    Key Lifetime and Hitless Key Rollover 191
    MACsec, MKA and 802.1x Host Modes 191
Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption 193
MACsec Connections Across Intermediate Switches 193
  Limitations for MACsec Connections Across Intermediate Switches 193
MACsec Extended Packet Numbering (XPN) 193
MKA/MACsec for Port Channel 194
MACsec Cipher Announcement 194
  Limitations for MACsec Cipher Announcement 195
How to Configure MACsec Encryption 195
  Configuring MKA and MACsec 195
    Configuring an MKA Policy 195
    Configuring Switch-to-host MACsec Encryption 197
  Configuring MACsec using PSK 199
    Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK 199
    Configuring MACsec MKA on an Interface using PSK 200
  Configuring Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption 201
    Generating Key Pairs 202
    Configuring Enrollment using SCEP 203
    Configuring Enrollment Manually 205
    Applying the 802.1x MACsec MKA Configuration on Interfaces 207
  Configuring MACsec XPN 208
    Configuring an MKA Policy for XPN 208
    Applying the XPN MKA Policy to an Interface 209
CHAPTER 12

Configuring Secure Shell 239

Configuring Secure Shell 239

Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell 239

Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell 240

Information About Configuring Secure Shell 240

SSH Server 240

SSH Integrated Client 240

RSA Authentication Support 241

SSH Servers, Integrated Clients, and Supported Versions 241

SSH Configuration Guidelines 241

How to Configure Secure Shell 242

Setting Up the Device to Run SSH 242

Configuring an SSH Server 243

Invoking an SSH Client 244

Configuration Examples for Secure Shell 245
CHAPTER 13

Secure Shell Version 2 Support 249

Prerequisites for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 249
Restrictions for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 250
Information About Secure Shell Version 2 Support 250

Secure Shell Version 2 250
Secure Shell Version 2 Enhancements 251
Secure Shell Version 2 Enhancements for RSA Keys 251
SSH And Switch Access 252
SNMP Trap Generation 252

SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication 252

How to Configure Secure Shell 253

Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using a Hostname and Domain Name 253
Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using RSA Key Pairs 254
Configuring the Cisco SSH Server to Perform RSA-Based User Authentication 255
Configuring the Cisco IOS SSH Client to Perform RSA-Based Server Authentication 257

Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device 259
Verifying the Status of the Secure Shell Connection 259
Verifying the Secure Shell Version 2 Status 260

Monitoring and Maintaining Secure Shell Version 2 262

Configuration Examples for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 265

Example: Configuring Secure Shell Version 2 265
Example: Configuring Secure Shell Versions 1 and 2 265
Example: Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device 265
Example: Setting an SNMP Trap 265

Examples: SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication 265

Example: Enabling Client-Side Debugs 265
Example: Enabling ChPass with a Blank Password Change 266
Example: Enabling ChPass and Changing the Password on First Login 266
Example: Enabling ChPass and Expiring the Password After Three Logins 267
Example: SNMP Debugging 267
Examples: SSH Debugging Enhancements 268
Additional References for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 269
Feature History for Secure Shell Version 2 Support 270

CHAPTER 14  SSH Support Over IPv6 271
Prerequisites for SSH Support over IPv6 271
Information About SSH Support over IPv6 271
SSH over an IPv6 Transport 271
How to Configure SSH Support over IPv6 272
Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device 272
Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6 273
Example: Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device 273
Additional References for SSH Support over IPv6 273
Feature History for SSH Support over IPv6 274

CHAPTER 15  Configuring SSH File Transfer Protocol 275
Prerequisites for SSH File Transfer Protocol 275
Restrictions for SSH File Transfer Protocol 275
Information About SSH Support over IPv6 276
SSH File Transfer Protocol Overview 276
How to Configure SSH File Transfer Protocol 276
Configuring SFTP 276
Performing an SFTP Copy Operation 277
Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6 277
Example: Configuring SSH File Transfer Protocol 277
Additional References for SSH File Transfer Protocol 278
Feature History for SSH File Transfer Protocol 278

CHAPTER 16  X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 279
X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 279
Prerequisites for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 279
Restrictions for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication 279
CHAPTER 17

Configuring Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Information About Secure Socket Layer HTTP
Secure HTTP Servers and Clients Overview
Certificate Authority Trustpoints
CipherSuites
Default SSL Configuration
SSL Configuration Guidelines
How to Configure Secure Socket Layer HTTP
Configuring a CA Trustpoint
Configuring the Secure HTTP Server
Configuring the Secure HTTP Client
Monitoring Secure HTTP Server and Client Status
Additional References for Secure Socket Layer HTTP
Feature History for Secure Socket Layer HTTP

CHAPTER 18

IPv4 ACLs

Restrictions for IPv4 Access Control Lists
Information About IPv4 Access Control Lists
ACL Overview
Access Control Entries
ACL Supported Types
Supported ACLs
Examples: ACLs in a Small Networked Office 325
Example: Numbered ACLs 325
Examples: Extended ACLs 326
Examples: Named ACLs 326
Examples: ACL Logging 327
Example: ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic 329
Examples: Using Time Ranges with ACLs 329
Examples: Time Range Applied to an IP ACL 330
Examples: Including Comments in ACLs 331
Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Deny a Packet 331
Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Permit a Packet 332
Example: Default Action of Dropping IP Packets and Forwarding MAC Packets 332
Example: Default Action of Dropping MAC Packets and Forwarding IP Packets 333
Example: Default Action of Dropping All Packets 333
Example: Using VLAN Maps in a Network 334
  Example: Wiring Closet Configuration 334
  Example: Restricting Access to a Server on Another VLAN 335
  Example: Denying Access to a Server on Another VLAN 335
Additional References for IPv4 Access Control Lists 336
Feature History for IPv4 Access Control Lists 336

**CHAPTER 19**

**IPv6 ACLs** 339
Restrictions for IPv6 ACLs 339
Information About IPv6 ACLs 340
IPv6 ACL Overview 340
Supported ACLs 340
Types of ACL 340
  Per-User IPv6 ACL 340
  Filter ID IPv6 ACL 340
ACL Precedence 340
VLAN Maps 341
Interactions with Other Features and Switches 341
How to Configure an IPv6 ACL 342
  Default Configuration for IPv6 ACLs 342
CHAPTER 22
Configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection 371
Restrictions for Dynamic ARP Inspection 371
Information About Dynamic ARP Inspection 372
Understanding Dynamic ARP Inspection 372
Interface Trust States and Network Security 374
Rate Limiting of ARP Packets 375
Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries 375
Logging of Dropped Packets 375
Default Dynamic ARP Inspection Configuration 375
Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries 376
How to Configure Dynamic ARP Inspection 376
Configuring ARP ACLs for Non-DHCP Environments 376
Configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection in DHCP Environments 379
Limiting the Rate of Incoming ARP Packets 381
Performing Dynamic ARP Inspection Validation Checks 382
Monitoring DAI 384
Verifying the DAI Configuration 384
Feature History for Dynamic ARP Inspection 385

CHAPTER 23
Configuring IPv6 First Hop Security 387
Prerequisites for IPv6 First Hop Security 387
Restrictions for IPv6 First Hop Security 387
Information About IPv6 First Hop Security 388
IPv6 First Hop Security Overview 388
How to Configure IPv6 First Hop Security 390
  Configuring an IPv6 Snooping Policy 390
  Attaching an IPv6 Snooping Policy to an Interface 392
  Attaching an IPv6 Snooping Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 394
  Attaching an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs Globally 395
  Configuring the IPv6 Binding Table Content 396
  Configuring an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy 397
  Attaching an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to an Interface 398
  Attaching an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 399
  Attaching an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to VLANs Globally 400
  Configuring an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy 401
  Attaching an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to an Interface 404
  Attaching an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 405
  Attaching an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to VLANs Globally 405
  Configuring an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy 406
  Attaching an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to an Interface or a VLAN on an Interface 408
  Attaching an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 409
  Attaching an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to VLANs Globally 410
  Configuring IPv6 Source Guard 411
  Attaching an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to an Interface 412
  Attaching an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 412
  Configuring IPv6 Prefix Guard 413
  Attaching an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to an Interface 414
  Attaching an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 415
  Configuration Examples for IPv6 First Hop Security 416
  Example: Configuring an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy 416
  Examples: Attaching an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 416
  Examples: Attaching an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface 417
  Additional References for IPv6 First Hop Security 417
  Feature History for IPv6 First Hop Security 417

CHAPTER 24

Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking 419
  Information About SISF-Based Device Tracking 419
Overview of SISF-Based Device Tracking 419
Support for multiple IA_NA and IA_PD 420
Options to Enable SISF-Based Device Tracking 420
Migrating from Legacy IPDT and IPv6 Snooping to SISF-Based Device Tracking 421
How to Configure SISF-Based Device Tracking 422
Manually Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking 422
Applying the Default Device Tracking Policy to a Target 422
Creating a Custom Device Tracking Policy with Custom Settings 423
Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to an Interface 426
Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to a VLAN 427
Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and Later Releases 429
Configuring a Multi-Switch Network to Stop Creating Binding Entries from a Trunk Port 430
Configuration Examples for SISF-Based Device Tracking 432
Example: Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.9.x and Later Releases 432
Example: Disabling IPv6 Device Tracking on a Target 434
Example: Enabling IPv6 for SVI on VLAN (To Mitigate the Duplicate Address Problem) 434
Example: Mitigating the IPv4 Duplicate Address Problem 434
Example: Avoiding a Short Device-Tracking Binding Reachable Time 436
Feature History for SISF-Based Device Tracking 436

CHAPTER 25

Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 437
Restrictions for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 437
Information About IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 437
Overview of IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication 438
Port-Based Authentication Process 438
Port-Based Authentication Initiation and Message Exchange 440
Port-Based Authentication Methods 441
Per-User ACLs and Filter IDs 442
Ports in Authorized and Unauthorized States 442
802.1x Host Mode 443
Access Session Limit Profile 444
MAC Move 444
MAC Replace 445
802.1x Accounting 445
802.1x Accounting Attribute-Value Pairs 445
802.1x Readiness Check 446
Switch-to-RADIUS Server Communication 447
IEEE 802.1x Authentication 447
  802.1x Authentication 447
  Port-Based Authentication Manager CLI Commands 448
  Default 802.1x Authentication Configuration 448
  Port-Based Authentication and Switch Stacks 450
  802.1x Authentication with VLAN Assignment 450
  802.1x Authentication with Per-User ACLs 452
  802.1x Authentication with Downloadable ACLs and Redirect URLs 453
  VLAN ID-Based MAC Authentication 454
  IEEE 802.1x Authentication with MAC Authentication Bypass 454
  802.1x Multiple Authentication Mode 456
  802.1x Authentication with Guest VLAN 458
  802.1x Authentication with Restricted VLAN 459
  802.1x Authentication with Inaccessible Authentication Bypass 459
  VLAN Assignment, Guest VLAN, Restricted VLAN, and Inaccessible Authentication Bypass 461
  802.1x Critical Voice VLAN 462
  IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Voice VLAN Ports 462
  IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Port Security 463
  IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Wake-on-LAN 463
  Flexible Authentication Ordering 463
  Open1x Authentication 464
  Multidomain Authentication 464
  802.1x Supplicant and Authenticator Switches with Network Edge Access Topology 466
  802.1x User Distribution 467
  802.1x User Distribution Configuration Guidelines 468
Network Admission Control Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x Validation 468
Voice Aware 802.1x Security 469
Common Session ID 469
CHAPTER 26
IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 517
   Prerequisites for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 517
   Restrictions for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 518
   Information About IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 519
   Configuring Authorization 519
      IEEE 802.1X Authentication with VLAN Assignment 519
   How to Configure IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 519
      Enabling AAA Authorization for VLAN Assignment 519
      Enabling IEEE 802.1X Authentication and Authorization 520
      Specifying an Authorized VLAN in the RADIUS Server Database 522
   Configuration Examples for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 523
      Example: Enabling AAA Authorization for VLAN Assignment 523
      Example: Enabling 802.1X Authentication 523
   Additional References for IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Authentication 524
   Feature History for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment 524

CHAPTER 27
Web-Based Authentication 527
   Information About Web-Based Authentication 527
      Web-Based Authentication Overview 527
         Device Roles 528
         Host Detection 529
         Session Creation 529
         Authentication Process 529
         Local Web Authentication Banner 530
   Web Authentication Customizable Web Pages 533
      Guidelines 533
CHAPTER 29  
Port Security  559  
Prerequisites for Port Security  559  
Restrictions for Port Security  559  
Information About Port Security  559  
Port Security  559  
Types of Secure MAC Addresses  560  
Default MAC Address Table Settings  560  
MAC Address Table Creation  560  
Sticky Secure MAC Addresses  561  
Security Violations  561  
Port Security Aging  562  
Default Port Security Configuration  562  
Port Security Configuration Guidelines  563  
How to Configure Port Security  564  
Enabling and Configuring Port Security  564  
Enabling and Configuring Port Security Aging  569  
Changing the Address Aging Time  570  
Monitoring Port Security  571  
Configuration Examples for Port Security  571  
Feature History for Port Security  572

CHAPTER 30  
Configuring Control Plane Policing  575  
Restrictions for CoPP  575  
Information About CoPP  576  
CoPP Overview  576  
System-Defined Aspects of CoPP  576  
User-Configurable Aspects of CoPP  578  
Upgrading or Downgrading the Software Version  579  
Software Version Upgrades and CoPP  579  
Software Version Downgrades and CoPP  580  
How to Configure CoPP  581
Configuring Lawful Intercept 589

Prerequisites for Lawful Intercept 589
Restrictions for Lawful Intercept 589
Information About Lawful Intercept 590
  Overview of Lawful Intercept 590
  Benefits of Lawful Intercept 590
  CALEA for Voice 591
Configuration Guidelines 591
Network Components Used for Lawful Intercept 592
Lawful Intercept Processing 593
Lawful Intercept MIBs 594
MIB Guidelines 595
Security Considerations 596
Restricting Access to the Lawful Intercept MIBs 596

How to Configure Lawful Intercept 597
  Creating a Restricted SNMP View of Lawful Intercept MIBs 597
  Enabling SNMP Notifications for Lawful Intercept 599
  Disabling SNMP Notifications 600
Configuration Examples for Lawful Intercept 600
  Example: Enabling Mediation Device Access Lawful Intercept MIBs 600
Feature History for Lawful Intercept 601

Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI 603

Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI 603
Prerequisites for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates 603
Restrictions for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates 604
Information About Authorization and Revocation of Certificates 604
   PKI Authorization 604
   PKI and AAA Server Integration for Certificate Status 604
   CRLs or OCSP Server Choosing a Certificate Revocation Mechanism 606
   When to Use Certificate-Based ACLs for Authorization or Revocation 608
   PKI Certificate Chain Validation 610
How to Configure Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI 610
   Configuring PKI Integration with a AAA Server 610
   Configuring a Revocation Mechanism for PKI Certificate Status Checking 615
   Configuring Certificate Authorization and Revocation Settings 617
   Configuring Certificate Chain Validation 625
Configuration Examples for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI 626
   Configuration and Verification Examples for PKI AAA Authorization 626
   Examples: Configuring a Revocation Mechanism 630
   Example: Configuring a Hub Device at a Central Site for Certificate Revocation Checks 631
   Examples: Configuring Certificate Authorization and Revocation Settings 635
   Examples: Configuring Certificate Chain Validation 638
Feature History for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI 639

CHAPTER 33
Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority 641
   Information About Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority 641
   Certificates That Identify an Entity 641
   Source Interface for Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint 642
How to Configure Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority 642
   Configuring the Interface for All Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint 642
Configuration Examples for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority 644
   Example: Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority 644
Feature History for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority 645

CHAPTER 34
Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP 647
   Information About Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP 647
CHAPTER 35

Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP 651
Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP 651
Information About Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP 651
IPv6 Support for LDAP 651
Transport Layer Security 651
LDAP Operations 652
Bind 652
Compare 652
Search 652
How to Configure IPv6 Support for LDAP 653
Configuring Device-to-LDAP Server Communication 653
Configuring LDAP Protocol Parameters 654
Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request 655
Monitoring and Maintaining LDAP Scalability Enhancements 656
Configuration Examples of IPv6 Support for LDAP 658
Example: Device-to-LDAP Server Communication 658
Example: LDAP Protocol Parameters 658
Example: Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request 658
Example: Server Information from an LDAP Server 659
Additional References 659
Feature History for IPv6 Support for LDAP 659
CHAPTER 1

Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels

• Restrictions for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges, on page 1
• Information About Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges, on page 2
• How to Configure Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges, on page 5
• Monitoring Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges, on page 16
• Configuration Examples for Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels, on page 16
• Feature History for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges, on page 17

Restrictions for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

The following are the restrictions for controlling switch access with passwords and privileges:

• Disabling password recovery will not work if you have set the switch to boot up manually by using the boot manual global configuration command. This command produces the boot loader prompt (switch:) after the switch is power cycled.

Restrictions and Guidelines for Reversible Password Types

• Password type 0 and 7 are replaced with password type 6. So password type 0 and 7, which were used for administrator login to the console, Telnet, SSH, webUI, and NETCONF must be migrated to password type 6. No action is required if username and password are type 0 and 7 for local authentication such as CHAP, EAP, and so on.

Note

Type 6 encrypted password is supported from Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 and later releases. Autoconversion to password type 6 is supported from Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1 and later releases.

• If the startup configuration has a type 6 password and you downgrade to a version in which type 6 password is not supported, you can/may be locked out of the device.
Restrictions and Guidelines for Irreversible Password Types

- Username secret password type 5 and enable secret password type 5 must be migrated to the stronger password type 8 or 9. For more information, see Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption, on page 6.

- If the startup configuration of the device has convoluted type 9 secret (password that starts with $14$), then a downgrade can only be performed to a release in which the convoluted type 9 secret is supported. Convoluted type 9 secret is supported in Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.2 and later releases. If the startup configuration has a convoluted type 9 secret, and you downgrade to a release prior to Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.2, you can/may be locked out of the device.

Before you downgrade to any release in which convoluted type 9 secret is not supported, ensure that the type 9 secret (password that starts with $9$) must be part of the startup configuration instead of convoluted type 9 secret (password that starts with $14$) or type 5 secret (password that starts with $1$).

If a device is upgraded from Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.x, or Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x to Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x, the type 5 secret is auto-converted to convoluted type 9 secret (password that starts with $14$). For example: `username user1 secret 5
$1$dNmW$7jWqdtZ2qBVz2R4CSZZC0` is auto-converted to `username user1 secret 9
$14$dNmW$QykGZEEGmiE5c9D/fD0cziOtgaZalCTa2sgydi0Leyw3/cLqP426`. After the device is upgraded, run the `write memory` command in privileged EXEC mode for the convoluted type 9 secret to be permanently written into the startup configuration.

- Plain text passwords are converted to nonreversible encrypted password type 9.

Note

This is supported in Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 and later releases.

- Secret password type 4 is not supported.

Information About Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

This section provides information about controlling switch access with passwords and privileges.

Preventing Unauthorized Access

You can prevent unauthorized users from reconfiguring your switch and viewing configuration information. Typically, you want network administrators to have access to your switch while you restrict access to users who dial from outside the network through an asynchronous port, connect from outside the network through a serial port, or connect through a terminal or workstation from within the local network.

To prevent unauthorized access into your switch, you should configure one or more of these security features:

- At a minimum, you should configure passwords and privileges at each switch port. These passwords are locally stored on the switch. When users attempt to access the switch through a port or line, they must enter the password specified for the port or line before they can access the switch.
• For an additional layer of security, you can also configure username and password pairs, which are locally stored on the switch. These pairs are assigned to lines or ports and authenticate each user before that user can access the switch. If you have defined privilege levels, you can also assign a specific privilege level (with associated rights and privileges) to each username and password pair.

• If you want to use username and password pairs, but you want to store them centrally on a server instead of locally, you can store them in a database on a security server. Multiple networking devices can then use the same database to obtain user authentication (and, if necessary, authorization) information.

• You can also enable the login enhancements feature, which logs both failed and unsuccessful login attempts. Login enhancements can also be configured to block future login attempts after a set number of unsuccessful attempts are made.

Default Password and Privilege Level Configuration

A simple way of providing terminal access control in your network is to use passwords and assign privilege levels. Password protection restricts access to a network or network device. Privilege levels define what commands users can enter after they have logged into a network device.

This table shows the default password and privilege level configuration.

Table 1: Default Password and Privilege Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable password and privilege level</td>
<td>No password is defined. The default is level 15 (privileged EXEC level). The password is not encrypted in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable secret password and privilege level</td>
<td>No password is defined. The default is level 15 (privileged EXEC level). The password is encrypted before it is written to the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line password</td>
<td>No password is defined.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Password Security

To provide an additional layer of security, particularly for passwords that cross the network or that are stored on a Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server, you can use either the enable password or enable secret global configuration commands. Both commands accomplish the same thing; that is, you can establish an encrypted password that users must enter to access privileged EXEC mode (the default) or any privilege level you specify.

We recommend that you use the enable secret command because it uses an improved encryption algorithm.

If you configure the enable secret command, it takes precedence over the enable password command; the two commands cannot be in effect simultaneously.

If you enable password encryption, it applies to all passwords including username passwords, authentication key passwords, the privileged command password, and console and virtual terminal line passwords.
Password Recovery

By default, any end user with physical access to the switch can recover from a lost password by interrupting the boot process while the switch is powering on and then by entering a new password.

The password-recovery disable feature protects access to the switch password by disabling part of this functionality. When this feature is enabled, the end user can interrupt the boot process only by agreeing to set the system back to the default configuration. With password recovery disabled, you can still interrupt the boot process and change the password, but the configuration file (config.text) and the VLAN database file (vlan.dat) are deleted.

If you disable password recovery, we recommend that you keep a backup copy of the configuration file on a secure server in case the end user interrupts the boot process and sets the system back to default values. Do not keep a backup copy of the configuration file on the switch. If the switch is operating in VTP transparent mode, we recommend that you also keep a backup copy of the VLAN database file on a secure server. When the switch is returned to the default system configuration, you can download the saved files to the switch by using the Xmodem protocol.

To re-enable password recovery, use the `service password-recovery` global configuration command.

Terminal Line Telnet Configuration

When you power-up your switch for the first time, an automatic setup program runs to assign IP information and to create a default configuration for continued use. The setup program also prompts you to configure your switch for Telnet access through a password. If you did not configure this password during the setup program, you can configure it when you set a Telnet password for a terminal line.

Username and Password Pairs

You can configure username and password pairs, which are locally stored on the switch. These pairs are assigned to lines or ports and authenticate each user before that user can access the switch. If you have defined privilege levels, you can also assign a specific privilege level (with associated rights and privileges) to each username and password pair.

Privilege Levels

Cisco devices use privilege levels to provide password security for different levels of switch operation. By default, the Cisco IOS XE software operates in two modes (privilege levels) of password security: user EXEC (Level 1) and privileged EXEC (Level 15). You can configure up to 16 hierarchical levels of commands for each mode. By configuring multiple passwords, you can allow different sets of users to have access to specified commands.

Privilege Levels on Lines

Users can override the privilege level you set using the `privilege level` line configuration command by logging in to the line and enabling a different privilege level. They can lower the privilege level by using the `disable` command. If users know the password to a higher privilege level, they can use that password to enable the higher privilege level. You might specify a high level or privilege level for your console line to restrict line usage.
For example, if you want many users to have access to the `clear line` command, you can assign it level 2 security and distribute the level 2 password fairly widely. But if you want more restricted access to the `configure` command, you can assign it level 3 security and distribute that password to a more restricted group of users.

**Command Privilege Levels**

When you set a command to a privilege level, all commands whose syntax is a subset of that command are also set to that level. For example, if you set the `show ip traffic` command to level 15, the `show` commands and `show ip` commands are automatically set to privilege level 15 unless you set them individually to different levels.

**AES Password Encryption and Master Encryption Keys**

You can enable strong, reversible 128-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) password encryption, also known as type 6 encryption. To start using type 6 encryption, enable the AES Password Encryption feature and configure a master encryption key to encrypt and decrypt passwords.

After you enable AES password encryption and configure a master key, all the existing and newly created cleartext passwords for the supported applications are stored in type 6 encrypted format, unless you disable type 6 password encryption. You can also configure the device to convert all the existing weakly encrypted passwords to type 6 encrypted passwords.

Type 0 and 7 passwords can be autoconverted to type 6 if the AES Password Encryption feature and master encryption key are configured.

---

**Note**

Type 6 username and password are backward compatible to Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.x. If you downgrade to any release earlier than Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1, the type 6 username and password are rejected. After autoconversion, to prevent an administrator password from getting rejected during a downgrade, migrate the passwords used for administrator logins (management access) to irreversible password types manually.

---

**How to Configure Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges**

**Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password**

The enable password controls access to the privileged EXEC mode. Follow these steps to set or change a static enable password:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption

Follow these steps to establish an encrypted password that users must enter to access privileged EXEC mode (the default) or any privilege level you specify:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  - `enable`  
    Example: `Device> enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted. |

---

**Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption**

Follow these steps to establish an encrypted password that users must enter to access privileged EXEC mode (the default) or any privilege level you specify:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 2**
  - `configure terminal`  
    Example: `Device# configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**
  - `enable password password`  
    Example: `Device(config)# enable password secret321` | Defines a new password or changes an existing password for access to privileged EXEC mode. By default, no password is defined. For `password`, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. It can contain the question mark (?) character if you precede the question mark with the key combination Ctrl-v when you create the password; for example, to create the password `abc?123`, do this:
  a. Enter `abc`.
  b. Enter `Ctrl-v`.
  c. Enter `?123`.

When the system prompts you to enter the enable password, you need not precede the question mark with the Ctrl-v; you can simply enter `abc?123` at the password prompt. |
| **Step 4**
  - `end`  
    Example: `Device(config)# end` | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

**Step 2**  
`configure terminal`  
**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 3**  
Use one of the following:

- `enable password [level level]`  
  `{unencrypted-password | encryption-type encrypted-password}`
- `enable secret [level level]`  
  `{unencrypted-password | encryption-type encrypted-password}`

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# enable password level 12 example123
```

or

```
Device(config)# enable secret 9 $9$sMLBsTFXLnnHTk$0L82
```

- Defines a new password or changes an existing password for access to privileged EXEC mode.
- Defines a secret password, which is saved using a nonreversible encryption method.
  
  - (Optional) For `level`, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is normal user EXEC mode privileges. The default level is 15 (privileged EXEC mode privileges).
  
  - For `unencrypted-password`, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. By default, no password is defined.
  
  - For `encryption-type`, the available options for `enable password` are type 0 and 7, and type 0, 5, 8, and 9 for `enable secret`. If you specify an encryption type, you must provide an encrypted password—an encrypted password that you copy from another switch configuration. Secret encryption type 9 is more secure, so we recommend that you select type 9 to avoid any issues while upgrading or downgrading.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• If you do not specify an encryption type for the secret password, the password is automatically converted to type 9. This is applicable in Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 and later releases.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If you specify an encryption type and then enter a clear text password, it will result in an error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• You can also configure type 9 encryption for the secret password manually by using the <code>algorithm-type scrypt</code> command in global configuration mode. For example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `Device(config)# username user1 algorithm-type scrypt secret cisco`
| Or |
| `Device(config)# enable algorithm-type scrypt secret cisco`
| Run the `write memory` command in privileged EXEC mode for the type 9 secret to be permanently written into the startup configuration. |
Disabling Password Recovery

Follow these steps to disable password recovery to protect the security of your switch:

Before you begin

If you disable password recovery, we recommend that you keep a backup copy of the configuration file on a secure server in case the end user interrupts the boot process and sets the system back to default values. Do not keep a backup copy of the configuration file on the switch. If the switch is operating in VTP transparent mode, we recommend that you also keep a backup copy of the VLAN database file on a secure server. When the switch is returned to the default system configuration, you can download the saved files to the switch by using the Xmodem protocol.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> system disable password recovery switch {all</td>
<td>&lt;1-9&gt;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# system disable password recovery switch all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• all: Sets the configuration on switches in stack.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• &lt;1-9&gt;: Sets the configuration on the switch number selected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting a Telnet Password for a Terminal Line

Beginning in user EXEC mode, follow these steps to set a Telnet password for the connected terminal line:

**Before you begin**

- Attach a PC or workstation with emulation software to the switch console port, or attach a PC to the Ethernet management port.
- The default data characteristics of the console port are 9600, 8, 1, no parity. You might need to press the Return key several times to see the command-line prompt.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>line vty 0 15</code></td>
<td>Configures the number of Telnet sessions (lines), and enters line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>There are 16 possible sessions on a command-capable device. The 0 and 15 mean that you are configuring all 16 possible Telnet sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# line vty 0 15</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Username and Password Pairs

Follow these steps to configure username and password pairs:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>username <em>name</em> [privilege <em>level</em>] {password <em>encryption-type</em> password}</td>
<td>Sets the username, privilege level, and password for each user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# username adamsample privilege 1 password secret456</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- For *name*, specify the user ID as one word or the MAC address. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.
- You can configure a maximum of 12000 clients each, for both username and MAC filter.
- (Optional) For *level*, specify the privilege level the user has after gaining access. The range is 0 to 15. Level 15 gives privileged EXEC mode access. Level 1 gives user EXEC mode access.

---

| Step 4 | password *password* | Sets a Telnet password for the line or lines. For *password*, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. By default, no password is defined. |
| Example: | Device(config-line)# password abcxyz543 | |

| Step 5 | end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| Example: | Device(config-line)# end | |
### Setting the Privilege Level for a Command

Follow these steps to set the privilege level for a command:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> privilege mode level level command</td>
<td>Sets the privilege level for a command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)**

12
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:Device(config)# privilege exec level 14 configure</td>
<td>• For <strong>mode</strong>, enter <em>configure</em> for global configuration mode, <em>exec</em> for EXEC mode, <em>interface</em> for interface configuration mode, or <em>line</em> for line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <strong>level</strong>, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is for normal user EXEC mode privileges. Level 15 is the level of access permitted by the <em>enable</em> password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <strong>command</strong>, specify the command to which you want to restrict access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 enable password level level password</td>
<td>Specifies the password to enable the privilege level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:Device(config)# enable password level 14 SecretPswd14</td>
<td>• For <strong>level</strong>, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is for normal user EXEC mode privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <strong>password</strong>, specify a string from 1 to 25 alphanumeric characters. The string cannot start with a number, is case sensitive, and allows spaces but ignores leading spaces. By default, no password is defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Changing the Default Privilege Level for Lines**

Follow these steps to change the default privilege level for the specified line:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>line vty line</code></td>
<td>Selects the virtual terminal line on which to restrict access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>privilege exec level level</code></td>
<td>Changes the default privilege level for the line. For <code>level</code>, the range is from 0 to 15. Level 1 is for normal user EXEC mode privileges. Level 15 is the level of access permitted by the <code>enable</code> password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits line configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to do next

Users can override the privilege level you set using the `privilege level` line configuration command by logging in to the line and enabling a different privilege level. They can lower the privilege level by using the `disable` command. If users know the password to a higher privilege level, they can use that password to enable the higher privilege level. You might specify a high level or privilege level for your console line to restrict line usage.

### Logging in to and Exiting a Privilege Level

Beginning in user EXEC mode, follow these steps to log into a specified privilege level and exit a specified privilege level.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable level</code></td>
<td>Logs in to a specified privilege level. In the example, Level 15 is privileged EXEC mode. For <code>level</code>, the range is 0 to 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>disable level</code></td>
<td>Exits to a specified privilege level. In the example, Level 1 is user EXEC mode. For <code>level</code>, the range is 0 to 15.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Example:**

**Step 3**

```
Device(config)# line vty 10
```

**Step 4**

```
Device(config-line)# privilege exec level 15
```

**Step 5**

```
Device(config-line)# end
```
## Configuring an Encrypted Preshared Key

To configure an encrypted preshared key, perform the following steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>key config-key password-encrypt [text]</td>
<td>Stores a type 6 encryption key in private NVRAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# key config-key password-encrypt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>password encryption aes</td>
<td>Enables the encrypted preshared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# password encryption aes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

Table 2: Commands for Displaying Privilege-Level Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show privilege</td>
<td>Displays the privilege level configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration Examples for Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels

Example: Setting or Changing a Static Enable Password

The following example shows how to change the enable password to $l1u2c3k4y5$. The password is not encrypted and provides access to level 15 (traditional privileged EXEC mode access):

```bash
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# enable password l1u2c3k4y5
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Protecting Enable and Enable Secret Passwords with Encryption

The following example shows how to configure the encrypted password $9$sMLBsTFXLnnHTk$0L82$ for privilege level 2:

```bash
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# enable secret level 2 9 $9$sMLBsTFXLnnHTk$0L82
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Setting a Telnet Password for a Terminal Line

The following example shows how to set the Telnet password to $let45me67in89$:

```bash
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 10
Device(config-line)# password let45me67in89
Device(config-line)# end
```

Example: Setting the Privilege Level for a Command

The following example shows how to set the `configure` command to privilege level 14 and define `SecretPswd14` as the password users must enter to use level 14 commands:
Example: Configuring an Encrypted Preshared Key

The following example shows a configuration for which a type 6 preshared key has been encrypted. It includes the prompts and messages that a user might see.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# privilege exec level 14 configure
Device(config)# enable password level 14 SecretPswd14
Device(config)# end

Feature History for Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privileges</td>
<td>Password protection restricts access to a network or network device. Privilege levels define what commands users can enter after they have logged into a network device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Autoconversion of Type 0 and Type 7 Username and Password to Type 6</td>
<td>From this release, type 0 and 7 username and password can be autoconverted to type 6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 2

Configuring Login Block

- Information About Login Enhancements-Login Block, on page 19
- How to Configure Login Enhancements-Login Block, on page 20
- Verifying Login Parameters, on page 22
- Configuration Examples for Login Enhancements-Login Block, on page 24
- Feature History for Login Enhancements-Login Block, on page 24

Information About Login Enhancements-Login Block

Login Enhancements-Login Block Overview

The Login Enhancements (Login Block) feature allows users to enhance the security of a device by configuring options to automatically block further login attempts when a possible denial-of-service (DoS) attack is detected.

The login block and login delay options introduced by this feature can be configured for Telnet or SSH virtual connections. By enabling this feature, you can slow down “dictionary attacks” by enforcing a “quiet period” if multiple failed connection attempts are detected, thereby protecting the routing device from a type of denial-of-service attack.

Protecting Against Denial of Service and Dictionary Login Attacks

Connecting to a device for the purposes of administering (managing) the device, at either the User or Executive level, is most frequently performed using Telnet or SSH (secure shell) from a remote console (such as a PC). SSH provides a more secure connection option because communication traffic between the user’s device and the managed device are encrypted. The Login Block capability, when enabled, applies to both Telnet connections and SSH connections. Beginning in Release versions 12.3(33)SRB2, 12.2(33)SXH2, and 12.4(15)T1, the Login Block capability also applies to HTTP connections.”

The automated activation and logging of the Login Block and Quiet Period capabilities introduced by this feature are designed to further enhance the security of your devices by specifically addressing two well known methods that individuals use to attempt to disrupt or compromise network devices.

If the connection address of a device is discovered and is reachable, a malicious user may attempt to interfere with the normal operations of the device by flooding it with connection requests. This type of attack is referred to as an attempted Denial-of-Service, because it is possible that the device may become too busy trying to process the repeated login connection attempts to properly handle normal routing services or are not able to provide the normal login service to legitimate system administrators.
The primary intention of a dictionary attack, unlike a typical DoS attack, is to actually gain administrative access to the device. A dictionary attack is an automated process to attempt to login by attempting thousands, or even millions, of username/password combinations. (This type of attack is called a “dictionary attack” because it typically uses, as a start, every word found in a typical dictionary as a possible password.) As scripts or programs are used to attempt this access, the profile for such attempts is typically the same as for DoS attempts; multiple login attempts in a short period of time.

By enabling a detection profile, the device can be configured to react to repeated failed login attempts by refusing further connection request (login blocking). This block can be configured for a period of time, called a “quiet period”. Legitimate connection attempts can still be permitted during a quiet period by configuring an access-list (ACL) with the addresses that you know to be associated with system administrators.

**Delays Between Successive Login Attempts**

A device can accept virtual connections as fast as they can be processed. Introducing a delay between login attempts helps to protect the device against malicious login connections such as dictionary attacks and DoS attacks. Delays can be enabled in one of the following ways:

- Through the `auto secure` command. If you enable the AutoSecure feature, the default login delay time of one second is automatically enforced.
- Through the `login block-for` command. You must enter this command before issuing the `login delay` command. If you enter only the `login block-for` command, the default login delay time of one second is automatically enforced.
- Through the global configuration mode command, `login delay`, which allows you to specify login delay time to be enforced, in seconds.

**Login Shutdown If DoS Attacks Are Suspected**

If the configured number of connection attempts fail within a specified time period, the device does not accept any additional connections for a “quiet period.” (Hosts that are permitted by a predefined access-control list [ACL] are excluded from the quiet period.)

The number of failed connection attempts that trigger the quiet period can be specified through the new global configuration mode command `login block-for`. The predefined ACL that is excluded from the quiet period can be specified through the new global configuration mode command `login quiet-mode access-class`.

This functionality is disabled by default, and it is not enabled if AutoSecure if enabled.

**How to Configure Login Enhancements-Login Block**

**Configuring Login Parameters**

Use this task to configure your device for login parameters that help detect suspected DoS attacks and slow down dictionary attacks.

All login parameters are disabled by default. You must issue the `login block-for` command, which enables default login functionality, before using any other login commands. After the `login block-for` command is enabled, the following defaults are enforced:


- A default login delay of one second
- All login attempts made through Telnet or SSH are denied during the quiet period; that is, no ACLs are exempt from the login period until the `login quiet-mode access-class` command is issued.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2**        |         |
| configure terminal| Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| Device# configure terminal |         |

| **Step 3**        | Configures your device for login parameters that help provide DoS detection. |
| login block-for **seconds** **attempts** **tries** **within** **seconds** |         |
| **Example:**      | Note: This command must be issued before any other login command can be used. |
| Device(config)# login block-for 100 attempts 2 within 100 |         |

| **Step 4**        | (Optional) Although this command is optional, it is recommended that it be configured to specify an ACL that is to be applied to the device when the device switches to quiet mode. When the device is in quiet mode, all login requests are denied and the only available connection is through the console.
| login quiet-mode **access-class** **{acl-name | acl-number}** |         |
| **Example:**      | If this command is not configured, then the default ACL `sl_def_acl` is created on the device. This ACL is hidden in the running configuration. Use the `show access-list sl_def_acl` to view the parameters for the default ACL. For example: |
| Device(config)# login quiet-mode access-class myacl |         |

Extended IP access list `sl_def_acl`
- 10 deny tcp any any eq telnet
- 20 deny tcp any any eq www
- 30 deny tcp any any eq 22
- 40 permit ip any any
### Configuring Login Block

#### Verifying Login Parameters

Use this task to verify the applied login configuration and present login status on your device.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Displays login parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show login failures</td>
<td>Displays login parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• failures --Displays information related only to failed login attempts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show login</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following sample output from the `show login` command verifies that no login parameters have been specified:

```
Device# show login
No login delay has been applied.
No Quiet-Mode access list has been configured.
All successful login is logged and generate SNMP traps.
All failed login is logged and generate SNMP traps.
Router NOT enabled to watch for login Attacks
```
The following sample output from the `show login` command verifies that the `login block-for` command is issued. In this example, the command is configured to block login hosts for 100 seconds if 16 or more login requests fail within 100 seconds; five login requests have already failed.

Device# `show login`

A default login delay of 1 seconds is applied.
No Quiet-Mode access list has been configured.
All successful login is logged and generate SNMP traps.
All failed login is logged and generate SNMP traps.
Router enabled to watch for login Attacks.
If more than 15 login failures occur in 100 seconds or less, logins will be disabled for 100 seconds.
Router presently in Watch-Mode, will remain in Watch-Mode for 95 seconds.
Present login failure count 5.

The following sample output from the `show login` command verifies that the device is in quiet mode. In this example, the `login block-for` command was configured to block login hosts for 100 seconds if 3 or more login requests fail within 100 seconds.

Device# `show login`

A default login delay of 1 seconds is applied.
No Quiet-Mode access list has been configured.
All successful login is logged and generate SNMP traps.
All failed login is logged and generate SNMP traps.
Router enabled to watch for login Attacks.
If more than 2 login failures occur in 100 seconds or less, logins will be disabled for 100 seconds.
Router presently in Quiet-Mode, will remain in Quiet-Mode for 93 seconds.
Denying logins from all sources.

The following sample output from `show login failures` command shows all failed login attempts on the device:

Device# `show login failures`

Information about login failure's with the device
Username  Source IPAddr  lPort Count TimeStamp
try1      10.1.1.1      23   1 21:52:49 UTC Sun Feb 24 2019
try2      10.1.1.2      23   1 21:52:52 UTC Sun Feb 23 2019

The following sample output from `show login failures` command verifies that no information is presently logged:

Device# `show login failures`

*** No logged failed login attempts with the device.***
Configuration Examples for Login Enhancements-Login Block

Example: Configuring Login Parameters

The following example shows how to configure your device to enter a 100 second quiet period if 15 failed login attempts is exceeded within 100 seconds; all login requests are denied during the quiet period except hosts from the ACL “myacl.”

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# login block-for 100 attempts 15 within 100
Device(config)# login quiet-mode access-class myacl
Device(config)# end

Feature History for Login Enhancements-Login Block

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Login Enhancements-Login Block</td>
<td>The Login Enhancements-Login Block feature allows users to enhance the security of a router by configuring options to automatically block further login attempts when a possible DoS attack is detected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 3

Configuring Authentication

Authentication provides a method to identify users, which includes the login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support, and encryption, depending on the selected security protocol. Authentication is the way a user is identified prior to being allowed access to the network and network services.

- Prerequisites for Configuring Authentication, on page 25
- Restrictions for Configuring Authentication, on page 25
- Information About Authentication, on page 26
- How to Configure Authentication, on page 42
- Configuration Examples for Authentication, on page 61
- Feature History for Configuring Authentication, on page 75

Prerequisites for Configuring Authentication

The implementation of authentication is divided into Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) authentication and nonauthentication methods. Cisco recommends that, whenever possible, AAA security services be used to implement authentication.

Restrictions for Configuring Authentication

- The number of AAA method lists that can be configured is 250.
- If you configure one RADIUS server with the nonstandard option and another RADIUS server without the nonstandard option, the RADIUS-server host with the nonstandard option does not accept a predefined host. If you configure the same RADIUS server host IP address for a different UDP destination port for accounting requests by using the acct-port keyword and a UDP destination port for authentication requests by using the auth-port keyword with and without the nonstandard option, the RADIUS server does not accept the nonstandard option.
Information About Authentication

Named Method Lists for Authentication

A named list of authentication methods is first defined before AAA authentication can be configured, and the named list is then applied to various interfaces. The method list defines the types of authentication and the sequence in which they are performed; it must be applied to a specific interface before any of the defined authentication methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces, except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. A defined method list overrides the default method list.

A method list is a sequential list describing the authentication methods to be queried to authenticate a user. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols to be used for authentication, thus ensuring a backup system for authentication in case the initial method fails. Cisco software uses the first listed method to authenticate users. If that method fails to respond, the Cisco software selects the next authentication method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authentication method, or all methods defined in the method list are exhausted.

Note that the software attempts authentication with the next listed authentication method only when there is no response from the previous method. If authentication fails at any point in this cycle, that is, the security server or local username database responds by denying the user access, then the authentication process stops and no other authentication methods are attempted.

Method Lists and Server Groups

A server group is a way to group existing RADIUS or TACACS+ server hosts for use in method lists. The figure below shows a typical AAA network configuration that includes four security servers: R1 and R2 are RADIUS servers and T1 and T2 are TACACS+ servers. R1 and R2 make up the group of RADIUS servers. T1 and T2 make up the group of TACACS+ servers.

Figure 1: Typical AAA Network Configuration
Using server groups, you can specify a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. For example, server groups allow you to define R1 and R2 as a server group, and define T1 and T2 as a separate server group. For example, you can specify R1 and T1 in the method list for authentication login, while specifying R2 and T2 in the method list for PPP authentication.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, authentication—the second host entry configured acts as failover backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server will try the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries will be tried in the order in which they are configured.)

For more information about configuring server groups and about configuring server groups based on Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS) numbers, see the “Configuring RADIUS” or “Configuring TACACS+” chapters.

Login Authentication Using AAA

Login Authentication Using Enable Password

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `enable` keyword to specify the enable password as the login authentication method. For example, to specify the enable password as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default enable
```

Before you can use the enable password as the login authentication method, you need to define the enable password. For more information about defining enable passwords, see chapter “Controlling Switch Access with Passwords and Privilege Levels.”

Login Authentication Using Kerberos

Authentication via Kerberos is different from most other authentication methods: the user’s password is never sent to the remote access server. Remote users logging in to the network are prompted for a username. If the key distribution center (KDC) has an entry for that user, it creates an encrypted ticket granting ticket (TGT) with the password for that user and sends it back to the device. The user is then prompted for a password, and the device attempts to decrypt the TGT with that password. If it succeeds, the user is authenticated and the TGT is stored in the user’s credential cache on the device.

While krb5 does use the KINIT program, a user does not need to run the KINIT program to get a TGT to authenticate to the device. This is because KINIT has been integrated into the login procedure in the Cisco IOS XE implementation of Kerberos.

Use the `aaa authentication login` command with the `krb5` keyword to specify Kerberos as the login authentication method. For example, to specify Kerberos as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default krb5
```
Before you can use Kerberos as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the Kerberos security server. For more information about establishing communication with a Kerberos server, refer to the chapter “Configuring Kerberos.”

**Login Authentication Using Line Password**

Use the `aaa authentication login default` command with the `line` keyword to specify the line password as the login authentication method. For example, to specify the line password as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default line
```

Before you can use a line password as the login authentication method, you need to define a line password.

**Login Authentication Using Local Password**

Use the `aaa authentication login default` command with the `local` keyword to specify that the Cisco device will use the local username database for authentication. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local
```

**Login Authentication Using Group RADIUS**

Use the `aaa authentication login default` command with the `group radius` to specify RADIUS as the login authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

**RADIUS Attribute 8 in Access Requests**

After you have used the `aaa authentication login` command to specify RADIUS and your login host has been configured to request its IP address from the NAS, you can send attribute 8 (Framed-IP-Address) in access-request packets by using the `radius-server attribute 8 include-in-access-req` command in global configuration mode. This command makes it possible for NAS to provide the RADIUS server a hint of the user IP address in advance for user authentication.

**Login Authentication Using Group TACACS**

Use the `aaa authentication login default` command with the `group tacacs+` to specify TACACS+ as the login authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
```
Before you can use TACACS+ as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

**Login Authentication Using Group Name**

Use the `aaa authentication login default` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the login authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group loginrad`:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius loginrad
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.3
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.17
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.32
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `loginrad`.

To specify `group loginrad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group loginrad
```

Before you can use a group name as the login authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.” For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

**PPP Authentication Using AAA**

### PPP Authentication Using Kerberos

Use the `aaa authentication ppp default` command with the `krb5` keyword to specify Kerberos as the authentication method for use on interfaces running PPP. For example, to specify Kerberos as the method of user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default krb5
```

Before you can use Kerberos as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the Kerberos security server. For more information about establishing communication with a Kerberos server, refer to the chapter “Configuring Kerberos”.

**Note**

Kerberos login authentication works only with PPP PAP authentication.

### PPP Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication ppp default` command with the `local` keyword to specify that the Cisco device will use the local username database for authentication. For example, to specify the local username database...
as the method of authentication for use on lines running PPP when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default local
```

### PPP Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication ppp default group radius` command to specify RADIUS as the login authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

### RADIUS Attribute 44 in Access Requests

After you have used the `aaa authentication ppp default group radius` command to specify RADIUS as the login authentication method, you can configure your device to send attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID) in access-request packets by using the `radius-server attribute 44 include-in-access-req` command in global configuration mode. This command allows the RADIUS daemon to track a call from the beginning to the end.

### PPP Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+` command to specify TACACS+ as the login authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

### PPP Authentication Using Group Name

Use the `aaa authentication ppp default` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the login authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group ppprad`:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius ppprad
Device(config-ag-radius)# server 172.16.2.3
Device(config-ag-radius)# server 172.16.2.17
Device(config-ag-radius)# server 172.16.2.32
Device(config-ag-radius)# end
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `ppprad`.
To specify group ppprad as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group ppprad
```

Before you can use a group name as the PPP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

### AAA Scalability for PPP Requests

You can configure and monitor the number of background processes allocated by the PPP manager in the network access server (NAS) to deal with AAA authentication and authorization requests. The AAA Scalability feature enables you to configure the number of processes used to handle AAA requests for PPP, thus increasing the number of users that can be simultaneously authenticated or authorized.

To allocate a specific number of background processes to handle AAA requests for PPP, use the following command in global configuration mode:

```
Device(config)# aaa processes 5000
```

The argument `number` defines the number of background processes earmarked to process AAA authentication and authorization requests for PPP and can be configured for any value from 1 to 2147483647. Because of the way the PPP manager handles requests for PPP, this argument also defines the number of new users that can be simultaneously authenticated. This argument can be increased or decreased at any time.

---

**Note**

Allocating additional background processes can be expensive. You should configure the minimum number of background processes capable of handling the AAA requests for PPP.

---

### ARAP Authentication Using AAA

#### ARAP Authentication Allowing Authorized Guest Logins

Use the `aaa authentication arap default` command with the `auth-guest` keyword to allow guest logins only if the user has already successfully logged in to the EXEC. This method must be the first listed in the ARAP authentication method list but it can be followed by other methods if it does not succeed. For example, to allow all authorized guest logins--meaning logins by users who have already successfully logged in to the EXEC--as the default method of authentication, using RADIUS only if that method fails, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default auth-guest group radius
```

---

**Note**

By default, guest logins through ARAP are disabled when you initialize AAA. To allow guest logins, you must use the `aaa authentication arap {authentication-list | default}` command with either the `guest` or the `auth-guest` keyword.
ARAP Authentication Allowing Guest Logins

Use the `aaa authentication arap {default | authentication-list}` command with the `guest` keyword to allow guest logins. This method must be the first listed in the ARAP authentication method list but it can be followed by other methods if it does not succeed. For example, to allow all guest logins as the default method of authentication, using RADIUS only if that method fails, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default guest group radius
```

ARAP Authentication Using Line Password

Use the `aaa authentication arap {default | authentication-list}` command with the `line` keyword to specify the line password as the authentication method. For example, to specify the line password as the method of ARAP user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default line
```

Before you can use a line password as the ARAP authentication method, you need to define a line password.

ARAP Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication arap {default | authentication-list}` command with the `local` keyword to specify that the Cisco device will use the local username database for authentication. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of ARAP user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default local
```

ARAP Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication arap {default | authentication-list}` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the ARAP authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the ARAP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

ARAP Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication arap {default | authentication-list}` command with the `group tacacs+` method to specify TACACS+ as the ARAP authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the ARAP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”
ARAP Authentication Using a Group Name

Use the `aaa authentication arap {default | authentication-list}` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the ARAP authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group araprad`:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius araprad
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.3
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.17
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.32
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `araprad`.

To specify `group araprad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default group araprad
```

Before you can use a group name as the ARAP authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server. For more information about establishing communication with a RADIUS server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.” For more information about establishing communication with a TACACS+ server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.”

NASI Authentication Using AAA

NASI Authentication Using Enable Password

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the keyword `enable` to specify the enable password as the authentication method. For example, to specify the enable password as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, use the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi default enable
```

Before you can use the enable password as the authentication method, you need to define the enable password.

NASI Authentication Using Group RADIUS

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `group radius` method to specify RADIUS as the NASI authentication method. For example, to specify RADIUS as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi default group radius
```

Before you can use RADIUS as the NASI authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS security server.
NASI Authentication Using Group TACACS

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `group tacacs+` keyword to specify TACACS+ as the NASI authentication method. For example, to specify TACACS+ as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi default group tacacs+
```

Before you can use TACACS+ as the authentication method, you need to enable communication with the TACACS+ security server.

NASI Authentication Using Line Password

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the keyword `line` to specify the line password as the authentication method. For example, to specify the line password as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi default line
```

Before you can use a line password as the NASI authentication method, you need to define a line password.

NASI Authentication Using Local Password

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the keyword `local` to specify that the Cisco device will use the local username database for authentication information. For example, to specify the local username database as the method of NASI user authentication when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi default local
```

NASI Authentication Using Group Name

Use the `aaa authentication nasi` command with the `group group-name` method to specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the NASI authentication method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group nasirad`:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius nasirad
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.3
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.17
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.32
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the group `nasirad`.

To specify `group nasirad` as the method of user authentication at login when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication nasi default group nasirad
```

Before you can use a group name as the NASI authentication method, you need to enable communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server.
Specifying the Amount of Time for Login Input

The `timeout login response` command allows you to specify how long the system will wait for login input (such as username and password) before timing out. The default login value is 30 seconds; with the `timeout login response` command, you can specify a timeout value from 1 to 300 seconds. To change the login timeout value from the default of 30 seconds, use the following command in line configuration mode:

```
Device(config-line)# timeout login response 30
```

Password Protection at the Privileged Level

Use the `aaa authentication enable default` command to create a series of authentication methods that are used to determine whether a user can access the privileged EXEC command level. You can specify up to four authentication methods. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify `none` as the final method in the command line.

Use the following command in global configuration mode:

```
Device(config)# authentication enable default radius
```

or

```
Device(config)# authentication enable default tacacs
```

Changing the Text Displayed at the Password Prompt

Use the `aaa authentication password-prompt` command to change the default text that the Cisco IOS XE software displays when prompting a user to enter a password. This command changes the password prompt for the enable password as well as for login passwords that are not supplied by remote security servers. The `no` form of this command returns the password prompt to the following default value:

```
Password:
```

The `aaa authentication password-prompt` command does not change any dialog that is supplied by a remote TACACS+ or RADIUS server.

The `aaa authentication password-prompt` command works when RADIUS is used as the login method. You will be able to see the password prompt defined in the command shown even when the RADIUS server is unreachable. The `aaa authentication password-prompt` command does not work with TACACS+. TACACS+ supplies the NAS with the password prompt to display to the users. If the TACACS+ server is reachable, the NAS gets the password prompt from the server and uses that prompt instead of the one defined in the `aaa authentication password-prompt` command. If the TACACS+ server is not reachable, the password prompt defined in the `aaa authentication password-prompt` command may be used.

Use the following command in global configuration mode:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication password-prompt "Enter your password now:"
```

Double Authentication of PPP Sessions

PPP sessions can be authenticated only by using a single authentication method: either PAP or CHAP. Double authentication requires remote users to pass a second stage of authentication (after CHAP or PAP authentication) before gaining network access.
This second (“double”) authentication requires a password that is known to the user but not stored on the user’s remote host. Therefore, the second authentication is specific to a user, not to a host. This provides an additional level of security that will be effective even if information from the remote host is stolen. In addition, this also provides greater flexibility by allowing customized network privileges for each user.

The second stage authentication can use one-time passwords such as token card passwords, which are not supported by CHAP. If one-time passwords are used, a stolen user password is of no use to the perpetrator.

**How Double Authentication Works**

With double authentication, there are two authentication/authorization stages. These two stages occur after a remote user dials in and a PPP session is initiated.

In the first stage, the user logs in using the remote host name; CHAP (or PAP) authenticates the remote host, and then PPP negotiates with AAA to authorize the remote host. In this process, the network access privileges associated with the remote host are assigned to the user.

---

**Note**

We suggest that the network administrator restrict authorization at this first stage to allow only Telnet connections to the local host.

---

In the second stage, the remote user must Telnet to the network access server to be authenticated. When the remote user logs in, the user must be authenticated with AAA login authentication. The user then must enter the `access-profile` command to be reauthorized using AAA. When this authorization is complete, the user has been double authenticated, and can access the network according to per-user network privileges.

The system administrator determines what network privileges remote users will have after each stage of authentication by configuring appropriate parameters on a security server. To use double authentication, the user must activate it by issuing the `access-profile` command.

---

**Caution**

Double authentication can cause certain undesirable events if multiple hosts share a PPP connection to a network access server, as shown in the figure below. First, if a user, Bob, initiates a PPP session and activates double authentication at the network access server (per the figure below), any other user will automatically have the same network privileges as Bob until Bob’s PPP session expires. This happens because Bob’s authorization profile is applied to the network access server’s interface during the PPP session and any PPP traffic from other users will use the PPP session Bob established. Second, if Bob initiates a PPP session and activates double authentication, and then—before Bob’s PPP session has expired—another user, Jane, executes the `access-profile` command (or, if Jane Telnets to the network access server and `autocommand access-profile` is executed), a reauthorization will occur and Jane’s authorization profile will be applied to the interface—replacing Bob’s profile. This can disrupt or halt Bob’s PPP traffic, or grant Bob additional authorization privileges Bob should not have.
Accessing the User Profile After Double Authentication

In double authentication, when a remote user establishes a PPP link to the local host using the local host name, the remote host is CHAP (or PAP) authenticated. After CHAP (or PAP) authentication, PPP negotiates with AAA to assign network access privileges associated with the remote host to the user. (We suggest that privileges at this stage be restricted to allow the user to connect to the local host only by establishing a Telnet connection.)

When the user needs to initiate the second phase of double authentication, establishing a Telnet connection to the local host, the user enters a personal username and password (different from the CHAP or PAP username and password). This action causes AAA reauthentication to occur according to the personal username/password. The initial rights associated with the local host, though, are still in place. By using the access-profile command, the rights associated with the local host are replaced by or merged with those defined for the user in the user’s profile.

To access the user profile after double authentication, use the following command in EXEC configuration mode:

Device> access-profile merge ignore-sanity-checks

If you configured the access-profile command to be executed as an autocommand, it will be executed automatically after the remote user logs in.

CHAP or PAP Authentication

One of the most common transport protocols used in ISPs dial solutions is the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP). Traditionally, remote users dial in to an access server to initiate a PPP session. After PPP has been negotiated, remote users are connected to the ISP network and to the Internet.

Because ISPs want only customers to connect to their access servers, remote users are required to authenticate to the access server before they can start up a PPP session. Normally, a remote user authenticates by typing in a username and password when prompted by the access server. Although this is a workable solution, it is difficult to administer and awkward for the remote user.

A better solution is to use the authentication protocols built into PPP. In this case, the remote user dials in to the access server and starts up a minimal subset of PPP with the access server. This does not give the remote user access to the ISP’s network—it merely allows the access server to talk to the remote device.

PPP currently supports two authentication protocols: Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) and Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). Both are specified in RFC 1334 and are supported on synchronous and asynchronous interfaces. Authentication via PAP or CHAP is equivalent to typing in a username and password when prompted by the server. CHAP is considered to be more secure because the remote user’s password is never sent across the connection.
PPP (with or without PAP or CHAP authentication) is also supported in dialout solutions. An access server utilizes a dialout feature when it initiates a call to a remote device and attempts to start up a transport protocol such as PPP.

To use CHAP or PAP, you must be running PPP encapsulation.

When CHAP is enabled on an interface and a remote device attempts to connect to it, the access server sends a CHAP packet to the remote device. The CHAP packet requests or “challenges” the remote device to respond. The challenge packet consists of an ID, a random number, and the host name of the local device.

When the remote device receives the challenge packet, it concatenates the ID, the remote device’s password, and the random number, and then encrypts all of it using the remote device’s password. The remote device sends the results back to the access server, along with the name associated with the password used in the encryption process.

When the access server receives the response, it uses the name it received to retrieve a password stored in its user database. The retrieved password should be the same password the remote device used in its encryption process. The access server then encrypts the concatenated information with the newly retrieved password--if the result matches the result sent in the response packet, authentication succeeds.

The benefit of using CHAP authentication is that the remote device’s password is never transmitted in clear text. This prevents other devices from stealing it and gaining illegal access to the ISP’s network.

CHAP transactions occur only at the time a link is established. The access server does not request a password during the rest of the call. (The local device can, however, respond to such requests from other devices during a call.)

When PAP is enabled, the remote device attempting to connect to the access server is required to send an authentication request. If the username and password specified in the authentication request are accepted, the Cisco IOS XE software sends an authentication acknowledgment.

After you have enabled CHAP or PAP, the access server will require authentication from remote devices dialing in to the access server. If the remote device does not support the enabled protocol, the call will be dropped.

To use CHAP or PAP, you must perform the following tasks:

- Enable PPP encapsulation.
- Enable CHAP or PAP on the interface.
- For CHAP, configure host name authentication and the secret or password for each remote system with which authentication is required.

### Enabling PPP Encapsulation

To enable PPP encapsulation, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# encapsulation ppp
```

This command enables PPP on an interface.
Enabling PAP or CHAP

To enable CHAP or PAP authentication on an interface configured for PPP encapsulation, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# ppp authentication chap pap
```

Defines the authentication protocols supported and the order in which they are used. In this command, `protocol1`, `protocol2` represent the following protocols: CHAP, MS-CHAP, and PAP. PPP authentication is attempted first using the first authentication method, which is `protocol1`. If `protocol1` is unable to establish authentication, the next configured protocol is used to negotiate authentication.

If you configure `ppp authentication chap` on an interface, all incoming calls on that interface that initiate a PPP connection will have to be authenticated using CHAP; likewise, if you configure `ppp authentication pap`, all incoming calls that start a PPP connection will have to be authenticated via PAP. If you configure `ppp authentication chap pap`, the access server will attempt to authenticate all incoming calls that start a PPP session with CHAP. If the remote device does not support CHAP, the access server will try to authenticate the call using PAP. If the remote device does not support either CHAP or PAP, authentication will fail and the call will be dropped. If you configure `ppp authentication pap chap`, the access server will attempt to authenticate all incoming calls that start a PPP session with PAP. If the remote device does not support PAP, the access server will try to authenticate the call using CHAP. If the remote device does not support either protocol, authentication will fail and the call will be dropped. If you configure the `ppp authentication` command with the `callin` keyword, the access server will only authenticate the remote device if the remote device initiated the call.

Authentication method lists and the `one-time` keyword are only available if you have enabled AAA; these will not be available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. If you specify the name of an authentication method list with the `ppp authentication` command, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined in the specified method list. If AAA is enabled and no method list is defined by name, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined as the default. The `ppp authentication` command with the `one-time` keyword enables support for one-time passwords during authentication.

The `if-needed` keyword is only available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. The `ppp authentication` command with the `if-needed` keyword means that PPP will only authenticate the remote device via PAP or CHAP if they have not yet authenticated during the life of the current call. If the remote device authenticated via a standard login procedure and initiated PPP from the EXEC prompt, PPP will not authenticate via CHAP if `ppp authentication chap if-needed` is configured on the interface.

⚠️ **Caution**

If you use a `list-name` that has not been configured with the `aaa authentication ppp` command, you disable PPP on the line.

Inbound and Outbound Authentication

PPP supports two-way authentication. Normally, when a remote device dials into an access server, the access server requests that the remote device prove that it is allowed access. This is known as inbound authentication. At the same time, the remote device can also request that the access server prove that it is who it says it is. This is known as outbound authentication. An access server also does outbound authentication when it initiates a call to a remote device.
Enabling Outbound PAP Authentication

To enable outbound PAP authentication, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# ppp pap sent-username username1 password password1
```

The access server uses the username and password specified by the `ppp pap sent-username` command to authenticate itself whenever it initiates a call to a remote device or when it has to respond to a remote device’s request for outbound authentication.

Refusing PAP Authentication Requests

To refuse PAP authentication from peers requesting it, meaning that PAP authentication is disabled for all calls, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# ppp pap refuse
```

If the `refuse` keyword is not used, the device will not refuse any PAP authentication challenges received from the peer.

Creating a Common CHAP Password

For remote CHAP authentication, you can configure your device to create a common CHAP secret password to use in response to challenges from an unknown peer. For example, if your device calls a rotary of devices (either from another vendor, or running an older version of the Cisco IOS XE software) to which a new (that is, unknown) device has been added. The `ppp chap password` command allows you to replace several username and password configuration commands with a single copy of this command on any dialer interface or asynchronous group interface.

To enable a device calling a collection of devices to configure a common CHAP secret password, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# ppp chap password secret
```

Refusing CHAP Authentication Requests

To refuse CHAP authentication from peers requesting it, meaning that CHAP authentication is disabled for all calls, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# ppp chap refuse calling
```

If the `calling` keyword is used, the device will refuse to answer CHAP authentication challenges received from the peer, but will still require the peer to answer any CHAP challenges the device sends.

If outbound PAP has been enabled (using the `ppp pap sent-username` command), PAP is used as the authentication method in the refusal packet.

Delaying CHAP Authentication Until Peer Authenticates

To specify that the device will not authenticate to a peer requesting CHAP authentication until after the peer has authenticated itself to the device, use the following command in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# ppp chap wait secret
```

This command (which is the default) specifies that the device will not authenticate to a peer requesting CHAP authentication until the peer has authenticated itself to the device. The `no ppp chap wait` command specifies that the device will respond immediately to an authentication challenge.
Using MS-CHAP

Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MS-CHAP) is the Microsoft version of CHAP and is an extension of RFC 1994. Like the standard version of CHAP, MS-CHAP is used for PPP authentication; in this case, authentication occurs between a PC using Microsoft Windows NT or Microsoft Windows 95 and a Cisco device or access server acting as a network access server.

MS-CHAP differs from the standard CHAP as follows:

- MS-CHAP is enabled by negotiating CHAP Algorithm 0x80 in LCP option 3, Authentication Protocol.
- The MS-CHAP Response packet is in a format designed to be compatible with Microsoft Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51, Microsoft Windows 95, and Microsoft LAN Manager 2.x. This format does not require the authenticator to store a clear or reversibly encrypted password.
- MS-CHAP provides an authenticator-controlled authentication retry mechanism.
- MS-CHAP provides an authenticator-controlled change password mechanism.
- MS-CHAP defines a set of “reason-for failure” codes returned in the Failure packet message field.

Depending on the security protocols you have implemented, PPP authentication using MS-CHAP can be used with or without AAA security services. If you have enabled AAA, PPP authentication using MS-CHAP can be used in conjunction with both TACACS+ and RADIUS. The table below lists the vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (IETF Attribute 26) that enable RADIUS to support MS-CHAP.

Table 3: Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes for MS-CHAP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor-ID Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Type Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Proprietary Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>311</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Challenge</td>
<td>Contains the challenge sent by a network access server to an MS-CHAP user. It can be used in both Access-Request and Access-Challenge packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Response</td>
<td>Contains the response value provided by a PPP MS-CHAP user in response to the challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets. This attribute is identical to the PPP CHAP Identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Domain Stripping

Domain stripping will not be done in a TACACS configuration.

The AAA Broadcast Accounting feature allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time, that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously. This functionality allows you to send accounting information to private and public AAA servers. It also provides redundant billing information for voice applications.

The Domain Stripping feature allows domain stripping to be configured at the server group level.
Per-server group configuration overrides the global configuration. If domain stripping is not enabled globally, but it is enabled in a server group, then it is enabled only for that server group. Also, if virtual routing and forwarding (VRF)-specific domain stripping is configured globally and in a server group for a different VRF, domain stripping is enabled in both the VRFs. VRF configurations are taken from server-group configuration mode. If server-group configurations are disabled in global configuration mode but are available in server-group configuration mode, all configurations in server-group configuration mode are applicable.

After the domain stripping and broadcast accounting are configured, you can create separate accounting records as per the configurations.

# How to Configure Authentication

## Configuring Login Authentication Using AAA

The AAA security services facilitate a variety of login authentication methods. Use the `aaa authentication login` command to enable AAA authentication no matter which of the supported login authentication methods you decide to use. With the `aaa authentication login` command, you create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried at login. These lists are applied using the `login authentication` line configuration command.

To configure login authentication by using AAA, use the following commands beginning in global configuration mode:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# <code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Creates a local authentication list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`aaa authentication login {default</td>
<td>list-name} method1 [method2...]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# <code>aaa authentication login</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default local</td>
<td>Enters line configuration mode for the lines to which you want to apply the authentication list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 line [aux</td>
<td><strong>Enters line configuration mode for the lines to which you want to apply the authentication list.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>line-number</strong> [ending-line-number]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Device(config)# line vty 1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6 login authentication {default</td>
<td><strong>Applies the authentication list to a line or set of lines.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>list-name</strong>}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Device(config-line)# login authentication default</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7 end</td>
<td><strong>Exits line configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Device(config-line)# end</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

The *list-name* is a character string used to name the list you are creating. The method argument refers to the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify **none** as the final method in the command line.

For example, to specify that authentication should succeed even if (in this example) the TACACS+ server returns an error, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+ none
```

**Note**

Because the **none** keyword enables any user logging in to successfully authenticate, it should be used only as a backup method of authentication.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the **login authentication** command, use the **default** keyword followed by the methods that are to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces.

For example, to specify RADIUS as the default method for user authentication during login, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
```
Configuring PPP Authentication Using AAA

The AAA security services facilitate a variety of authentication methods for use on serial interfaces running PPP. Use the `aaa authentication ppp` command to enable AAA authentication no matter which of the supported PPP authentication methods you decide to use.

To configure AAA authentication methods for serial lines using PPP, use the following commands in global configuration mode:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
| `enable`          | Enables privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device> enable`  |         |
|                    | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
| `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device# configure terminal` |         |
| **Step 3**
| `aaa new-model`   | Enables AAA. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# aaa new-model` |         |
| **Step 4**
| `aaa authentication ppp {default | list-name} method [method2...]` | Creates a local authentication list. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp-auth default local` |         |
| **Step 5**
| `interface interface-type [interface-number]` | Enters interface configuration mode for the interface to which you want to apply the authentication list. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0` |         |
| **Step 6**
| `ppp authentication [protocol1 [protocol2...]] [if-needed] [default | list-name] [call-in] [one-time][optional]` | Applies the authentication list to a line or set of lines. In this command, `protocol1` and `protocol2` represent the following protocols: CHAP, MS-CHAP, and PAP. PPP authentication is attempted first using the first authentication method, specified by `protocol1`. If `protocol1` is unable to establish authentication, the next |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# ppp authentication ms-chap ppp-auth` |         |
Configuring Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configured protocol is used to negotiate authentication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

With the `aaa authentication ppp` command, you create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried when a user tries to authenticate via PPP. These lists are applied using the `ppp authentication` line configuration command.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is *not* specified in the `ppp authentication` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods you want used in default situations.

For example, to specify the local username database as the default method for user authentication, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default local
```

The `list-name` is any character string used to name the list you are creating. The method argument refers to the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify `none` as the final method in the command line.

For example, to specify that authentication should succeed even if (in this example) the TACACS+ server returns an error, enter the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+ none
```

**Note**

Because `none` allows all users logging in to authenticate successfully, it should be used as a backup method of authentication.

### Configuring ARAP Authentication Using AAA

Using the `aaa authentication arap` command, you can create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried when AppleTalk Remote Access Protocol (ARAP) users attempt to log in to the device. These lists are used with the `arap authentication` line configuration command.

Use the following commands starting in global configuration mode:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> <code>aaa authentication arap</code></td>
<td>Enables authentication for ARAP users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>aaa authentication arap</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>aaa authentication arap</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> <code>line number</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Changes to line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>line 1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> Device(config-line)# <code>autoselect arap</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Enables autoselection of ARAP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-line)# <code>autoselect arap</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> <code>autoselect during-login</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Starts the ARAP session automatically at user login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-line)# <code>autoselect during-login</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> <code>arap authentication list-name</code></td>
<td>(Optional—not needed if <code>default</code> is used in the <code>aaa authentication arap</code> command) Enables TACACS+ authentication for ARAP on a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-line)# <code>arap authentication arap-authen</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring NASI Authentication Using AAA

Using the `aaa authentication nasi` command, you can create one or more lists of authentication methods that are tried when NetWare Asynchronous Services Interface (NASI) users attempt to log in to the device. These lists are used with the `nasi authentication line` configuration command.

To configure NASI authentication using AAA, use the following commands starting in global configuration mode:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

The `list-name` is any character string used to name the list you are creating. The `method` argument refers to the actual list of methods the authentication algorithm tries, in the sequence entered.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is *not* specified in the `arap authentication` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods you want to use in default situations.

The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify `none` as the final method in the command line.

**Note**

Because `none` allows all users logging in to be authenticated, it should be used as a backup method of authentication.

For example, to create a default AAA authentication method list used with ARAP, use the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap default if-needed none
```

To create the same authentication method list for ARAP and name the list `MIS-access`, use the following command:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication arap MIS-access if-needed none
```
### Configuring NASI Authentication Using AAA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# <code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>aaa authentication nasi</code></td>
<td>Enables authentication for NASI users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# <code>aaa authentication nasi</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>line number</code></td>
<td>(Optional—not needed if <code>default</code> is used in the <code>aaa authentication nasi</code> command.) Enters line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# <code>line 4</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>nasi authentication list-name</code></td>
<td>(Optional—not needed if <code>default</code> is used in the <code>aaa authentication nasi</code> command.) Enables authentication for NASI on a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-line)# <code>nasi authentication nasi-authen</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits line configuration mode and returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-line)# <code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### What to do next

The `list-name` is any character string used to name the list you are creating. The `method` argument refers to the actual list of methods that the authentication algorithm tries, in the sequence entered.

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the `aaa authentication nasi` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods you want to use in default situations.

The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify `none` as the final method in the command line.
Because none allows all users logging in to be authenticated, it should be used as a backup method of authentication.

Preventing an Access Request with a Blank Username from Being Sent to the RADIUS Server

The following configuration steps provide the ability to prevent an Access Request with a blank username from being sent to the RADIUS server. This functionality ensures that unnecessary RADIUS server interaction is avoided, and RADIUS logs are kept short.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable&lt;br&gt;Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. • Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>aaa new-model&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enables AAA globally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>aaa authentication suppress null-username&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication suppress null-username</td>
<td>Prevents an Access Request with a blank username from being sent to the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>end&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Message Banners for AAA Authentication

AAA supports the use of configurable, personalized login and failed-login banners. You can configure message banners that will be displayed when a user logs in to the system to be authenticated using AAA and when, for whatever reason, authentication fails.

### Configuring a Login Banner

To configure a banner that is displayed when a user logs in (replacing the default message for login), perform the following task:

#### Before you begin

To create a login banner, you must configure a delimiting character that notifies the system that the following text string must be displayed as the banner, and then the text string itself. The delimiting character is repeated at the end of the text string to signify the end of the banner. The delimiting character can be any single character in the extended ASCII character set, but once defined as the delimiter, that character cannot be used in the text string for the banner.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:
  Device> enable |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
  Example:
  Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** | aaa new-model | Enables AAA.  
  Example:
  Device(config)# aaa new-model |
| **Step 4** | aaa authentication banner delimiter string delimiter | Creates a personalized login banner.  
  Example:
  Device(config)# aaa authentication banner *Unauthorized use is prohibited.* |
| **Step 5** | end | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example: |
Configuring a Failed-Login Banner

To configure a message that is displayed when a user login fails (replacing the default message for failed login), perform the following task:

**Before you begin**

To create a failed-login banner, you must configure a delimiting character, which notifies the system that the following text string must be displayed as the banner, and then configure the text string itself. The delimiting character is repeated at the end of the text string to signify the end of the failed-login banner. The delimiting character can be any single character in the extended ASCII character set, but once defined as the delimiter, that character cannot be used in the text string making up the banner.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa authentication fail-message delimiter string delimiter</td>
<td>Creates a message to be displayed when a user login fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication fail-message <em>Failed login. Try again.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring AAA Packet of Disconnect

Packet of disconnect (POD) terminates connections on the network access server (NAS) when particular session attributes are identified. By using session information obtained from AAA, the POD client residing on a UNIX workstation sends disconnect packets to the POD server running on the network access server. The NAS terminates any inbound user session with one or more matching key attributes. It rejects requests when required fields are missing or when an exact match is not found.

To configure POD, perform the following tasks in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>aaa accounting network default start-stop radius</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA accounting records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>aaa accounting network default start-stop radius</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>aaa accounting delay-start</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Delays generation of the start accounting record until the Framed-IP-Address is assigned, allowing its use in the POD packet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>aaa accounting delay-start</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><code>aaa pod server server-key string</code></td>
<td>Enables POD reception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>aaa pod server server-key xyz123</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><code>radius server name non-standard</code></td>
<td>Configures a RADIUS server and enters RADIUS server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>radius server radser</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Double Authentication

To configure double authentication, perform the following steps:

1. Enable AAA by using the `aaa-new model` global configuration command.
2. Use the `aaa authentication` command to configure your network access server to use login and PPP authentication method lists, then apply those method lists to the appropriate lines or interfaces.
3. Use the `aaa authorization` command to configure AAA network authorization at login.
4. Configure security protocol parameters (for example, RADIUS or TACACS+).
5. Use access control list AV pairs on the security server that the user can connect to the local host only by establishing a Telnet connection.
6. (Optional) Configure the `access-profile` command as an autocall. If you configure the autocall, remote users will not have to manually enter the `access-profile` command to access authorized rights associated with their personal user profile.

**Note**

If the `access-profile` command is configured as an autocall, users will still have to Telnet to the local host and log in to complete double authentication.

Follow these rules when creating the user-specific authorization statements (These rules relate to the default behavior of the `access-profile` command):

- Use valid AV pairs when configuring access control list AV pairs on the security server.
- For remote users to use the interface’s existing authorization (that which existed prior to the second stage authentication/authorization), but you want them to have different access control lists (ACLs), you should specify only ACL AV pairs in the user-specific authorization definition. This might be desirable if you set up a default authorization profile to apply to the remote host, but want to apply specific ACLs to specific users.
- When these user-specific authorization statements are later applied to the interface, they can either be added to the existing interface configuration or they can replace the existing interface...
configuration—depending on which form of the access-profile command is used to authorize the user. You should understand how the access-profile command works before configuring the authorization statements.

- If you will be using ISDN or Multilink PPP, you must also configure virtual templates at the local host.

Enabling Automated Double Authentication

You can make the double authentication process easier for users by implementing automated double authentication. Automated double authentication provides all of the security benefits of double authentication, but offers a simpler, more user-friendly interface for remote users. With double authentication, a second level of user authentication is achieved when the user Telnets to the network access server or router and enters a username and password. With automated double authentication, the user does not have to Telnet to the network access server; instead the user responds to a dialog box that requests a username and password or personal identification number (PIN). To use the automated double authentication feature, the remote user hosts must be running a companion client application.

Note

Automated double authentication, like the existing double authentication feature, is for Multilink PPP ISDN connections only. Automated double authentication cannot be used with other protocols such as X.25 or SLIP.

Automated double authentication is an enhancement to the existing double authentication feature. To configure automated double authentication, you must first configure double authentication by completing the following steps:

1. Enable AAA by using the aaa-new model global configuration command.
2. Use the aaa authentication command to configure your network access server to use login and PPP authentication method lists, then apply those method lists to the appropriate lines or interfaces.
3. Use the aaa authorization command to configure AAA network authorization at login.
4. Configure security protocol parameters (for example, RADIUS or TACACS+).
5. Use access control list AV pairs on the security server that the user can connect to the local host only by establishing a Telnet connection.
6. Configure the access-profile command as an autocommand. If you configure the autocommand, remote users will not have to manually enter the access-profile command to access authorized rights associated with their personal user profile.

Note

If the access-profile command is configured as an autocommand, users will still have to Telnet to the local host and log in to complete double authentication.

Follow these rules when creating the user-specific authorization statements (These rules relate to the default behavior of the access-profile command):

- Use valid AV pairs when configuring access control list AV pairs on the security server.
- If you want remote users to use the interface’s existing authorization (that which existed prior to the second stage authentication/authorization), but you want them to have different access control lists.
(ACLs), you should specify only ACL AV pairs in the user-specific authorization definition. This might be desirable if you set up a default authorization profile to apply to the remote host, but want to apply specific ACLs to specific users.

- When these user-specific authorization statements are later applied to the interface, they can either be added to the existing interface configuration, or replace the existing interface configuration—depending on which form of the access-profile command is used to authorize the user. You should understand how the access-profile command works before configuring the authorization statements.

- If you will be using ISDN or Multilink PPP, you must also configure virtual templates at the local host.

### Configuring Automated Double Authentication

To configure automated double authentication, perform the following task:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ip trigger-authentication [timeout seconds] [port number]</strong></td>
<td>Enables automation of double authentication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip trigger-authentication timeout 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>interface type number</strong></td>
<td>Configures an interface and enter the interface configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ip trigger-authentication</strong></td>
<td>Applies automated double authentication to the interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip trigger-authentication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Troubleshooting Automated Double Authentication

To troubleshoot automated double authentication, use the following commands in privileged EXEC mode:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
   | Example:          | • Enter your password if prompted. |
|      | Device> enable    |         |
| 2    | show ip trigger-authentication | Displays the list of remote hosts for which automated double authentication has been attempted (successfully or unsuccessfully). |
|      | Example:          |         |
|      | Device# show ip trigger-authentication | |
| 3    | clear ip trigger-authentication | Clears the list of remote hosts for which automated double authentication has been attempted. (This clears the table displayed by the `show ip trigger-authentication` command.) |
|      | Example:          |         |
|      | Device# clear ip trigger-authentication | |
| 4    | debug ip trigger-authentication | Displays debug output related to automated double authentication. |
|      | Example:          |         |
|      | Device# debug ip trigger-authentication | |

---

### Configuring Domain Stripping at the Server Group Level

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
   | Example:          | • Enter your password if prompted. |
|      | Device> enable    |         |
| 2    | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
|      | Example:          |         |
### Configuring Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Adds the RADIUS server and enters server group RADIUS configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server radius server-name</td>
<td>• The <code>server-name</code> argument specifies the RADIUS server group name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius rad1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Configures domain stripping at the server group level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain-stripping [strip-suffix word] [right-to-left ] [prefix-delimiter word] [delimiter word]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# domain-stripping delimiter <a href="mailto:username@example.com">username@example.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits server group RADIUS configuration mode and returns to the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Configuring Line Password Protection

This task is used to provide access control on a terminal line by entering the password and establishing password checking.

**Note**

If you configure line password protection and then configure TACACS or extended TACACS, the TACACS username and password take precedence over line passwords. If you have not yet implemented a security policy, we recommend that you use AAA.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Establishing Username Authentication

You can create a username-based authentication system, which is useful in the following situations:

- To provide a TACACS-like username and encrypted password-authentication system for networks that cannot support TACACS.
- To provide special-case logins: for example, access list verification, no password verification, autocommand execution at login, and “no escape” situations.

To establish username authentication, perform the following task:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>line [aux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em></td>
<td>Device(config)# line console 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong></td>
<td>Enters line configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>password password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# secret word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong></td>
<td>Assigns a password to a terminal or other device on a line. The password checker is case sensitive and can include spaces; for example, the password “Secret” is different from the password “secret,” and “two words” is an acceptable password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>login</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# login</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong></td>
<td>Enables password checking at login. You can disable line password verification by disabling password checking by using the no version of this command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>The login command only changes username and privilege level but it does not execute a shell; therefore autocommands will not be executed. To execute autocommands under this circumstance, you need to establish a Telnet session back into the device (loop-back). Make sure that the device has been configured for secure Telnet sessions if you choose to implement autocommands this way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong></td>
<td>Exits line configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Establishing Username Authentication**

You can create a username-based authentication system, which is useful in the following situations:

- To provide a TACACS-like username and encrypted password-authentication system for networks that cannot support TACACS.
- To provide special-case logins: for example, access list verification, no password verification, autocommand execution at login, and “no escape” situations.

To establish username authentication, perform the following task:
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable  | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device> enable  |
| **Step 2** configure terminal  | Enters global configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device# configure terminal  |
| **Step 3** Do one of the following:  
  - `username name [nopassword | password password | password encryption-type encrypted password]`  
  - `username name [access-class number]`  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# username superuser  
  password superpassword password 7  
  encrypted-password  
  Device(config)# username user1  
  access-class access-user  |
| **Step 4** `username name [privilege level]`  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# username user1 privilege 5  |
| **Step 5** `username name [autocommand command]`  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# username user1  
  autocommand show users  |
| **Step 6** `username name [noescape] [nohangup]`  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# username user1 noescape  
  nohangup  |
| **Step 7** `end`  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# end  | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# end  |
What to do next

The keyword `noescape` prevents users from using escape characters on the hosts to which they are connected. The `nohangup` feature does not disconnect after using the autocmd.

**Caution**

Passwords will be displayed in clear text in your configuration unless you enable the `service password-encryption` command.

---

### Defining PPP Authentication Using MS-CHAP

To define PPP authentication using MS-CHAP, use the following commands in interface configuration mode:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>encapsulation ppp</code></td>
<td>Enables PPP encapsulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# encapsulation ppp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>interface type number</code></td>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>`ppp authentication ms-chap [if-needed] [list-name</td>
<td>default] [callin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp authentication ms-chap default callin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What to do next

If you configure `ppp authentication ms-chap` on an interface, all incoming calls on that interface that initiate a PPP connection will have to be authenticated using MS-CHAP. If you configure the `ppp authentication` command with the `callin` keyword, the access server will only authenticate the remote device if the remote device initiated the call.

Authentication method lists and the `one-time` keyword are only available if you have enabled AAA—they will not be available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. If you specify the name of an authentication method list with the `ppp authentication` command, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined in the specified method list. If AAA is enabled and no method list is defined by name, PPP will attempt to authenticate the connection using the methods defined as the default. The `ppp authentication` command with the `one-time` keyword enables support for one-time passwords during authentication.

The `if-needed` keyword is only available if you are using TACACS or extended TACACS. The `ppp authentication` command with the `if-needed` keyword means that PPP will only authenticate the remote device via MS-CHAP if that device has not yet authenticated during the life of the current call. If the remote device authenticated through a standard login procedure and initiated PPP from the EXEC prompt, PPP will not authenticate through MS-CHAP if `ppp authentication chap if-needed` is configured.

Note

If PPP authentication using MS-CHAP is used with username authentication, you must include the MS-CHAP secret in the local username/password database.

Configuration Examples for Authentication

Example: Configuring Method Lists

Suppose the system administrator has decided on a security solution where all interfaces will use the same authentication methods to authenticate PPP connections. In the RADIUS group, R1 is contacted first for authentication information, then if there is no response, R2 is contacted. If R2 does not respond, T1 in the TACACS+ group is contacted; if T1 does not respond, T2 is contacted. If all designated servers fail to respond, authentication falls to the local username database on the access server itself. To implement this solution, the system administrator would create a default method list by entering the following command:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group radius group tacacs+ local
Device(config)# exit
```

In this example, “default” is the name of the method list. The protocols included in this method list are listed after the name, in the order they are to be queried. The default list is automatically applied to all interfaces.

When a remote user attempts to dial in to the network, the network access server first queries R1 for authentication information. If R1 authenticates the user, it issues a PASS response to the network access server and the user is allowed to access the network. If R1 returns a FAIL response, the user is denied access and the session is terminated. If R1 does not respond, then the network access server processes that as an ERROR and queries R2 for authentication information. This pattern would continue through the remaining designated methods until the user is either authenticated or rejected, or until the session is terminated.
It is important to remember that a FAIL response is significantly different from an ERROR. A FAIL means that the user has not met the criteria contained in the applicable authentication database to be successfully authenticated. Authentication ends with a FAIL response. An ERROR means that the security server has not responded to an authentication query. Because of this, no authentication has been attempted. Only when an ERROR is detected will AAA select the next authentication method defined in the authentication method list.

Suppose the system administrator wants to apply a method list only to a particular interface or set of interfaces. In this case, the system administrator creates a named method list and then applies this named list to the applicable interfaces. The following example shows how the system administrator can implement an authentication method that will be applied only to interface 3:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# device(config)#
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp server-group1 group radius group tacacs+ local none
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/3
Device(config-if)# ppp authentication chap server-group1
Device(config-if)# end
```

In this example, “apple” is the name of the method list, and the protocols included in this method list are listed after the name in the order in which they are to be performed. After the method list has been created, it is applied to the appropriate interface. Note that the method list name (apple) in both the AAA and PPP authentication commands must match.

In the following example, the system administrator uses server groups to specify that only R2 and T2 are valid servers for PPP authentication. To do this, the administrator must define specific server groups whose members are R2 (172.16.2.7) and T2 (172.16.2.77), respectively. In this example, the RADIUS server group “rad2only” is defined as follows using the `aaa group server` command:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius rad2only
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 172.16.2.7
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

The TACACS+ server group “tac2only” is defined as follows using the `aaa group server` command:

```
Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ tac2only
Device(config-sg-tacacs)# server 172.16.2.77
Device(config-sg-tacacs)# end
```

The administrator then applies PPP authentication using the server groups. In this example, the default methods list for PPP authentication follows this order: `group rad2only`, `group tac2only`, and `local`:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group rad2only group tac2only local
```

If a method list is configured under VTY lines, the corresponding method list must be added to AAA. The following example shows how to configure a method list under a VTY line:

```
Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
Device(config-line)# authorization commands 15 auth1
```
The following example shows how to configure a method list in AAA:

```plaintext
Device(config-line)# exit
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 auth1 group tacacs+
Device(config)# exit
```

If no method list is configured under VTY lines, the default method list must be added to AAA. The following example shows a VTY configuration without a method list:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
Device(config-line)# end
```

The following example shows how to configure the default method list:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 default group tacacs+
Device(config)# exit
```

### Example: RADIUS Authentication

This section provides two sample configurations using RADIUS.

The following example shows how to configure the router to authenticate and authorize using RADIUS:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication login radius-login group radius local
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp radius-ppp if-needed group radius
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group radius
Device(config)# line 3
Device(config-line)# login authentication radius-login
Device(config-line)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ppp authentication radius-ppp
Device(config-if)# end
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS authentication and authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa authentication login radius-login group radius local` command configures the router to use RADIUS for authentication at the login prompt. If RADIUS returns an error, the user is authenticated using the local database.

- The `aaa authentication ppp radius-ppp if-needed group radius` command configures the Cisco IOS XE software to use PPP authentication using CHAP or PAP if the user has not already logged in. If the EXEC facility has authenticated the user, PPP authentication is not performed.
• The `aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated` command queries the RADIUS database for information that is used during EXEC authorization, such as autocmds and privilege levels, but only provides authorization if the user has successfully authenticated.

• The `aaa authorization network default group radius` command queries RADIUS for network authorization, address assignment, and other access lists.

• The `login authentication radius-login` command enables the radius-login method list for line 3.

• The `ppp authentication radius-ppp` command enables the radius-ppp method list for serial interface 0.

The following example shows how to configure the router to prompt for and verify a username and password, authorize the user’s EXEC level, and specify it as the method of authorization for privilege level 2. In this example, if a local username is entered at the username prompt, that username is used for authentication.

If the user is authenticated using the local database, EXEC authorization using RADIUS will fail because no data is saved from the RADIUS authentication. The method list also uses the local database to find an autocmd. If there is no autocmd, the user becomes the EXEC user. If the user then attempts to issue commands that are set at privilege level 2, TACACS+ is used to attempt to authorize the command.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius local
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default group radius local
Device(config)# aaa authorization command 2 default group tacacs+ if-authenticated
Device(config)# radius server radserver
Device(config-sg-radius)# address ipv4 10.2.3.1
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# radius-server attribute 44 include-in-access-req
Device(config)# radius-server attribute 8 include-in-access-req
Device(config)# end
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS authentication and authorization configuration are defined as follows:

• The `aaa authentication login default group radius local` command specifies that the username and password are verified by RADIUS or, if RADIUS is not responding, by the router’s local user database.

• The `aaa authorization exec default group radius local` command specifies that RADIUS authentication information be used to set the user’s EXEC level if the user authenticates with RADIUS. If no RADIUS information is used, this command specifies that the local user database be used for EXEC authorization.

• The `aaa authorization command 2 default group tacacs+ if-authenticated` command specifies TACACS+ authorization for commands set at privilege level 2, if the user has already successfully authenticated.

• The `radius-server host 172.16.71.146 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646` command specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server host, the UDP destination port for authentication requests, and the UDP destination port for accounting requests.

• The `radius-server attribute 44 include-in-access-req` command sends RADIUS attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID) in access-request packets.

• The `radius-server attribute 8 include-in-access-req` command sends RADIUS attribute 8 (Framed-IP-Address) in access-request packets.
Example: TACACS Authentication

The following example shows how to configure TACACS+ as the security protocol to be used for PPP authentication:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp test group tacacs+ local
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/2
Device(config-if)# ppp authentication chap pap test
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# tacacs-server host 192.0.2.3
Device(config)# tacacs-server key key1
Device(config)# end
```

The lines in this sample TACACS+ authentication configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables the AAA security services.
- The `aaa authentication` command defines a method list, “test,” to be used on serial interfaces running PPP. The keywords `group tacacs+` means that authentication will be done through TACACS+. If TACACS+ returns an ERROR of some sort during authentication, the keyword `local` indicates that authentication will be attempted using the local database on the network access server.
- The `interface` command selects the line.
- The `ppp authentication` command applies the test method list to this line.
- The `tacacs-server host` command identifies the TACACS+ daemon as having an IP address of 192.0.2.3.
- The `tacacs-server key` command defines the shared encryption key to be “key1.”

The following example shows how to configure AAA authentication for PPP:

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default if-needed group tacacs+ local
```

In this example, the keyword `default` means that PPP authentication is applied by default to all interfaces. The `if-needed` keyword means that if the user has already authenticated by going through the ASCII login procedure, then PPP is not necessary and can be skipped. If authentication is needed, the keywords `group tacacs+` means that authentication will be done through TACACS+. If TACACS+ returns an ERROR of some sort during authentication, the keyword `local` indicates that authentication will be attempted using the local database on the network access server.

The following example shows how to create the same authentication algorithm for PAP, but it calls the method list “MIS-access” instead of “default”:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp MIS-access if-needed group tacacs+ local
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/2
Device(config)# ppp authentication pap MIS-access
Device(config)# end
```

In this example, because the list does not apply to any interfaces (unlike the default list, which applies automatically to all interfaces), the administrator must select interfaces to which this authentication scheme
should apply by using the `interface` command. The administrator must then apply this method list to those interfaces by using the `ppp authentication` command.

### Example: Kerberos Authentication

To specify Kerberos as the login authentication method, use the following command:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default krb5
Device(config)# end
```

To specify Kerberos authentication for PPP, use the following command:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default krb5
Device(config)# end
```

### Example: AAA Scalability

The following example shows a general security configuration using AAA with RADIUS as the security protocol. In this example, the network access server is configured to allocate 16 background processes to handle AAA requests for PPP.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# radius server radserver
Device(config-sg-radius)# address ipv4 radius-host
Device(config-sg-radius)# key myRaDiUSpassWoRd
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# radius-server configure-nas
Device(config)# username root password ALongPassword
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local
Device(config)# aaa authentication login admins local
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group radius local
Device(config)# aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius
Device(config)# aaa processes 16
Device(config)# line 1 16
Device(config-line)# autoselect ppp
Device(config-line)# autoselect during-login
Device(config-line)# login authentication admins
Device(config-line)# modem dialin
Device(config-line)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/2/0
Device(config-if)# group-range 1 16
Device(config-if)# encapsulation ppp
Device(config-if)# ppp authentication pap dialins
Device(config-if)# end
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS AAA configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables AAA network security services.
- The `address ipv4 {hostname | host-address}` command defines the name of the RADIUS server host.
- The `key` command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the RADIUS server host.
• The `radius-server configure-nas` command defines that the Cisco router or access server will query the RADIUS server for static routes and IP pool definitions when the device first starts up.

• The `username` command defines the username and password to be used for the PPP Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) caller identification.

• The `aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local` command defines the authentication method list “dialins,” which specifies that RADIUS authentication, then (if the RADIUS server does not respond) local authentication will be used on serial lines using PPP.

• The `aaa authentication login admins local` command defines another method list, “admins,” for login authentication.

• The `aaa authorization network default group radius local` command is used to assign an address and other network parameters to the RADIUS user.

• The `aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius` command tracks PPP usage.

• The `aaa processes` command allocates 16 background processes to handle AAA requests for PPP.

• The `line` command switches the configuration mode from global configuration to line configuration and identifies the specific lines being configured.

• The `autoselect ppp` command allows a PPP session to start up automatically on these selected lines.

• The `autoselect during-login` command is used to display the username and password prompt without pressing the Return key. After the user logs in, the autoselect function (in this case, PPP) begins.

• The `login authentication admins` command applies the “admins” method list for login authentication.

• The `modem dialin` command configures modems attached to the selected lines to only accept incoming calls.

• The `interface group-async` command selects and defines an asynchronous interface group.

• The `group-range` command defines the member asynchronous interfaces in the interface group.

• The `encapsulation ppp` command sets PPP as the encapsulation method used on the specified interfaces.

• The `ppp authentication pap dialins` command applies the “dialins” method list to the specified interfaces.

---

**Example: Configuring Login and Failed-Login Banners for AAA Authentication**

The following example shows how to configure a login banner that is displayed when a user logs in to the system, (in this case, the phrase “Unauthorized Access Prohibited”). The asterisk (*) is used as the delimiting character. RADIUS is specified as the default login authentication method.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication banner *Unauthorized Access Prohibited*
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
Device(config)# end
```

This configuration displays the following login banner:

```
Unauthorized Access Prohibited
Username:
```
The following examples show how to configure a failed-login banner that is displayed when a user tries to log in to the system and fails, (in this case, the phrase “Failed login. Try again”). The asterisk (*) is used as the delimiting character. RADIUS is specified as the default login authentication method.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication banner *Unauthorized Access Prohibited*
Device(config)# aaa authentication fail-message *Failed login. Try again.*
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
Device(config)# end
```

This configuration displays the following login and failed-login banner:

```
Unauthorized Access Prohibited
Username: 
Password: 
Failed login. Try again.
```

**Example: AAA Packet of Disconnect Server Key**

The following example shows how to configure POD (packet of disconnect), which terminates connections on the network access server (NAS) when particular session attributes are identified.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default radius
Device(config)# aaa accounting network default start-stop radius
Device(config)# aaa accounting delay-start
Device(config)# aaa pod server server-key xyz123
Device(config)# radius server non-standard
Device(config-sg-radius)# address ipv4 10.2.1.1
Device(config-sg-radius)# key rad123
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

**Example: Double Authentication**

The examples in this section illustrate possible configurations to be used with double authentication. Your configurations could differ significantly, depending on your network and security requirements.

---

**Note**

These configuration examples include specific IP addresses and other specific information. This information is for illustration purposes only: your configuration will use different IP addresses, different usernames and passwords, and different authorization statements.

---

**Example: Configuration of the Local Host for AAA with Double Authentication**

These two examples show how to configure a local host to use AAA for PPP and login authentication, and for network and EXEC authorization. An example each is shown for RADIUS and for TACACS+.
In both the examples, the first three lines configure AAA with a specific server as the AAA server. The next two lines configure AAA for PPP and login authentication, and the last two lines configure network and EXEC authorization. The last line is necessary only if the `access-profile` command will be executed as an autocommand.

The following example shows device configuration with a RADIUS AAA server:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# radius server radserver
Device(config-sg-radius)# address ipv4 secureserver
Device(config-sg-radius)# key myradiuskey
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group radius
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group radius
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default group radius
Device(config)# end
```

The following example shows device configuration with a TACACS+ server:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# tacacs-server host security
Device(config)# tacacs-server key mytacacskey
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group tacacs+
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default group tacacs+
Device(config)# end
```

**Example: Configuration of the AAA Server for First-Stage PPP Authentication and Authorization**

This example shows a configuration on the AAA server. A partial sample AAA configuration is shown for RADIUS.

TACACS+ servers can be configured similarly. (See the Complete Configuration with TACACS Example.)

This example defines authentication/authorization for a remote host named “hostx” that will be authenticated by CHAP in the first stage of double authentication. Note that the ACL AV pair limits the remote host to Telnet connections to the local host. The local host has the IP address 10.0.0.2.

The following example shows a partial AAA server configuration for RADIUS:

```
hostx
  Password = “welcome”
  User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
  Framed-Protocol = PPP,
  cisco-avpair = “lcp:interface-config-ip unnumbered fastethernet 0”,
  cisco-avpair = “ip:inac1#3-permit tcp any 172.21.114.0 0.0.0.255 eq telnet”,
  cisco-avpair = “ip:inac1#4-deny icmp any”,
  cisco-avpair = “ip:route#5=10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0”,
  cisco-avpair = “ip:route#6=10.10.0.0 255.0.0.0”,
  cisco-avpair = “ipx:inac1#3-deny any”
```
Example: Configuration of the AAA Server for Second-Stage Per-User Authentication and Authorization

This section contains partial sample AAA configurations on a RADIUS server. These configurations define authentication and authorization for a user with the username “user1,” who will be user-authenticated in the second stage of double authentication.

TACACS+ servers can be configured similarly.

Three examples show sample RADIUS AAA configurations that could be used with each of the three forms of the access-profile command.

The first example shows a partial sample AAA configuration that works with the default form (no keywords) of the access-profile command. Note that only ACL AV pairs are defined. This example also sets up the access-profile command as an autocommand.

```
user1  Password = “welcome”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User,
cisco-avpair = “shell:autocmd=access-profile”
User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any host 10.0.0.2 eq telnet”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#4=deny icmp any any”
```

The second example shows a partial sample AAA configuration that works with the access-profile merge form of the access-profile command. This example also sets up the access-profile merge command as an autocommand.

```
user1  Password = “welcome”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User,
cisco-avpair = “shell:autocmd=access-profile merge”
User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any any”
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.0.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.2.0.0 255.255.0.0”
```

The third example shows a partial sample AAA configuration that works with the access-profile replace form of the access-profile command. This example also sets up the access-profile replace command as an autocommand.

```
user1  Password = “welcome”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User,
cisco-avpair = “shell:autocmd=access-profile replace”
User-Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#3=permit tcp any any”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:inacl#4=permit icmp any any”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.10.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0”,
cisco-avpair = “ip:route=10.12.0.0 255.255.0.0”
```

Example: Complete Configuration with TACACS

This example shows TACACS+ authorization profile configurations both for the remote host (used in the first stage of double authentication) and for specific users (used in the second stage of double authentication).
This sample configuration shows authentication/authorization profiles on the TACACS+ server for the remote host “hostx” and for three users, with the usernames “user_default,” “user_merge,” and “user_replace.” The configurations for these three usernames illustrate different configurations that correspond to the three different forms of the `access-profile` command. The three user configurations also illustrate setting up the autocommand for each form of the `access-profile` command.

The figure below shows the topology. The example that follows the figure shows a TACACS+ configuration file.

*Figure 3: Example Topology for Double Authentication*

```
key = "mytacacskey"
default authorization = permit
#-----------------------------Remote Host (BRI)-------------------------
#
# This allows the remote host to be authenticated by the local host
# during fist-stage authentication, and provides the remote host
# authorization profile.
#
#---------------------------------------------------------------
user = hostx
{
  login = cleartext "welcome"
  chap = cleartext "welcome"
  service = ppp protocol = lcp {
    interface-config="ip unnumbered fastethernet 0"
  }
  service = ppp protocol = ip {
    # It is important to have the hash sign and some string after
    # it. This indicates to the NAS that you have a per-user
    # config.
    inacl#3="permit tcp any 172.21.114.0 0.0.0.255 eq telnet"
    inacl#4="deny icmp any any"
    route#5="10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0"
    route#6="10.10.0.0 255.0.0.0"
  }
  service = ppp protocol = ipx {
    # see previous comment about the hash sign and string, in protocol = ip
    inacl#3="deny any"
  }
}
#------------------- "access-profile" default user "only acls" ------------------
#
# Without arguments, access-profile removes any access-lists it can find
# in the old configuration (both per-user and per-interface), and makes sure
# that the new profile contains ONLY access-list definitions.
```
Example: Complete Configuration with TACACS

```plaintext
#--------------------------------------------------
user = user_default
{
    login = cleartext "welcome"
    chap = cleartext "welcome"
    service = exec
    {
        # This is the autocommand that executes when user_default logs in.
        autocmd = "access-profile"
    }
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        # Put whatever access-lists, static routes, whatever
        # here.
        # If you leave this blank, the user will have NO IP
        # access-lists (not even the ones installed prior to
        # this)!
        inacl#3="permit tcp any host 10.0.0.2 eq telnet"
        inacl#4="deny icmp any any"
    }
    service = ppp protocol = ipx {
        # Put whatever access-lists, static routes, whatever
        # here.
        # If you leave this blank, the user will have NO IPX
        # access-lists (not even the ones installed prior to
        # this)!
    }
}
#--------------------- "access-profile merge" user ---------------------------
# With the 'merge' option, first all old access-lists are removed (as before),
# but then (almost) all AV pairs are uploaded and installed. This will allow
# for uploading any custom static routes, sap-filters, and so on, that the user
# may need in his or her profile. This needs to be used with care, as it leaves
# open the possibility of conflicting configurations.
#--------------------------------------------------
user = user_merge
{
    login = cleartext "welcome"
    chap = cleartext "welcome"
    service = exec
    {
        # This is the autocommand that executes when user_merge logs in.
        autocmd = "access-profile merge"
    }
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        # Put whatever access-lists, static routes, whatever
        # here.
        # If you leave this blank, the user will have NO IP
        # access-lists (not even the ones installed prior to
        # this)!
        route#2="10.0.0.0 255.255.0.0"
        route#3="10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0"
        route#4="10.2.0.0 255.255.0.0"
    }
    service = ppp protocol = ipx {
        # Put whatever access-lists, static routes, whatever
        # here.
        # If you leave this blank, the user will have NO IPX
        # access-lists (not even the ones installed prior to
        # this)!
    }
}
```

Configuring Authentication

Example: Complete Configuration with TACACS
Example: Automated Double Authentication

This example shows a complete configuration file with automated double authentication configured. The configuration commands that apply to automated double authentication are preceded by descriptions with a double asterisk (**).

Current configuration:
!
version 16.10
no service password-encryption
!
hostname myrouter
!
**The following AAA commands are used to configure double authentication:

**The following command enables AAA:
`aaa new-model`

**The following command enables user authentication via the RADIUS AAA server:
`aaa authentication login default none`
`aaa authentication ppp default group radius`

**The following command causes the remote user’s authorization profile to be downloaded from the AAA server to the router when required:
`aaa authorization network default group radius`

**The following command specifies that device authentication occurs via PPP CHAP:
`ppp authentication chap`

**Virtual profiles are required for double authentication to work:
`virtual-profile virtual-template 1 dialer-list 1 protocol ip permit`

**The following command defines where the TACACS+ AAA server is:
`tacacs-server host 172.16.57.35 port 1049 tacacs-server timeout 90`

**The following command defines the key to use with TACACS+ traffic (required):
`tacacs-server key mytacacskey`

`snmp-server community public RO`

**The following command defines where the EIGRP routing is:
`router eigrp 109 network 172.21.0.0 no auto-summary`
`ip route 172.21.127.114 255.255.255.255 172.21.127.113`

`enable password mypassword`
`ip host blue 172.21.127.226`
`ip host green 172.21.127.218`
`ip host red 172.21.127.114`
`ip domain-name example.com`
`ip name-server 172.16.2.75`

**The following configuration specifies how the interfaces are configured:

**Interface configuration:
`interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0`
`ip address 172.21.127.186 255.255.255.248`
`no ip route-cache`
`no ip mroute-cache`
`no keepalive`
`ntp disable`
`no cdp enable`

`interface Virtual-Template1`
`ip unnumbered loopback0`
`no ip route-cache`
`no ip mroute-cache`

**Routing configuration:
`router eigrp 109 network 172.21.0.0 no auto-summary`
`ip route 172.21.127.114 255.255.255.255 172.21.127.113`

**Another interface configuration:
`interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0`
`ip address 172.21.127.186 255.255.255.248`
`no ip route-cache`
`no ip mroute-cache`
`no keepalive`
`ntp disable`
`no cdp enable`

**Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
Feature History for Configuring Authentication

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>AAA Authentication</td>
<td>Authentication provides a method to identify users, which includes the login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support, and encryption, depending on the selected security protocol. Authentication is the way a user is identified prior to being allowed access to the network and network services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
Feature History for Configuring Authentication
AAA authorization enables you to limit the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the network access server uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. Once this is done, the user will be granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

- Prerequisites for Configuring Authorization, on page 77
- Information About Configuring Authorization, on page 78
- How to Configure Authorization, on page 81
- Configuration Examples for Authorization, on page 84
- Feature History for Configuring Authorization, on page 87

Prerequisites for Configuring Authorization

Before configuring authorization using named method lists, you must first perform the following tasks:

- Enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) on your network access server.

- Configure AAA authentication. Authorization generally takes place after authentication and relies on authentication to work properly. For more information about AAA authentication, refer to the “Configuring Authentication” module.

- Define the characteristics of your RADIUS or TACACS+ security server if you are issuing RADIUS or TACACS+ authorization. For more information about configuring your Cisco network access server to communicate with your RADIUS security server, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS”. For more information about configuring your Cisco network access server to communicate with your TACACS+ security server, refer to the “Configuring TACACS+” module.

- Define the rights associated with specific users by using the `username` command if you are issuing local authorization.
Information About Configuring Authorization

Named Method Lists for Authorization

Method lists for authorization define the ways that authorization will be performed and the sequence in which these methods will be performed. A method list is simply a named list describing the authorization methods to be queried (such as RADIUS or TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols to be used for authorization, thus ensuring a backup system in case the initial method fails. Cisco IOS XE software uses the first method listed to authorize users for specific network services; if that method fails to respond, the Cisco IOS XE software selects the next method listed in the list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authorization method, or all methods defined are exhausted.

Note

The Cisco IOS XE software attempts authorization with the next listed method only when there is no response from the previous method. If authorization fails at any point in this cycle--meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user services--the authorization process stops and no other authorization methods are attempted.

Method lists are specific to the authorization type requested:

- **Commands**: Applies to the EXEC mode commands a user issues. Command authorization attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level.
- **EXEC**: Applies to the attributes associated with a user EXEC terminal session.
- **Network**: Applies to network connections. This can include a PPP, SLIP, or ARAP connection.
- **Reverse Access**: Applies to reverse Telnet sessions.

When you create a named method list, you are defining a particular list of authorization methods for the indicated authorization type.

Once defined, method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods will be performed. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). If the `aaa authorization` command for a particular authorization type is issued without a named method list specified, the default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces or lines except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. (A defined method list overrides the default method list.) If no default method list is defined, local authorization takes place by default.

AAA Authorization Methods

AAA supports five different methods of authorization:

- **TACACS+**: The network access server exchanges authorization information with the TACACS+ security daemon. TACACS+ authorization defines specific rights for users by associating attribute-value pairs, which are stored in a database on the TACACS+ security server, with the appropriate user.
Authorization Methods

To have the network access server request authorization information via a TACACS+ security server, use the **aaa authorization** command with the **group tacacs+ method** keyword. For more specific information about configuring authorization using a TACACS+ security server, refer to the chapter “Configuring TACACS+.” For an example of how to enable a TACACS+ server to authorize the use of network services, including PPP and ARA, see the TACACS Authorization Examples.

To allow users to have access to the functions they request as long as they have been authenticated, use the **aaa authorization** command with the **if-authenticated method** keyword. If you select this method, all requested functions are automatically granted to authenticated users.

There may be times when you do not want to run authorization from a particular interface or line. To stop authorization activities on designated lines or interfaces, use the **none method** keyword. If you select this method, authorization is disabled for all actions.

To select local authorization, which means that the router or access server consults its local user database to determine the functions a user is permitted to use, use the **aaa authorization** command with the **local method** keyword. The functions associated with local authorization are defined by using the **username** global configuration command. For a list of permitted functions, refer to the chapter “Configuring Authentication.”

To have the network access server request authorization via a RADIUS security server, use the **radius method** keyword. For more specific information about configuring authorization using a RADIUS security server, refer to the chapter Configuring RADIUS. For an example of how to enable a RADIUS server to authorize services, see the RADIUS Authorization Example.
Authorization method lists for SLIP follow whatever is configured for PPP on the relevant interface. If no lists are defined and applied to a particular interface (or no PPP settings are configured), the default setting for authorization applies.

## Method Lists and Server Groups

A server group is a way to group existing RADIUS or TACACS+ server hosts for use in method lists. The figure below shows a typical AAA network configuration that includes four security servers: R1 and R2 are RADIUS servers, and T1 and T2 are TACACS+ servers. R1 and R2 make up the group of RADIUS servers. T1 and T2 make up the group of TACACS+ servers.

Using server groups, you can specify a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. For example, server groups allow you to define R1 and R2 as separate server groups, and T1 and T2 as separate server groups. This means you can specify either R1 and T1 in the method list or R2 and T2 in the method list, which provides more flexibility in the way that you assign RADIUS and TACACS+ resources.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, authorization—the second host entry configured acts as fail-over backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server will try the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries will be tried in the order they are configured.)

For more information about configuring server groups and about configuring server groups based on DNIS numbers, refer to the chapter Configuring RADIUS or the chapter Configuring TACACS+.

## AAA Authorization Types

Cisco IOS XE software supports five different types of authorization:

- **Commands**: Applies to the EXEC mode commands a user issues. Command authorization attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level.

- **EXEC**: Applies to the attributes associated with a user EXEC terminal session.

- **Network**: Applies to network connections. This can include a PPP, SLIP, or ARAP connection.

- **Reverse Access**: Applies to reverse Telnet sessions.

- **Configuration**: Applies to downloading configurations from the AAA server.

- **IP Mobile**: Applies to authorization for IP mobile services.

## Authorization Types

Named authorization method lists are specific to the indicated type of authorization.
To create a method list to enable authorization that applies specific security policies on a per-user basis, use the auth-proxy keyword. For detailed information on the authentication proxy feature, refer to the chapter “Configuring Authentication Proxy” in the “Traffic Filtering and Firewalls” part of this book.

To create a method list to enable authorization for all network-related service requests (including SLIP, PPP, PPP NCPs, and ARAP), use the network keyword.

To create a method list to enable authorization to determine if a user is allowed to run an EXEC shell, use the exec keyword.

To create a method list to enable authorization for specific, individual EXEC commands associated with a specific privilege level, use the commands keyword. (This allows you to authorize all commands associated with a specified command level from 0 to 15.)

To create a method list to enable authorization for reverse Telnet functions, use the reverse-access keyword.

For information about the types of authorization supported by the Cisco IOS XE software, refer to the AAA Authorization Types.

Authorization Attribute-Value Pairs

RADIUS and TACACS+ authorization both define specific rights for users by processing attributes, which are stored in a database on the security server. For both RADIUS and TACACS+, attributes are defined on the security server, associated with the user, and sent to the network access server where they are applied to the user’s connection.

For a list of supported RADIUS attributes, refer to the “RADIUS Attributes Overview and RADIUS IETF Attributes” chapter. For a list of supported TACACS+ AV pairs, refer to the “Configuring TACACS+” chapter.

How to Configure Authorization

Configuring AAA Authorization Using Named Method Lists

To configure AAA authorization using named method lists, use the following commands beginning in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>`aaa authorization {auth-proxy</td>
<td>network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization auth-proxy default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• `line [aux</td>
<td>console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>interface interface-type interface-number</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# line 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• `authorization {arap</td>
<td>commands level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• `ppp authorization {default</td>
<td>list-name}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# authorization commands default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ppp authorization default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits line configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-line)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disabling Authorization for Global Configuration Commands**

The `aaa authorization` command with the keyword `commands` attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level. Because there are configuration commands that are identical to some EXEC-level commands, there can be some confusion in the authorization process. Using `no aaa authorization config-commands` stops the network access server from attempting configuration command authorization.
To disable AAA authorization for all global configuration commands, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# no aaa authorization config-commands</td>
<td>Disables authorization for all global configuration commands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To disable AAA authorization on the console, use the following command in global configuration mode:

Note: AAA authorization is disabled on the console by default. If AAA authorization is enabled on the console, disable it by configuring the no aaa authorization console command during the AAA configuration stage. AAA should be disabled on the console for user authentication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# no aaa authorization console</td>
<td>Disables authorization on the console.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Configuring Authorization for Reverse Telnet

Telnet is a standard terminal emulation protocol used for remote terminal connection. Normally, you log in to a network access server (typically through a dialup connection) and then use Telnet to access other network devices from that network access server. There are times, however, when it is necessary to establish a reverse Telnet session. In reverse Telnet sessions, the Telnet connection is established in the opposite direction--from inside a network to a network access server on the network periphery to gain access to modems or other devices connected to that network access server. Reverse Telnet is used to provide users with dialout capability by allowing them to Telnet to modem ports attached to a network access server.

It is important to control access to ports accessible through reverse Telnet. Failure to do so could, for example, allow unauthorized users free access to modems where they can trap and divert incoming calls or make outgoing calls to unauthorized destinations.

Authentication during reverse Telnet is performed through the standard AAA login procedure for Telnet. Typically the user has to provide a username and password to establish either a Telnet or reverse Telnet session. Reverse Telnet authorization provides an additional (optional) level of security by requiring authorization in addition to authentication. When enabled, reverse Telnet authorization can use RADIUS or TACACS+ to authorize whether or not this user is allowed reverse Telnet access to specific asynchronous ports, after the user successfully authenticates through the standard Telnet login procedure.

Reverse Telnet authorization offers the following benefits:

- An additional level of protection by ensuring that users engaged in reverse Telnet activities are indeed authorized to access a specific asynchronous port using reverse Telnet.

- An alternative method (other than access lists) to manage reverse Telnet authorization.

To configure a network access server to request authorization information from a TACACS+ or RADIUS server before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session, use the following command in global configuration mode:
Configure the network access server to request authorization information before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization reverse-access method1 [method2 ...]</td>
<td>Configures the network access server to request authorization information before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This feature enables the network access server to request reverse Telnet authorization information from the security server, whether RADIUS or TACACS+. You must configure the specific reverse Telnet privileges for the user on the security server itself.

**Configuration Examples for Authorization**

**Example: TACACS Authorization**

The following examples show how to use a TACACS+ server to authorize the use of network services, including PPP and ARA. If the TACACS+ server is not available or an error occurs during the authorization process, the fallback method (none) is to grant all authorization requests:

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group tacacs+ none
```

The following example shows how to allow network authorization using TACACS+:

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group tacacs+
```

The following example shows how to provide the same authorization, but it also creates address pools called "mci" and "att":

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group tacacs+
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 01/1/
Device(config-if)# ip address-pool local
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# ip local-pool mci 172.16.0.1 172.16.0.255
Device(config)# ip local-pool att 172.17.0.1 172.17.0.255
Device(config-if)# end
```

These address pools can then be selected by the TACACS daemon. A sample configuration of the daemon follows:

```
user = mci_customer1 {
    login = cleartext "some password"
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        addr-pool=mci
    }
}
user = att_customer1 {
    login = cleartext "some other password"
    service = ppp protocol = ip {
        addr-pool=att
    }
}
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
Example: RADIUS Authorization

The following example shows how to configure the router to authorize using RADIUS:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group radius
Device(config)# radius server ip
Device(config-radius-server)# key sharedkey
Device(config-radius-server)# end
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa authorization exec default group radius if-authenticated` command configures the network access server to contact the RADIUS server to determine if users are permitted to start an EXEC shell when they log in. If an error occurs when the network access server contacts the RADIUS server, the fallback method is to permit the CLI to start, provided the user has been properly authenticated.

The RADIUS information returned may be used to specify an autocommand or a connection access list be applied to this connection.

- The `aaa authorization network default group radius` command configures network authorization via RADIUS. This can be used to govern address assignment, the application of access lists, and various other per-user quantities.

Note

Because no fallback method is specified in this example, authorization will fail if, for any reason, there is no response from the RADIUS server.

Example: Reverse Telnet Authorization

The following examples show how to cause the network access server to request authorization information from a TACACS+ security server before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
Device(config)# aaa authorization reverse-access default group tacacs+
Device(config)# tacacs-server host 172.31.255.0
Device(config)# tacacs-server timeout 90
Device(config)# tacacs-server key sharedkey
Device(config)# end
```

The lines in this sample TACACS+ reverse Telnet authorization configuration are defined as follows:

- The `aaa new-model` command enables AAA.

- The `aaa authentication login default group tacacs+` command specifies TACACS+ as the default method for user authentication during login.

- The `aaa authorization reverse-access default group tacacs+` command specifies TACACS+ as the method for user authorization when trying to establish a reverse Telnet session.
• The `tacacs-server host` command identifies the TACACS+ server.

• The `tacacs-server timeout` command sets the interval of time that the network access server waits for the TACACS+ server to reply.

• The `tacacs-server key` command defines the encryption key used for all TACACS+ communications between the network access server and the TACACS+ daemon.

The following example shows how to configure a generic TACACS+ server to grant a user, pat, reverse Telnet access to port tty2 on the network access server named “maple” and to port tty5 on the network access server named “oak”:

```plaintext
user = pat
    login = cleartext lab
    service = raccess {
        port#1 = maple/tty2
        port#2 = oak/tty5
    }
```

**Note**

In this example, “maple” and “oak” are the configured host names of network access servers, not DNS names or alias.

The following example shows how to configure the TACACS+ server (CiscoSecure) to grant a user named pat reverse Telnet access:

```plaintext
user = pat
    profile_id = 90
    profile_cycle = 1
    member = Tacacs_Users
    service=shell {
        default cmd=permit
    }
    service=raccess {
        allow “c2511e0” “tty1” ".*”
        refuse “.*” “.*” “.*”
        password = clear “goaway”
    }
```

**Note**

CiscoSecure only supports reverse Telnet using the command line interface in versions 2.1(x) through version 2.2(1).

An empty “service=raccess {}” clause permits a user to have unconditional access to network access server ports for reverse Telnet. If no “service=raccess” clause exists, the user is denied access to any port for reverse Telnet.

For more information about configuring TACACS+, refer to the “Configuring TACACS” chapter. For more information about configuring CiscoSecure, refer to the *CiscoSecure Access Control Server User Guide*, version 2.1(2) or greater.

The following example shows how to cause the network access server to request authorization from a RADIUS security server before allowing a user to establish a reverse Telnet session:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
Device(config)# aaa authorization reverse-access default group radius
Device(config)# radius server ip
Device(config-radius-server)# key sharedkey
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 172.31.255.0 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
Device(config-radius-server)# end

The lines in this sample RADIUS reverse Telnet authorization configuration are defined as follows:

• The **aaa new-model** command enables AAA.

• The **aaa authentication login default group radius** command specifies RADIUS as the default method for user authentication during login.

• The **aaa authorization reverse-access default group radius** command specifies RADIUS as the method for user authorization when trying to establish a reverse Telnet session.

• The **radius** command identifies the RADIUS server.

• The **key** command defines the encryption key used for all RADIUS communications between the network access server and the RADIUS daemon.

The following example shows how to send a request to the RADIUS server to grant a user named “pat” reverse Telnet access at port tty2 on the network access server named “maple”:

Username = “pat”
Password = “goaway”
User-Service-Type = Shell-User
cisco-avpair = “raccess:port#1=maple/tty2”

The syntax "raccess:port=any/any" permits a user to have unconditional access to network access server ports for reverse Telnet. If no "raccess:port={nasname }/{tty number }" clause exists in the user profile, the user is denied access to reverse Telnet on all ports.

For more information about configuring RADIUS, refer to the chapter “Configuring RADIUS.”

### Feature History for Configuring Authorization

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>AAA Authorization</td>
<td>AAA authorization enables you to limit the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the network access server uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. Once this is done, the user will be granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Configuring Accounting

The AAA accounting feature allows the services that users are accessing and the amount of network resources that users are consuming to be tracked. When AAA accounting is enabled, the network access server reports user activity to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security server (depending on which security method is implemented) in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the security server. This data can then be analyzed for network management, client billing, and auditing.

- Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting, on page 89
- Restrictions for Configuring Accounting, on page 89
- Information About Configuring Accounting, on page 90
- How to Configure AAA Accounting, on page 103
- Configuration Examples for AAA Accounting, on page 110
- Additional References for Configuring Accounting, on page 114
- Feature History for Configuring Accounting, on page 114

Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting

The following tasks must be performed before configuring accounting using named method lists:

- Enable AAA on the network access server by using the `aaa new-model` command in global configuration mode.

- Define the characteristics of the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server if RADIUS or TACACS+ authorization is issued. For more information about configuring the Cisco network access server to communicate with the RADIUS security server, see the Configuring RADIUS module. For more information about configuring the Cisco network access server to communicate with the TACACS+ security server, see the Configuring TACACS+ module.

Restrictions for Configuring Accounting

- Accounting information can be sent simultaneously to a maximum of only four AAA servers.
Information About Configuring Accounting

Named Method Lists for Accounting

Similar to authentication and authorization method lists, method lists for accounting define the way accounting is performed and the sequence in which these methods are performed.

Named accounting method lists allow particular security protocol to be designated and used on specific lines or interfaces for accounting services. The only exception is the default method list (which is named default). The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. A defined method list overrides the default method list.

A method list is simply a named list describing the accounting methods to be queried (such as RADIUS or TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists allow one or more security protocols to be designated and used for accounting, thus ensuring a backup system for accounting in case the initial method fails. Cisco IOS software uses the first method listed to support accounting; if that method fails to respond, the Cisco IOS software selects the next accounting method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed accounting method, or all methods defined are exhausted.

Note

The Cisco IOS software attempts accounting with the next listed accounting method only when there is no response from the previous method. If accounting fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server responds by denying the user access—the accounting process stops and no other accounting methods are attempted.

Accounting method lists are specific to the type of accounting being requested. AAA supports seven different types of accounting:

- **Network**: Provides information for all PPP, SLIP, or ARAP sessions, including packet and byte counts.
- **EXEC**: Provides information about user EXEC terminal sessions of the network access server.
- **Commands**: Provides information about the EXEC mode commands that a user issues. Command accounting generates accounting records for all EXEC mode commands, including global configuration commands, associated with a specific privilege level.
- **Connection**: Provides information about all outbound connections made from the network access server, such as Telnet, local-area transport (LAT), TN3270, packet assembler/disassembler (PAD), and rlogin.
- **System**: Provides information about system-level events.
- **Resource**: Provides “start” and “stop” records for calls that have passed user authentication, and provides “stop” records for calls that fail to authenticate.
- **VRRS**: Provides information about Virtual Router Redundancy Service (VRRS).

Note

System accounting does not use named accounting lists; only the default list for system accounting can be defined.
When a named method list is created, a particular list of accounting methods for the indicated accounting type are defined.

Accounting method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list (which is named “default”). If the `aaa accounting` command for a particular accounting type is issued without specifying a named method list, the default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces or lines except those that have a named method list explicitly defined (A defined method list overrides the default method list). If no default method list is defined, then no accounting takes place.

This section includes the following subsections:

**Method Lists and Server Groups**

A server group is a way to group existing RADIUS or TACACS+ server hosts for use in method lists. The figure below shows a typical AAA network configuration that includes four security servers: R1 and R2 are RADIUS servers, and T1 and T2 are TACACS+ servers. R1 and R2 comprise the group of RADIUS servers. T1 and T2 comprise the group of TACACS+ servers.

In Cisco IOS software, RADIUS and TACACS+ server configurations are global. A subset of the configured server hosts can be specified using server groups. These server groups can be used for a particular service. For example, server groups allow R1 and R2 to be defined as separate server groups (SG1 and SG2), and T1 and T2 as separate server groups (SG3 and SG4). This means either R1 and T1 (SG1 and SG3) or R2 and T2 (SG2 and SG4) can be specified in the method list, which provides more flexibility in the way that RADIUS and TACACS+ resources are assigned.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server from the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service: for example, accounting; the second host entry configured acts as failover backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order in which they are configured).

For more information about configuring server groups and about configuring server groups based on Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS) numbers, see the “Configuring RADIUS” or “Configuring TACACS+” modules.

**AAA Accounting Methods**

The following two methods of accounting are supported:

- **TACACS+**: The network access server reports user activity to the TACACS+ security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting AV pairs and is stored on the security server.

- **RADIUS**: The network access server reports user activity to the RADIUS security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting AV pairs and is stored on the security server.
Passwords and accounting logs are masked before being sent to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security servers. Use the `aaa accounting commands visible-keys` command to send unmasked information to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security servers.

### Accounting Record Types

For minimal accounting, use the `stop-only` keyword, which instructs the specified method (RADIUS or TACACS+) to send a stop record accounting notice at the end of the requested user process. For more accounting information, use the `start-stop` keyword to send a start accounting notice at the beginning of the requested event and a stop accounting notice at the end of the event. To stop all accounting activities on this line or interface, use the `none` keyword.

### Accounting Methods

The table below lists the supported accounting methods.

**Table 4: AAA Accounting Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group radius</td>
<td>Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group tacacs+</td>
<td>Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group group-name</td>
<td>Uses a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers for accounting as defined by the server group group-name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The method argument refers to the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. Additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails. To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all other methods return an error, specify additional methods in the command. For example, to create a method list named acct_tac1 that specifies RADIUS as the backup method of authentication in the event that TACACS+ authentication returns an error, enter the following command:

```
aaa accounting network acct_tac1 stop-only group tacacs+ group radius
```

To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the `aaa accounting` command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods that are wanted to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces.

For example, to specify RADIUS as the default method for user authentication during login, enter the following command:

```
aaa accounting network default stop-only group radius
```

AAA Accounting supports the following methods:

- **group tacacs**: To have the network access server send accounting information to a TACACS+ security server, use the `group tacacs+ method` keyword.
- **group radius**: To have the network access server send accounting information to a RADIUS security server, use the `group radius method` keyword.
Accounting method lists for SLIP follow whatever is configured for PPP on the relevant interface. If no lists are defined and applied to a particular interface (or no PPP settings are configured), the default setting for accounting applies.

• **group group-name**: To specify a subset of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers to use as the accounting method, use the `aaa accounting` command with the `group group-name` method. To specify and define the group name and the members of the group, use the `aaa group server` command. For example, use the `aaa group server` command to first define the members of `group loginrad`:

```plaintext
aaa group server radius loginrad
  server 172.16.2.3
  server 172.16.2.17
  server 172.16.2.32
```

This command specifies RADIUS servers 172.16.2.3, 172.16.2.17, and 172.16.2.32 as members of the `group loginrad`.

To specify `group loginrad` as the method of network accounting when no other method list has been defined, enter the following command:

```plaintext
aaa accounting network default start-stop group loginrad
```

Before a group name can be used as the accounting method, communication with the RADIUS or TACACS+ security server must be enabled.

### AAA Accounting Types

#### Network Accounting

Network accounting provides information for all PPP, SLIP, or ARAP sessions, including packet and byte counts.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through an EXEC session:

```plaintext
Wed Jun 27 04:44:45 2001
  NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
  NAS-Port = 5
  User-Name = "username1"
  Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
  Caller-ID = "562"
  Acct-Status-Type = Start
  Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
  Service-Type = Exec-User
  Acct-Session-Id = "0000000D"
  Acct-Delay-Time = 0
  User-Id = "username1"
  NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"

Wed Jun 27 04:45:00 2001
  NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
  NAS-Port = 5
  User-Name = "username1"
```

---

**Note**

AAA Accounting Types

Network Accounting

Network accounting provides information for all PPP, SLIP, or ARAP sessions, including packet and byte counts.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through an EXEC session:
The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ network accounting record for a PPP user who first started an EXEC session:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:00:35 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 start
service=shell

Wed Jun 27 04:00:46 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 start
addr=10.1.1.1 service=ppp

Wed Jun 27 04:00:49 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 408/4327528 update
addr=10.1.1.1 service=ppp protocol-ip addr=10.1.1.1

Wed Jun 27 04:01:31 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 stop
addr=10.1.1.1 service=ppp protocol-ip addr=10.1.1.1
bytes_in=2844 bytes_out=1682 paks_in=36
paks_out=24 elapsed_time=51

Wed Jun 27 04:01:32 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty4 562/4327528 stop
service=shell elapsed_time=57
```
The precise format of accounting packets records may vary depending on the security server daemon.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through autoselct:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:30:52 2001
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 3
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "562"
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Framed
Acct-Session-Id = "0000000B"
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

```
Wed Jun 27 04:36:49 2001
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 3
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "562"
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Framed
Acct-Session-Id = "0000000B"
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Framed-IP-Address = "10.1.1.1"
Acct-Input-Octets = 8630
Acct-Output-Octets = 5722
Acct-Input-Packets = 94
Acct-Output-Packets = 64
Acct-Session-Time = 357
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ network accounting record for a PPP user who comes in through autoselct:

```
Wed Jun 27 04:02:19 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 Async5 562/4327528 start task_id=35
```

```
Wed Jun 27 04:02:25 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 Async5 562/4327528 update task_id=35
```

```
Wed Jun 27 04:05:03 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 Async5 562/4327528 stop task_id=35
```

```
paks_out=28 elapsed_time=164
```

### EXEC Accounting

EXEC accounting provides information about user EXEC terminal sessions (user shells) on the network access server, including username, date, start and stop times, the access server IP address, and (for dial-in users) the telephone number the call originated from.

EXEC Accounting
The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS EXEC accounting record for a dial-in user:

```plaintext
Wed Jun 27 04:26:23 2001
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 1
User-Name = “username1”
Client-Port-DNIS = “4327528”
Caller-ID = “5622329483”
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = “00000006”
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”
```

```plaintext
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 1
User-Name = “username1”
Client-Port-DNIS = “4327528”
Caller-ID = “5622329483”
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = “00000006”
Acct-Session-Time = 62
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”
```

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ EXEC accounting record for a dial-in user:

```plaintext
start
  task_id=2 service=shell
172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
Wed Jun 27 04:08:55 2001
stop
  task_id=2 service=shell elapsed_time=1354
172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
```

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS EXEC accounting record for a Telnet user:

```plaintext
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 26
User-Name = “username1”
Caller-ID = “10.68.202.158”
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Exec-User
Acct-Session-Id = “00000010”
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = “username1”
NAS-Identifier = “172.16.25.15”
```

```plaintext
NAS-IP-Address = “172.16.25.15”
NAS-Port = 26
User-Name = “username1”
Caller-ID = “10.68.202.158”
```
The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ EXEC accounting record for a Telnet user:

```
start task_id=41 service=shell
stop task_id=41 service=shell elapsed_time=9
```

**Command Accounting**

Command accounting provides information about the EXEC shell commands for a specified privilege level that are being executed on a network access server. Each command accounting record includes a list of the commands executed for that privilege level, as well as the date and time each command was executed, and the user who executed it.

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ command accounting record for privilege level 1:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:46:47 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=3 service=shell priv-lvl=1 cmd=show version <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:46:58 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=4 service=shell priv-lvl=1 cmd=show interfaces Ethernet 0 <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:47:03 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=5 service=shell priv-lvl=1 cmd=show ip route <cr>
```

The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ command accounting record for privilege level 15:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:47:17 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=6 service=shell priv-lvl=15 cmd=configure terminal <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:47:21 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=7 service=shell priv-lvl=15 cmd=interface Serial 0 <cr>
Wed Jun 27 03:47:29 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=8 service=shell priv-lvl=15 cmd-ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0 <cr>
```

The Cisco implementation of RADIUS does not support command accounting.

**Connection Accounting**

Connection accounting provides information about all outbound connections made from the network access server such as Telnet, LAT, TN3270, PAD, and rlogin.

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS connection accounting record for an outbound Telnet connection:

```
```

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
The following example shows the information contained in a TACACS+ connection accounting record for an outbound Telnet connection:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:47:43 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
start task_id=10 service=connection protocol=telnet addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=telnet
username1-sun
```

```
Wed Jun 27 03:48:38 2001 172.16.25.15 username1 tty3 5622329430/4327528
stop task_id=10 service=connection protocol=telnet addr=10.68.202.158 cmd=telnet
username1-sun bytes_in=4467 bytes_out=96 paks_in=61 paks_out=72 elapsed_time=55
```

The following example shows the information contained in a RADIUS connection accounting record for an outbound rlogin connection:

```
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 2
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "5622329477"
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Login
Acct-Session-Id = "0000000A"
Login-Service = Telnet
Login-IP-Host = "10.68.202.158"
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

```
Wed Jun 27 04:28:00 2001
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 2
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "5622329477"
Acct-Status-Type = Start
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Login
Acct-Session-Id = "00000008"
Login-Service = Telnet
Login-IP-Host = "10.68.202.158"
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

```
NAS-IP-Address = "172.16.25.15"
NAS-Port = 2
User-Name = "username1"
Client-Port-DNIS = "4327528"
Caller-ID = "5622329477"
Acct-Status-Type = Stop
Acct-Authentic = RADIUS
Service-Type = Login
Acct-Session-Id = "00000008"
Login-Service = Telnet
Login-IP-Host = "10.68.202.158"
Acct-Delay-Time = 0
User-Id = "username1"
NAS-Identifier = "172.16.25.15"
```

The following examples show the information contained in a TACACS+ connection accounting record for an outbound Telnet connection:
System Accounting

System accounting provides information about all system-level events (for example, when the system reboots or when accounting is turned on or off).

The following accounting record shows a typical TACACS+ system accounting record server indicating that AAA Accounting has been turned off:

```
  service-system
  event=sys_acct reason=reconfigure
```
The precise format of accounting packets records may vary depending on the TACACS+ daemon.

The following accounting record shows a TACACS+ system accounting record indicating that AAA Accounting has been turned on:

```
Wed Jun 27 03:55:22 2001    172.16.25.15 unknown unknown unknown stop  task_id-23
service-system
event=sys_acct reason=reconfigure
```

### Resource Accounting

The Cisco implementation of AAA accounting provides “start” and “stop” record support for calls that have passed user authentication. The additional feature of generating “stop” records for calls that fail to authenticate as part of user authentication is also supported. Such records are necessary for users employing accounting records to manage and monitor their networks.

This section includes the following subsections:

#### AAA Resource Failure Stop Accounting

Before AAA resource failure stop accounting, there was no method of providing accounting records for calls that failed to reach the user authentication stage of a call setup sequence. Such records are necessary for users employing accounting records to manage and monitor their networks and their wholesale customers.

This functionality generates a “stop” accounting record for any calls that do not reach user authentication; “stop” records are generated from the moment of call setup. All calls that pass user authentication behave as they did before; that is, no additional accounting records are seen.

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with normal call flow (no disconnect) and without AAA resource failure stop accounting enabled.

**Figure 4: Modem Dial-In Call Setup Sequence With Normal Flow and Without Resource Failure Stop Accounting Enabled**

![Call Setup Sequence](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Call setup</th>
<th>Modem allocation</th>
<th>Service setup</th>
<th>&quot;Start&quot; record</th>
<th>&quot;Stop&quot; record</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call authentication</td>
<td>Modem training</td>
<td>User authentication</td>
<td></td>
<td>Call disconnect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with normal call flow (no disconnect) and with AAA resource failure stop accounting enabled.
The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with call disconnect occurring before user authentication and with AAA resource failure stop accounting enabled.

**Figure 6: Modem Dial-In Call Setup Sequence With Call Disconnect Occurring Before User Authentication and With Resource Failure Stop Accounting Enabled**

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with call disconnect occurring before user authentication and without AAA resource failure stop accounting enabled.

**Figure 7: Modem Dial-In Call Setup Sequence With Call Disconnect Occurring Before User Authentication and Without Resource Failure Stop Accounting Enabled**

### AAA Resource Accounting for Start-Stop Records

AAA resource accounting for start-stop records supports the ability to send a “start” record at each call setup, followed by a corresponding “stop” record at the call disconnect. This functionality can be used to manage and monitor wholesale customers from one source of data reporting, such as accounting records.

With this feature, a call setup and call disconnect “start-stop” accounting record tracks the progress of the resource connection to the device. A separate user authentication “start-stop” accounting record tracks the user management progress. These two sets of accounting records are interlinked by using a unique session ID for the call.

The figure below illustrates a call setup sequence with AAA resource start-stop accounting enabled.
AAA Accounting Enhancements

AAA Broadcast Accounting

AAA broadcast accounting allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time; that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously. This functionality allows service providers to send accounting information to their own private AAA servers and to the AAA servers of their end customers. It also provides redundant billing information for voice applications.

Broadcasting is allowed among groups of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, and each server group can define its backup servers for failover independently of other groups.

Thus, service providers and their end customers can use different protocols (RADIUS or TACACS+) for the accounting server. Service providers and their end customers can also specify their backup servers independently. As for voice applications, redundant accounting information can be managed independently through a separate group with its own failover sequence.

AAA Session MIB

The AAA session MIB feature allows customers to monitor and terminate their authenticated client connections using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). The data of the client is presented so that it correlates directly to the AAA Accounting information reported by either the RADIUS or the TACACS+ server. AAA session MIB provides the following information:

- Statistics for each AAA function (when used in conjunction with the `show radius statistics` command)
- Status of servers providing AAA functions
- Identities of external AAA servers
- Real-time information (such as idle times), providing additional criteria for use by SNMP networks for assessing whether or not to terminate an active call

The table below shows the SNMP user-end data objects that can be used to monitor and terminate authenticated client connections with the AAA session MIB feature.

Table 5: SNMP End-User Data Objects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SessionId</td>
<td>The session identification used by the AAA Accounting protocol (same value as reported by RADIUS attribute 44 (Acct-Session-ID)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserId</td>
<td>The user login ID or zero-length string if a login is unavailable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IpAddr</td>
<td>The IP address of the session or 0.0.0.0 if an IP address is not applicable or unavailable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The elapsed time in seconds that the session has been idle.

Disconnect
- The session termination object used to disconnect the given client.

CallId
- The entry index corresponding to this accounting session that the Call Tracker record stored.

The table below describes the AAA summary information provided by the AAA session MIB feature using SNMP on a per-system basis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 6: SNMP AAA Session Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActiveTableEntries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActiveTableHighWaterMark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TotalSessions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisconnectedSessions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Accounting Attribute-Value Pairs**

The network access server monitors the accounting functions defined in either TACACS+ AV pairs or RADIUS attributes, depending on which security method is implemented.

**How to Configure AAA Accounting**

**Configuring AAA Accounting Using Named Method Lists**

To configure AAA Accounting using named method lists, perform the following steps:

**Note**
System accounting does not use named method lists. For system accounting, define only the default method list.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable  
Example: Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** configure  
Example: terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting {system</td>
<td>network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default start-stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
<td>Enters the line configuration mode for the lines to which the accounting method list is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• line [aux</td>
<td>console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• interface interface-type interface-number</td>
<td>Enters the interface configuration mode for the interfaces to which the accounting method list is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# line aux line1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
<td>Applies the accounting method list to a line or set of lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• accounting {arap</td>
<td>commands level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ppp accounting {default</td>
<td>list-name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-line)# accounting arap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>(Optional) Exits line configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-line)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Suppressing Generation of Accounting Records for Null Username Sessions

When AAA Accounting is activated, the Cisco IOS software issues accounting records for all users on the system, including users whose username string, because of protocol translation, is NULL. An example of this is users who come in on lines where the `aaa authentication login method-list none` command is applied. To prevent accounting records from being generated for sessions that do not have usernames associated with them, use the following command in global configuration mode:
Generating Interim Accounting Records

To enable periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa accounting update [newinfo] [periodic] number</td>
<td>Enables periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the `aaa accounting update` command is activated, the Cisco IOS software issues interim accounting records for all users on the system. If the keyword `newinfo` is used, interim accounting records are sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report. An example of this would be when IPCP completes IP address negotiation with the remote peer. The interim accounting record includes the negotiated IP address used by the remote peer.

When used with the keyword `periodic`, interim accounting records are sent periodically as defined by the `number` argument. The interim accounting record contains all of the accounting information recorded for that user up to the time the interim accounting record is sent.

**Caution**

Using the `aaa accounting update periodic` command can cause heavy congestion when many users are logged in to the network.

Configuring an Alternate Method to Enable Periodic Accounting Records

You can use the following alternative method to enable periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server.
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**  
Device> enable  
  - Enter your password if prompted. |
| 2    | configure terminal| Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**  
Device# configure terminal |
| 3    | aaa accounting network default | Configures the default accounting for all network-related service requests and enters accounting method list configuration mode.  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa accounting network default |
| 4    | action-type {none | start-stop {periodic  
{disable | interval minutes} | stop-only} | Specifies the type of action to be performed on accounting records.  
**Example:**  
Device(cfg-acct-mlist)# action-type start-stop  
**Example:**  
periodic interval 5  
  - (Optional) The periodic keyword specifies periodic accounting action.  
  - The interval keyword specifies the periodic accounting interval.  
  - The value argument specifies the intervals for accounting update records (in minutes).  
  - The disable keyword disables periodic accounting. |
| 5    | end               | Exits accounting method list configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**  
Device(cfg-acct-mlist)# end |

---

### Generating Interim Service Accounting Records

Perform this task to enable the generation of interim service accounting records at periodic intervals for subscribers.

### Before you begin

RADIUS Attribute 85 in the user service profile always takes precedence over the configured interim-interval value. RADIUS Attribute 85 must be in the user service profile. See the RADIUS Attributes Overview and RADIUS IETF Attributes feature document for more information.

---
If RADIUS Attribute 85 is not in the user service profile, then the interim-interval value configured in Generating Interim Accounting Records is used for service interim accounting records.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> subscriber service accounting interim-interval minutes</td>
<td>Enables the generation of interim service accounting records at periodic intervals for subscribers. The minutes argument indicates the number of periodic intervals to send accounting update records from 1 to 71582 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# subscriber service accounting interim-interval 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Generating Accounting Records for a Failed Login or Session

When AAA accounting is activated, the Cisco IOS XE software does not generate accounting records for system users who fail login authentication, or who succeed in login authentication but fail PPP negotiation for some reason.

To specify that accounting stop records be generated for users who fail to authenticate at login or during session negotiation, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting send stop-record authentication failure</td>
<td>Generates “stop” records for users who fail to authenticate at login or during session negotiation using PPP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifying Accounting NETWORK-Stop Records Before EXEC-Stop Records

For PPP users who start EXEC terminal sessions, it can be specified that NETWORK records be generated before EXEC-stop records. In some cases, such as billing customers for specific services, is can be desirable
to keep network start and stop records together, essentially “nesting” them within the framework of the EXEC start and stop messages. For example, a user dialing in using PPP can create the following records: EXEC-start, NETWORK-start, EXEC-stop, NETWORK-stop. By nesting the network accounting records, NETWORK-stop records follow NETWORK-start messages: EXEC-start, NETWORK-start, NETWORK-stop, EXEC-stop.

To nest accounting records for user sessions, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting</td>
<td>Nests network accounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nested</td>
<td>records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Suppressing System Accounting Records over Switchover

To suppress the system accounting-on and accounting-off messages during switchover, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting</td>
<td>Suppresses the system accounting messages during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redundancy</td>
<td>switchover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppress</td>
<td>system-records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring AAA Resource Failure Stop Accounting

To enable resource failure stop accounting, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa</td>
<td>Generates a “stop” record for any calls that do not reach user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accounting resource</td>
<td>authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>method-list stop-failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group server-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>Before configuring this feature, the tasks described in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting, on page 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>section must be performed, and SNMP must be enabled on the network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>access server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring AAA Resource Accounting for Start-Stop Records

To enable full resource accounting for start-stop records, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa</td>
<td>Supports the ability to send a “start” record at each call setup,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accounting resource</td>
<td>followed with a corresponding “stop” record at the call disconnect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>method-list start-stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group server-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>Before configuring this feature, the tasks described in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prerequisites for Configuring Accounting, on page 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>section must be performed, and SNMP must be enabled on the network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>access server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AAA Broadcast Accounting

AAA broadcast accounting allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time; that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously. This functionality allows service providers to send accounting information to their own private AAA servers and to the AAA servers of their end customers. It also provides redundant billing information for voice applications.

Broadcasting is allowed among groups of RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, and each server group can define its backup servers for failover independently of other groups.

Thus, service providers and their end customers can use different protocols (RADIUS or TACACS+) for the accounting server. Service providers and their end customers can also specify their backup servers independently. As for voice applications, redundant accounting information can be managed independently through a separate group with its own failover sequence.

Configuring Per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting

To configure AAA broadcast accounting per DNIS, use the `aaa dnis map accounting network` command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa dnis map dnis-number accounting network [start-stop</td>
<td>Allows per-DNIS accounting configuration. This command has precedence over the global <code>aaa accounting</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop-only</td>
<td>none] [broadcast] method1 [method2...]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Establishing a Session with a Device if the AAA Server Is Unreachable

To establish a console session with a device if the AAA server is unreachable, use the following command in global configuration mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>no aaa accounting system guarantee-first</td>
<td>The <code>aaa accounting system guarantee-first</code> command guarantees system accounting as the first record, which is the default condition. In some situations, users may be prevented from starting a session on the console or terminal connection until after the system reloads, which can take more than three minutes. To resolve this problem, use the <code>no aaa accounting system guarantee-first</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitoring Accounting

No specific `show` command exists for either RADIUS or TACACS+ accounting. To obtain accounting records displaying information about users logged in, use the following command in privileged EXEC mode:
### Purpose
Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
show accounting | Allows display of the active accountable events on the network and helps collect information in the event of a data loss on the accounting server.

---

### Troubleshooting Accounting

To troubleshoot accounting information, use the following command in privileged EXEC mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>debug aaa accounting</td>
<td>Displays information on accountable events as they occur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Configuration Examples for AAA Accounting

#### Example: Configuring a Named Method List

The following example shows how to configure a Cisco device (enabled for AAA and communication with a RADIUS security server) in order for AAA services to be provided by the RADIUS server. If the RADIUS server fails to respond, then the local database is queried for authentication and authorization information, and accounting services are handled by a TACACS+ server.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication login admins local
Device(config)# aaa authentication login admins local
Device(config)# aaa authorization network network1 group radius local
Device(config)# aaa accounting network network2 start-stop group radius group tacacs+
Device(config)# username root password ALongPassword
Device(config)# tacacs-server host 172.31.255.0
Device(config)# tacacs-server key goaway
Device(config)# radius server isp
Device(config-sg-radius)# key myRaDiUSpassWoRd
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# interface group-async 1
Device(config-if)# group-range 1 16
Device(config-if)# encapsulation ppp
Device(config-if)# ppp authentication chap dialins
Device(config-if)# ppp authorization network1
Device(config-if)# ppp accounting network2
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# line 1 16
Device(config-line)# autoselect ppp
Device(config-line)# autoselect during-login
Device(config-line)# login authentication admins
Device(config-line)# modem dialin
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS AAA configuration are defined as follows:

- The **aaa new-model** command enables AAA network security services.
• The **aaa authentication login admins local** command defines a method list, “admins”, for login authentication.

• The **aaa authentication ppp dialins group radius local** command defines the authentication method list “dialins”, which specifies that first RADIUS authentication and then (if the RADIUS server does not respond) local authentication is used on serial lines using PPP.

• The **aaa authorization network network1 group radius local** command defines the network authorization method list named “network1”, which specifies that RADIUS authorization is used on serial lines using PPP. If the RADIUS server fails to respond, then local network authorization is performed.

• The **aaa accounting network network2 start-stop group radius group tacacs** command defines the network accounting method list named “network2”, which specifies that RADIUS accounting services (in this case, start and stop records for specific events) are used on serial lines using PPP. If the RADIUS server fails to respond, accounting services are handled by a TACACS+ server.

• The **username** command defines the username and password to be used for the PPP Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) caller identification.

• The **tacacs-server host** command defines the name of the TACACS+ server host.

• The **tacacs-server key** command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the TACACS+ server host.

• The **radius server** command defines the name of the RADIUS server host.

• The **key** command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the RADIUS server host.

• The **interface group-async** command selects and defines an asynchronous interface group.

• The **group-range** command defines the member asynchronous interfaces in the interface group.

• The **encapsulation ppp** command sets PPP as the encapsulation method used on the specified interfaces.

• The **ppp authentication chap dialins** command selects Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) as the method of PPP authentication and applies the “dialins” method list to the specified interfaces.

• The **ppp authorization network1** command applies the blue1 network authorization method list to the specified interfaces.

• The **ppp accounting network2** command applies the red1 network accounting method list to the specified interfaces.

• The **line** command switches the configuration mode from global configuration to line configuration and identifies the specific lines being configured.

• The **autoselect ppp** command configures the Cisco IOS XE software to allow a PPP session to start up automatically on these selected lines.

• The **autoselect during-login** command is used to display the username and password prompt without pressing the Return key. After the user logs in, the autoselect function (in this case, PPP) begins.

• The **login authentication admins** command applies the admins method list for login authentication.
• The **modem dialin** command configures modems attached to the selected lines to accept only incoming calls.

The **show accounting** command yields the following output for the preceding configuration:

Active Accounted actions on tty1, User username2 Priv 1
Task ID 5, Network Accounting record, 00:00:52 Elapsed
task_id=5 service=ppp protocol=ip address=10.0.0.98

The table below describes the fields contained in the preceding output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 7: show accounting Field Descriptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Accounted actions on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute=value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example: Configuring AAA Resource Accounting**

The following example shows how to configure the resource failure stop accounting and resource accounting for start-stop records functions:

```
!Enable AAA on your network access server.
Device(config)# aaa new-model
!Enable authentication at login and list the AOL string name to use for login authentication.
Device(config)# aaa authentication login AOL group radius local
!Enable authentication for ppp and list the default method to use for PPP authentication.
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group radius local
!Enable authorization for all exec sessions and list the AOL string name to use for authorization.
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec AOL group radius if-authenticated
!Enable authorization for all network-related service requests and list the default method to use for all network-related authorizations.
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group radius if-authenticated
!Enable accounting for all exec sessions and list the default method to use for all start-stop accounting services.
Device(config)# aaa accounting exec default start-stop group radius
!Enable accounting for all network-related service requests and list the default method to use for all start-stop accounting services.
Device(config)# aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius
!Enable failure stop accounting.
Device(config)# aaa accounting resource default stop-failure group radius
```
Example: Configuring AAA Broadcast Accounting

The following example shows how to turn on broadcast accounting using the global `aaa accounting` command:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius isp
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.2
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ isp_customer
Device(config-sg-tacacs+)# server 172.0.0.1
Device(config-sg-tacacs+)# exit
Device(config)# aaa accounting network default start-stop broadcast group isp group
isp_customer
Device(config)# tacacs-server host 172.0.0.1 key key2
Device(config)# end
```

The `broadcast` keyword causes “start” and “stop” accounting records for network connections to be sent simultaneously to server 10.0.0.1 in the group `isp` and to server 172.0.0.1 in the group `isp_customer`. If server 10.0.0.1 is unavailable, failover to server 10.0.0.2 occurs. If server 172.0.0.1 is unavailable, no failover occurs because backup servers are not configured for the group `isp_customer`.

Example: Configuring per-DNIS AAA Broadcast Accounting

The following example shows how to turn on per-DNIS broadcast accounting using the global `aaa dnis map accounting network` command:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius isp
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.2
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ isp_customer
Device(config-sg-tacacs+)# server 172.0.0.1
Device(config-sg-tacacs+)# exit
Device(config)# aaa dnis map enable
Device(config)# aaa dnis map 7777 accounting network start-stop broadcast group isp group
isp_customer
Device(config)# tacacs-server host 172.0.0.1 key key_2
Device(config)# end
```

The `broadcast` keyword causes “start” and “stop” accounting records for network connection calls having DNIS number 7777 to be sent simultaneously to server 10.0.0.1 in the group `isp` and to server 172.0.0.1 in the group `isp_customer`. If server 10.0.0.1 is unavailable, failover to server 10.0.0.2 occurs. If server 172.0.0.1 is unavailable, no failover occurs because backup servers are not configured for the group `isp_customer`.
Example: AAA Session MIB

The following example shows how to set up the AAA session MIB feature to disconnect authenticated client connections for PPP users:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication ppp default group radius
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group radius
Device(config)# aaa accounting network default start-stop group radius
Device(config)# aaa session-mib disconnect
Device(config)# end
```

Additional References for Configuring Accounting

The following sections provide references related to the Configuring Accounting feature.

MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CISCO-AAA-SESSION-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS XE software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RFCs

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for Configuring Accounting

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.
These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>AAA Broadcast Accounting</td>
<td>AAA broadcast accounting allows accounting information to be sent to multiple AAA servers at the same time; that is, accounting information can be broadcast to one or more AAA servers simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>AAA Session MIB</td>
<td>The AAA session MIB feature allows customers to monitor and terminate their authenticated client connections using SNMP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Connection Accounting</td>
<td>Connection accounting provides information about all outbound connections made from the network access server, such as Telnet, local-area transport, TN3270, packet assembler/disassembler (PAD), and rlogin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>AAA Interim Accounting</td>
<td>AAA interim accounting allows accounting records to be sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report, or on a periodic basis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Configuring Local Authentication and Authorization

How to Configure Local Authentication and Authorization

Configuring the Switch for Local Authentication and Authorization

You can configure AAA to operate without a server by setting the switch to implement AAA in local mode. The switch then handles authentication and authorization. No accounting is available in this configuration.

To secure the switch for HTTP access by using AAA methods, you must configure the switch with the `ip http authentication aaa` global configuration command. Configuring AAA authentication does not secure the switch for HTTP access by using AAA methods.

Follow these steps to configure AAA to operate without a server by setting the switch to implement AAA in local mode:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3**  
**aaa new-model**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa new-model  
Enables AAA.

**Step 4**  
**aaa authentication login default local**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local  
Sets the login authentication to use the local username database. The **default** keyword applies the local user database authentication to all ports.

**Step 5**  
**aaa authorization exec default local**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default local  
Configures user AAA authorization, check the local database, and allow the user to run an EXEC shell.

**Step 6**  
**aaa authorization network default local**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa authorization network default local  
Configures user AAA authorization for all network-related service requests.

**Step 7**  
**username name [privilege level] {password encryption-type password}**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# username your_user_name privilege 1 password 7 secret567  
Enters the local database, and establishes a username-based authentication system.  
Repeat this command for each user.  
- For **name**, specify the user ID as one word. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.  
- (Optional) For **level**, specify the privilege level the user has after gaining access. The range is 0 to 15. Level 15 gives privileged EXEC mode access. Level 0 gives user EXEC mode access.  
- For **encryption-type**, enter 0 to specify that an unencrypted password follows. Enter 7 to specify that a hidden password follows.  
- For **password**, specify the password the user must enter to gain access to the switch. The password must be from 1 to
### Monitoring Local Authentication and Authorization

To display Local Authentication and Authorization configuration, use the `show running-config` command in privileged EXEC mode.

### Feature History for Local Authentication and Authorization

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module. These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Local Authentication and Authorization</td>
<td>This feature helps AAA to operate without a server by setting the device to implement AAA in local mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 7

Configuring TACACS+

- Prerequisites for TACACS+, on page 121
- Information About TACACS+, on page 122
- How to Configure TACACS+, on page 125
- Monitoring TACACS+, on page 131
- Additional References for TACACS+, on page 132
- Feature History for TACACS+, on page 132

Prerequisites for TACACS+

The following are the prerequisites for set up and configuration of switch access with TACACS+ (must be performed in the order presented):

1. Configure the switches with the TACACS+ server addresses.
2. Set an authentication key.
3. Configure the key from Step 2 on the TACACS+ servers.
4. Enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA).
5. Create a login authentication method list.
6. Apply the list to the terminal lines.
7. Create an authorization and accounting method list.

The following are the prerequisites for controlling switch access with TACACS+:

- You must have access to a configured TACACS+ server to configure TACACS+ features on your switch. Also, you must have access to TACACS+ services maintained in a database on a TACACS+ daemon typically running on a LINUX or Windows workstation.

- You need a system running the TACACS+ daemon software to use TACACS+ on your switch.

- To use TACACS+, it must be enabled.

- Authorization must be enabled on the switch to be used.

- Users must first successfully complete TACACS+ authentication before proceeding to TACACS+ authorization.
To use any of the AAA commands listed in this section or elsewhere, you must first enable AAA with the `aaa new-model` command.

At a minimum, you must identify the host or hosts maintaining the TACACS+ daemon and define the method lists for TACACS+ authentication. You can optionally define method lists for TACACS+ authorization and accounting.

The method list defines the types of authentication to be performed and the sequence in which they are performed; it must be applied to a specific port before any of the defined authentication methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list (which, by coincidence, is named `default`). The default method list is automatically applied to all ports except those that have a named method list explicitly defined. A defined method list overrides the default method list.

Use TACACS+ for privileged EXEC access authorization if authentication was performed by using TACACS+.

Use the local database if authentication was not performed by using TACACS+.

### Information About TACACS+

#### TACACS+ and Switch Access

This section describes TACACS+. TACACS+ provides detailed accounting information and flexible administrative control over the authentication and authorization processes. It is facilitated through authentication, authorization, accounting (AAA) and can be enabled only through AAA commands.

#### TACACS+ Overview

TACACS+ is a security application that provides centralized validation of users attempting to gain access to your switch.

TACACS+ provides for separate and modular authentication, authorization, and accounting facilities. TACACS+ allows for a single access control server (the TACACS+ daemon) to provide each service—authentication, authorization, and accounting—independently. Each service can be tied into its own database to take advantage of other services available on that server or on the network, depending on the capabilities of the daemon.

The goal of TACACS+ is to provide a method for managing multiple network access points from a single management service. Your switch can be a network access server along with other Cisco routers and access servers.
TACACS+, administered through the AAA security services, can provide these services:

- **Authentication**—Provides complete control of authentication through login and password dialog, challenge and response, and messaging support.

  The authentication facility can conduct a dialog with the user (for example, after a username and password are provided, to challenge a user with several questions, such as home address, mother’s maiden name, service type, and social security number). The TACACS+ authentication service can also send messages to user screens. For example, a message could notify users that their passwords must be changed because of the company’s password aging policy.

- **Authorization**—Provides fine-grained control over user capabilities for the duration of the user’s session, including but not limited to setting autocommands, access control, session duration, or protocol support. You can also enforce restrictions on what commands a user can execute with the TACACS+ authorization feature.

- **Accounting**—Collects and sends information used for billing, auditing, and reporting to the TACACS+ daemon. Network managers can use the accounting facility to track user activity for a security audit or to provide information for user billing. Accounting records include user identities, start and stop times, executed commands (such as PPP), number of packets, and number of bytes.

The TACACS+ protocol provides authentication between the switch and the TACACS+ daemon, and it ensures confidentiality because all protocol exchanges between the switch and the TACACS+ daemon are encrypted.

**TACACS+ Operation**

When a user attempts a simple ASCII login by authenticating to a switch using TACACS+, this process occurs:

1. When the connection is established, the switch contacts the TACACS+ daemon to obtain a username prompt to show to the user. The user enters a username, and the switch then contacts the TACACS+
daemon to obtain a password prompt. The switch displays the password prompt to the user, the user enters a password, and the password is then sent to the TACACS+ daemon.

TACACS+ allows a dialog between the daemon and the user until the daemon receives enough information to authenticate the user. The daemon prompts for a username and password combination, but can include other items, such as the user’s mother’s maiden name.

2. The switch eventually receives one of these responses from the TACACS+ daemon:
   • ACCEPT—The user is authenticated and service can begin. If the switch is configured to require authorization, authorization begins at this time.
   • REJECT—The user is not authenticated. The user can be denied access or is prompted to retry the login sequence, depending on the TACACS+ daemon.
   • ERROR—An error occurred at some time during authentication with the daemon or in the network connection between the daemon and the switch. If an ERROR response is received, the switch typically tries to use an alternative method for authenticating the user.
   • CONTINUE—The user is prompted for additional authentication information.

After authentication, the user undergoes an additional authorization phase if authorization has been enabled on the switch. Users must first successfully complete TACACS+ authentication before proceeding to TACACS+ authorization.

3. If TACACS+ authorization is required, the TACACS+ daemon is again contacted, and it returns an ACCEPT or REJECT authorization response. If an ACCEPT response is returned, the response contains data in the form of attributes that direct the EXEC or NETWORK session for that user and the services that the user can access:
   • Telnet, Secure Shell (SSH), rlogin, or privileged EXEC services
   • Connection parameters, including the host or client IP address, access list, and user timeouts

Method List

A method list defines the sequence and methods to be used to authenticate, to authorize, or to keep accounts on a user. You can use method lists to designate one or more security protocols to be used, thus ensuring a backup system if the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authenticate, to authorize, or to keep accounts on users; if that method does not respond, the software selects the next method in the list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed method or the method list is exhausted.

TACACS+ Configuration Options

You can configure the switch to use a single server or AAA server groups to group existing server hosts for authentication. You can group servers to select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. The server group is used with a global server-host list and contains the list of IP addresses of the selected server hosts.
TACACS+ Login Authentication

A method list describes the sequence and authentication methods to be queried to authenticate a user. You can designate one or more security protocols to be used for authentication, thus ensuring a backup system for authentication in case the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authenticate users; if that method fails to respond, the software selects the next authentication method in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authentication method or until all defined methods are exhausted. If authentication fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user access—the authentication process stops, and no other authentication methods are attempted.

TACACS+ Authorization for Privileged EXEC Access and Network Services

AAA authorization limits the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the switch uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is located either in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. The user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

TACACS+ Accounting

The AAA accounting feature tracks the services that users are accessing and the amount of network resources that they are consuming. When AAA accounting is enabled, the switch reports user activity to the TACACS+ security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the security server. This data can then be analyzed for network management, client billing, or auditing.

Default TACACS+ Configuration

TACACS+ and AAA are disabled by default.

To prevent a lapse in security, you cannot configure TACACS+ through a network management application. When enabled, TACACS+ can authenticate users accessing the switch through the CLI.

---

Note

Although TACACS+ configuration is performed through the CLI, the TACACS+ server authenticates HTTP connections that have been configured with a privilege level of 15.

How to Configure TACACS+

This section describes how to configure your switch to support TACACS+.

Identifying the TACACS+ Server Host and Setting the Authentication Key

Follow these steps to identify the TACACS+ server host and set the authentication key:
## Configuring TACACS+

### Identifying the TACACS+ Server Host and Setting the Authentication Key

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Enteryourpasswordifprompted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><strong>tacacs server</strong> <strong>server-name</strong></td>
<td>Identifies the IP host or hosts maintaining a TACACS+ server. Enter this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>command multiple times to create a list of preferred hosts. The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device(config)# tacacs server yourserver</td>
<td>software searches for hosts in the order in which you specify them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For <strong>server-name</strong>, specify the server name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><strong>address</strong> **{ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6}** <strong>ip address</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device(config-server-tacacs)# address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ipv4 10.0.1.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><strong>exit</strong></td>
<td>Exits the TACACS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device(config-server-tacacs)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><strong>aaa new-model</strong></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td><strong>aaa group server</strong> <strong>tacacs+</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Defines the AAA server-group with a group name, and enters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>group-name</strong></td>
<td>server group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ your_server_group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td><strong>server name</strong> <strong>server-name</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Associates a particular TACACS+ server with the defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>server group. Repeat this step for each TACACS+ server in the AAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Device(config-sg-tacacs)# server name</td>
<td>server group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring TACACS+ Login Authentication

Follow these steps to configure TACACS+ login authentication:

Before you begin

To configure AAA authentication, you define a named list of authentication methods and then apply that list to various ports.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**

enable

Example:

Device> enable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 2**

configure terminal

Example:

Device# configure terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 3**

aaa new-model

Example:

Device(config)# aaa new-model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 4**

aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]

Example:

Device(config)# aaa authentication login

Configuring TACACS + Login Authentication

Follow these steps to configure TACACS+ login authentication:

Before you begin

To configure AAA authentication, you define a named list of authentication methods and then apply that list to various ports.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**

enable

Example:

Device> enable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 2**

configure terminal

Example:

Device# configure terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 3**

aaa new-model

Example:

Device(config)# aaa new-model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 4**

aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]

Example:

Device(config)# aaa authentication login

Configuring TACACS + Login Authentication

Follow these steps to configure TACACS+ login authentication:

Before you begin

To configure AAA authentication, you define a named list of authentication methods and then apply that list to various ports.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**

enable

Example:

Device> enable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 2**

configure terminal

Example:

Device# configure terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 3**

aaa new-model

Example:

Device(config)# aaa new-model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 4**

aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]

Example:

Device(config)# aaa authentication login
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| default tacacs+ local | to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports.  
- For **list-name**, specify a character string to name the list you are creating.  
- For **method1...**, specify the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails.  
Select one of these methods:  
- **enable**—Use the enable password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define an enable password by using the `enable password` global configuration command.  
- **group tacacs+**—Uses TACACS+ authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must configure the TACACS+ server.  
- **line**—Use the line password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define a line password. Use the `password password` line configuration command.  
- **local**—Use the local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database. Use the `username password` global configuration command.  
- **local-case**—Use a case-sensitive local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database by using the `username name password` global configuration command.  
- **none**—Do not use any authentication for login. |
| line [console | tty | vty] line-number [ending-line-number] | Enters line configuration mode, and configures the lines to which you want to apply the authentication list. |
### Configuring TACACS+ Authorization for Privileged EXEC Access and Network Services

You can use the `aaa authorization` global configuration command with the `tacacs+` keyword to set parameters that restrict a user’s network access to privileged EXEC mode.

Authorization is bypassed for authenticated users who log in through the CLI even if authorization has been configured.

Follow these steps to specify TACACS+ authorization for privileged EXEC access and network services:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Purpose

- **Purpose**
  - Applies the authentication list to a line or set of lines.
  - If you specify `default`, use the default list created with the `aaa authentication login` command.
  - For `list-name`, specify the list created with the `aaa authentication login` command.

- **Example:**
  - `Device(config-line)# login authentication default`

- **Example:**
  - `Device(config-line)# end`

---

**Note**

Follow these steps to specify TACACS+ authorization for privileged EXEC access and network services:
### Configuring TACACS+

#### Starting TACACS+ Accounting

Follow these steps to start TACACS+ Accounting:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  - enable
  - Example: Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  - Enter your password if prompted.
| **Step 2**
  - configure terminal
  - Example: Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.
| **Step 3**
  - aaa accounting network authorization-list start-stop tacacs+
  - Example: Device(config)# aaa accounting network list1 start-stop tacacs+ | Enables TACACS+ accounting for all network-related service requests. |
### Establishing a Session with a Device if the AAA Server is Unreachable

To establish a session with a device if the AAA server is unreachable, use the `aaa accounting system guarantee-first` command. It guarantees system accounting as the first record, which is the default condition. In some situations, users might be prevented from starting a session on the console or terminal connection until after the system reloads, which can take more than 3 minutes.

To establish a console or Telnet session with the router if the AAA server is unreachable when the router reloads, use the `no aaa accounting system guarantee-first` command.

### Monitoring TACACS+

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show tacacs</td>
<td>Displays TACACS+ server statistics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional References for TACACS+

### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA configuration</td>
<td>Configuring Authentication, Configuring Authorization, and Configuring Accounting chapters of the Security Configuration Guide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feature History for TACACS+

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>TACACS+</td>
<td>TACACS+ provides detailed accounting information and flexible administrative control over authentication and authorization processes. TACACS+ is facilitated through AAA and can be enabled only through AAA commands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Prerequisites for Configuring RADIUS

This section lists the prerequisites for controlling device access with RADIUS.

General:

- RADIUS and Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) must be enabled to use any of the configuration commands in this chapter.
- RADIUS is facilitated through AAA and can be enabled only through AAA commands.
- Use the `aaa new-model` global configuration command to enable AAA.
- Use the `aaa authentication` global configuration command to define method lists for RADIUS authentication.
- Use the `line` and `interface` commands to enable the defined method lists to be used.
- At a minimum, you must identify the host or hosts that run the RADIUS server software and define the method lists for RADIUS authentication. You can optionally define method lists for RADIUS authorization and accounting.
- You should have access to and should configure a RADIUS server before configuring RADIUS features on your device.
- The RADIUS host is normally a multiuser system running RADIUS server software from Cisco (Cisco Secure Access Control Server Version 3.0), Livingston, Merit, Microsoft, or another software provider. For more information, see the RADIUS server documentation.
- To use the Change-of-Authorization (CoA) interface, a session must already exist on the switch. CoA can be used to identify a session and enforce a disconnect request. The update affects only the specified session.
For RADIUS operation:

- Users must first successfully complete RADIUS authentication before proceeding to RADIUS authorization, if it is enabled.

Restrictions for Configuring RADIUS

This topic covers restrictions for controlling device access with RADIUS.

General:

- To prevent a lapse in security, you cannot configure RADIUS through a network management application.

RADIUS is not suitable in the following network security situations:

- Multiprotocol access environments. RADIUS does not support AppleTalk Remote Access (ARA), NetBIOS Frame Control Protocol (NBFCP), NetWare Asynchronous Services Interface (NASI), or X.25 PAD connections.
- Switch-to-switch or router-to-router situations. RADIUS does not provide two-way authentication. RADIUS can be used to authenticate from one device to a non-Cisco device if the non-Cisco device requires authentication.
- Networks using a variety of services. RADIUS generally binds a user to one service model.

Information about RADIUS

RADIUS and Switch Access

This section describes how to enable and configure RADIUS. RADIUS provides detailed accounting information and flexible administrative control over the authentication and authorization processes.

RADIUS Overview

RADIUS is a distributed client/server system that secures networks against unauthorized access. RADIUS clients run on supported Cisco devices. Clients send authentication requests to a central RADIUS server, which contains all user authentication and network service access information.

Use RADIUS in these network environments that require access security:

- Networks with multiple-vendor access servers, each supporting RADIUS. For example, access servers from several vendors use a single RADIUS server-based security database. In an IP-based network with multiple vendors’ access servers, dial-in users are authenticated through a RADIUS server that has been customized to work with the Kerberos security system.
- Turnkey network security environments in which applications support the RADIUS protocol, such as in an access environment that uses a smart card access control system.
Networks already using RADIUS. You can add a Cisco device containing a RADIUS client to the network. This might be the first step when you make a transition to a TACACS+ server. See the illustration: Transitioning from RADIUS to TACACS+ Services below.

Figure 10: Transitioning from RADIUS to TACACS+ Services

- Network in which the user must only access a single service. Using RADIUS, you can control user access to a single host, to a single utility such as Telnet, or to the network through a protocol such as IEEE 802.1x. For more information about this protocol, see the chapter Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication.

- Networks that require resource accounting. You can use RADIUS accounting independently of RADIUS authentication or authorization. The RADIUS accounting functions allow data to be sent at the start and end of services, showing the amount of resources (such as time, packets, bytes, and so forth) used during the session. An Internet service provider might use a freeware-based version of RADIUS access control and accounting software to meet special security and billing needs.

RADIUS Operation

When a user attempts to log in and authenticate to a device that is access controlled by a RADIUS server, these events occur:

1. The user is prompted to enter a username and password.
2. The username and encrypted password are sent over the network to the RADIUS server.
3. The user receives one of the following responses from the RADIUS server:
   - ACCEPT—The user is authenticated.
   - REJECT—The user is either not authenticated and is prompted to re-enter the username and password, or access is denied.
   - CHALLENGE—A challenge requires additional data from the user.
   - CHALLENGE PASSWORD—A response requests the user to select a new password.

The ACCEPT or REJECT response is bundled with additional data that is used for privileged EXEC or network authorization. The additional data included with the ACCEPT or REJECT packets includes these items:
RADIUS Change of Authorization

The RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) provides a mechanism to change the attributes of an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) session after it is authenticated. When a policy changes for a user or user group in AAA, administrators can send RADIUS CoA packets from the AAA server such as a Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS) to reinitialize authentication and apply the new policy. This section provides an overview of the RADIUS interface including available primitives and how they are used during a CoA.

- Change-of-Authorization Requests
- CoA Request Response Code
- CoA Request Commands
- Session Reauthentication
- Stacking Guidelines for Session Termination

A standard RADIUS interface is typically used in a pulled model where the request originates from a network attached device and the response come from the queried servers. Cisco devices support the RADIUS CoA extensions defined in RFC 5176 that are typically used in a pushed model and allow for the dynamic reconfiguring of sessions from external AAA or policy servers.

Cisco devices support these per-session CoA requests:

- Session reauthentication
- Session termination
- Session termination with port shutdown
- Session termination with port bounce

This feature is integrated with Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS) 5.1.

The RADIUS interface is enabled by default on Cisco devices. However, some basic configuration is required for the following attributes:

- Security and Password—refer to the “Preventing Unauthorized Access to Your Switch” section in this guide.
- Accounting—refer to the “Starting RADIUS Accounting” section in the Configuring Switch-Based Authentication chapter in this guide.

Cisco IOS XE software supports the RADIUS CoA extensions defined in RFC 5176 that are typically used in a push model to allow the dynamic reconfiguring of sessions from external AAA or policy servers. Per-session CoA requests are supported for session identification, session termination, host reauthentication, port shutdown, and port bounce. This model comprises one request (CoA-Request) and two possible response codes:

- CoA acknowledgement (ACK) [CoA-ACK]
- CoA nonacknowledgement (NAK) [CoA-NAK]
The request is initiated from a CoA client (typically a AAA or policy server) and directed to the device that acts as a listener.

The table below shows the RADIUS CoA commands and vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) supported by Identity-Based Networking Services. All CoA commands must include the session identifier between the device and the CoA client.

### Table 9: RADIUS CoA Commands Supported by Identity-Based Networking Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CoA Command</th>
<th>Cisco VSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate service</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=activate-service&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:service-name=&lt;service-name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:precedence=&lt;precedence-number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:activation-mode=replace-all&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate service</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=deactivate-service&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:service-name=&lt;service-name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounce host port</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=bounce-host-port&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable host port</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=disable-host-port&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session query</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=session-query&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session reauthenticate</td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=reauthenticate&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:reauthenticate-type=last&quot; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco: Avpair=&quot;subscriber:reauthenticate-type=rerun&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session terminate</td>
<td>This is a standard disconnect request and does not require a VSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface template</td>
<td>Cisco: AVpair=&quot;interface-template-name=&lt;interfacetemplate&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Change-of-Authorization Requests

Change of Authorization (CoA) requests, as described in RFC 5176, are used in a push model to allow for session identification, host reauthentication, and session termination. The model is comprised of one request (CoA-Request) and two possible response codes:

- CoA acknowledgment (ACK) [CoA-ACK]
- CoA non-acknowledgment (NAK) [CoA-NAK]

The request is initiated from a CoA client (typically a RADIUS or policy server) and directed to the switch that acts as a listener.

### RFC 5176 Compliance

The Disconnect Request message, which is also referred to as Packet of Disconnect (POD), is supported by the switch for session termination.
This table shows the IETF attributes are supported for this feature.

**Table 10: Supported IETF Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Number</th>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Calling-Station-ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Acct-Session-ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Message-Authenticator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Error-Cause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table shows the possible values for the Error-Cause attribute.

**Table 11: Error-Cause Values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Residual Session Context Removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Invalid EAP Packet (Ignored)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Unsupported Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Missing Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>NAS Identification Mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Invalid Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Unsupported Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>406</td>
<td>Unsupported Extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>407</td>
<td>Invalid Attribute Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td>Administratively Prohibited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502</td>
<td>Request Not Routable (Proxy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503</td>
<td>Session Context Not Found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>504</td>
<td>Session Context Not Removable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505</td>
<td>Other Proxy Processing Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>506</td>
<td>Resources Unavailable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
<td>Request Initiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508</td>
<td>Multiple Session Selection Unsupported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CoA Request Response Code

The CoA Request response code can be used to convey a command to the switch.

The packet format for a CoA Request Response code as defined in RFC 5176 consists of the following fields: Code, Identifier, Length, Authenticator, and Attributes in the Type:Length:Value (TLV) format. The Attributes field is used to carry Cisco vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

Session Identification

For disconnect and CoA requests targeted at a particular session, the switch locates the session based on one or more of the following attributes:

- Acct-Session-Id (IETF attribute #44)
- Audit-Session-Id (Cisco VSA)
- Calling-Station-Id (IETF attribute #31 which contains the host MAC address)
- IPv6 Attributes, which can be one of the following:
  - Framed-IPv6-Prefix (IETF attribute #97) and Framed-Interface-Id (IETF attribute #96), which together create a full IPv6 address per RFC 3162
  - Framed-IPv6-Address
- Plain IP Address (IETF attribute #8)

Unless all session identification attributes included in the CoA message match the session, the switch returns a Disconnect-NAK or CoA-NAK with the “Invalid Attribute Value” error-code attribute.

If more than one session identification attribute is included in the message, all the attributes must match the session or the switch returns a Disconnect-negative acknowledgment (NAK) or CoA-NAK with the error code “Invalid Attribute Value.”

The packet format for a CoA Request code as defined in RFC 5176 consists of the fields: Code, Identifier, Length, Authenticator, and Attributes in Type:Length:Value (TLV) format.

```
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
| Code | Identifier | Length |
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
| | Authenticator |
| | |
| Attributes ... |
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
```

The attributes field is used to carry Cisco vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

For CoA requests targeted at a particular enforcement policy, the device returns a CoA-NAK with the error code “Invalid Attribute Value” if any of the above session identification attributes are included in the message.
CoA ACK Response Code

If the authorization state is changed successfully, a positive acknowledgment (ACK) is sent. The attributes returned within CoA ACK will vary based on the CoA Request and are discussed in individual CoA Commands.

CoA NAK Response Code

A negative acknowledgment (NAK) indicates a failure to change the authorization state and can include attributes that indicate the reason for the failure. Use show commands to verify a successful CoA.

CoA Request Commands

Table 12: Supported CoA Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Cisco VSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reauthenticate host</td>
<td>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=reauthenticate&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate session</td>
<td>This is a standard disconnect request that does not require a VSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounce host port</td>
<td>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=bounce-host-port&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable host port</td>
<td>Cisco:Avpair=&quot;subscriber:command=disable-host-port&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 All CoA commands must include the session identifier between the device and the CoA client.

Session Reauthentication

The AAA server typically generates a session reauthentication request when a host with an unknown identity or posture joins the network and is associated with a restricted access authorization profile (such as a guest VLAN). A reauthentication request allows the host to be placed in the appropriate authorization group when its credentials are known.

To initiate session authentication, the AAA server sends a standard CoA-Request message which contains a Cisco VSA in this form: Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=reauthenticate" and one or more session identification attributes.

The current session state determines the switch response to the message. If the session is currently authenticated by IEEE 802.1x, the switch responds by sending an EAPoL (Extensible Authentication Protocol over Lan) -RequestId message to the server.

If the session is currently authenticated by MAC authentication bypass (MAB), the switch sends an access-request to the server, passing the same identity attributes used for the initial successful authentication.

If session authentication is in progress when the switch receives the command, the switch terminates the process, and restarts the authentication sequence, starting with the method configured to be attempted first.

If the session is not yet authorized, or is authorized via guest VLAN, or critical VLAN, or similar policies, the reauthentication message restarts the access control methods, beginning with the method configured to be attempted first. The current authorization of the session is maintained until the reauthentication leads to a different authorization result.
Session Termination

There are three types of CoA requests that can trigger session termination. A CoA Disconnect-Request terminates the session, without disabling the host port. This command causes re-initialization of the authenticator state machine for the specified host, but does not restrict that host access to the network.

To restrict a host’s access to the network, use a CoA Request with the Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=disable-host-port" VSA. This command is useful when a host is known to be causing problems on the network, and you need to immediately block network access for the host. When you want to restore network access on the port, re-enable it using a non-RADIUS mechanism.

When a device with no supplicant, such as a printer, needs to acquire a new IP address (for example, after a VLAN change), terminate the session on the host port with port-bounce (temporarily disable and then re-enable the port).

CoA Disconnect-Request

This command is a standard Disconnect-Request. If the session cannot be located, the device returns a Disconnect-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the device terminates the session. After the session has been completely removed, the device returns a Disconnect-ACK.

If the device fails-over to a standby device before returning a Disconnect-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active device when the request is re-sent from the client. If the session is not found following re-sending, a Disconnect-ACK is sent with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute.

CoA Request: Disable Host Port

The RADIUS server CoA disable port command administratively shuts down the authentication port that is hosting a session, resulting in session termination. This command is useful when a host is known to cause problems on the network and network access needs to be immediately blocked for the host. To restore network access on the port, re-enable it using a non-RADIUS mechanism. This command is carried in a standard CoA-Request message that has this new vendor-specific attribute (VSA):

Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=disable-host-port"

Because this command is session-oriented, it must be accompanied by one or more of the session identification attributes described in the “Session Identification” section. If the session cannot be located, the device returns a CoA-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the device disables the hosting port and returns a CoA-ACK message.

If the device fails before returning a CoA-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active device when the request is re-sent from the client. If the device fails after returning a CoA-ACK message to the client but before the operation has completed, the operation is restarted on the new active device.

Note

A Disconnect-Request failure following command re-sending could be the result of either a successful session termination before change-over (if the Disconnect-ACK was not sent) or a session termination by other means (for example, a link failure) that occurred after the original command was issued and before the standby device became active.

CoA Request: Bounce-Port

A RADIUS server CoA bounce port sent from a RADIUS server can cause a link flap on an authentication port, which triggers DHCP renegotiation from one or more hosts connected to this port. This incident can
occur when there is a VLAN change and the endpoint is a device (such as a printer) that does not have a mechanism to detect a change on this authentication port. The CoA bounce port is carried in a standard CoA-Request message that contains the following VSA:

Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=bounce-host-port"

Because this command is session-oriented, it must be accompanied by one or more of the session identification attributes. If the session cannot be located, the device returns a CoA-NAK message with the “Session Context Not Found” error-code attribute. If the session is located, the device disables the hosting port for a period of 10 seconds, re-enables it (port-bounce), and returns a CoA-ACK.

If the device fails before returning a CoA-ACK to the client, the process is repeated on the new active device when the request is re-sent from the client. If the device fails after returning a CoA-ACK message to the client but before the operation has completed, the operation is re-started on the new active device.

Default RADIUS Configuration

RADIUS and AAA are disabled by default.

To prevent a lapse in security, you cannot configure RADIUS through a network management application. When enabled, RADIUS can authenticate users accessing the device through the CLI.

RADIUS Server Host

Device-to-RADIUS-server communication involves several components:

- Hostname or IP address
- Authentication destination port
- Accounting destination port
- Key string
- Timeout period
- Retransmission value

You identify RADIUS security servers by their hostname or IP address, hostname and specific UDP port numbers, or their IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and the UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. This unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address.

If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, accounting—the second host entry configured acts as a fail-over backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the %RADIUS-4-RADIUS_DEAD message appears, and then the device tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order that they are configured.)

A RADIUS server and the device use a shared secret text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses. To configure RADIUS to use the AAA security commands, you must specify the host running the RADIUS server daemon and a secret text (key) string that it shares with the device.

The timeout, retransmission, and encryption key values can be configured globally for all RADIUS servers, on a per-server basis, or in some combination of global and per-server settings.
RADIUS Login Authentication

To configure AAA authentication, you define a named list of authentication methods and then apply that list to various ports. The method list defines the types of authentication to be performed and the sequence in which they are performed; it must be applied to a specific port before any of the defined authentication methods are performed. The only exception is the default method list. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports except those that have a named method list explicitly defined.

A method list describes the sequence and authentication methods to be queried to authenticate a user. You can designate one or more security protocols to be used for authentication, thus ensuring a backup system for authentication in case the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authenticate users; if that method fails to respond, the software selects the next authentication method in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authentication method or until all defined methods are exhausted. If authentication fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user access—the authentication process stops, and no other authentication methods are attempted.

AAA Server Groups

You can configure the device to use AAA server groups to group existing server hosts for authentication. You select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. The server group is used with a global server-host list, which lists the IP addresses of the selected server hosts.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server if each entry has a unique identifier (the combination of the IP address and UDP port number), allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. This unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If you configure two different host entries on the same RADIUS server for the same service, (for example, accounting), the second configured host entry acts as a fail-over backup to the first one. If the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order in which they are configured.)

AAA Authorization

AAA authorization limits the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the device uses information retrieved from the user’s profile, which is in the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. The user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

RADIUS Accounting

The AAA accounting feature tracks the services that users are using and the amount of network resources that they are consuming. When you enable AAA accounting, the device reports user activity to the RADIUS security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the security server. You can then analyze the data for network management, client billing, or auditing.
Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the device and the RADIUS server by using the vendor-specific attribute (attribute 26). Vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) allow vendors to support their own extended attributes not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option by using the format recommended in the specification. Cisco’s vendor-ID is 9, and the supported option has vendor-type 1, which is named *cisco-avpair*. The value is a string with this format:

```plaintext
protocol : attribute sep value *
```

*Protocol* is a value of the Cisco protocol attribute for a particular type of authorization. *Attribute* and *value* are an appropriate attribute-value (AV) pair defined in the Cisco TACACS+ specification, and *sep* is = for mandatory attributes and is * for optional attributes. The full set of features available for TACACS+ authorization can then be used for RADIUS.

For example, the following AV pair causes Cisco’s “multiple named IP address pools” feature to be activated during IP authorization (during PPP’s Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP) address assignment):

```plaintext
cisco-avpair= "ip:addr-pool=first"
```

If you insert an “*”, the AV pair “ip:addr-pool=first” becomes optional. Note that any AV pair can be made optional:

```plaintext
cisco-avpair= "ip:addr-pool*first"
```

The following example shows how to cause a user logging in from a network access server to have immediate access to EXEC commands:

```plaintext
cisco-avpair= "shell:priv-lvl=15"
```

Other vendors have their own unique vendor-IDs, options, and associated VSAs. For more information about vendor-IDs and VSAs, see RFC 2138, “Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS).”

Attribute 26 contains the following three elements:

- Type
- Length
- String (also known as data)
  - Vendor-ID
  - Vendor-Type
  - Vendor-Length
  - Vendor-Data

The figure below shows the packet format for a VSA encapsulated “behind” attribute 26.
It is up to the vendor to specify the format of their VSA. The Attribute-Specific field (also known as Vendor-Data) is dependent on the vendor's definition of that attribute.

The table below describes significant fields listed in the Vendor-Specific RADIUS IETF Attributes table (second table below), which lists supported vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (IETF attribute 26).

### Table 13: Vendor-Specific Attributes Table Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>All attributes listed in the following table are extensions of IETF attribute 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor-Specific Command Codes</td>
<td>A defined code used to identify a particular vendor. Code 9 defines Cisco VSAs, 311 defines Microsoft VSAs, and 529 defines Ascend VSAs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>The attribute ID number. This number is much like the ID numbers of IETF attributes, except it is a “second layer” ID number encapsulated behind attribute 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>The ASCII string name of the attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the attribute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 14: Vendor-Specific RADIUS IETF Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Response</td>
<td>Contains the response value provided by a PPP MS-CHAP user in response to the challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets. This attribute is identical to the PPP CHAP Identifier. (RFC 2548)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>MSCHAP-Challenge</td>
<td>Contains the challenge sent by a network access server to an MS-CHAP user. It can be used in both Access-Request and Access-Challenge packets. (RFC 2548)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VPDN Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-cm-local-window-size</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum receive window size for L2TP control messages. This value is advertised to the peer during tunnel establishment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-drop-out-of-order</td>
<td>Respects sequence numbers on data packets by dropping those that are received out of order. This does not ensure that sequence numbers will be sent on data packets, just how to handle them if they are received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-hello-interval</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds for the hello keepalive interval. Hello packets are sent when no data has been sent on a tunnel for the number of seconds configured here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-hidden-avp</td>
<td>When enabled, sensitive AVPs in L2TP control messages are scrambled or hidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>l2tp-nosession-timeout</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds that a tunnel will stay active with no sessions before timing out and shutting down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>tunnel-tos-reflect</td>
<td>Copies the IP ToS field from the IP header of each payload packet to the IP header of the tunnel packet for packets entering the tunnel at the LNS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12tp-tunnel-authen</td>
<td>If this attribute is set, it performs L2TP tunnel authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12tp-tunnel-password</td>
<td>Shared secret used for L2TP tunnel authentication and AVP hiding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12tp-udp-checksum</td>
<td>This is an authorization attribute and defines whether L2TP should perform UDP checksums for data packets. Valid values are “yes” and “no.” The default is no.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Store and Forward Fax Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fax-Account-Id-Origin</td>
<td>Indicates the account ID origin as defined by system administrator for the <code>mnoip aaa receive-id</code> or the <code>mnoip aaa send-id</code> commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fax-Msg-Id</td>
<td>Indicates a unique fax message identification number assigned by Store and Forward Fax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Fax-Pages</td>
<td>Indicates the number of pages transmitted or received during this fax session. This page count includes cover pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Fax-Coverpage-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not a cover page was generated by the off-ramp gateway for this fax session. True indicates that a cover page was generated; false means that a cover page was not generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Fax-Modem-Time</td>
<td>Indicates the amount of time in seconds the modem sent fax data (x) and the amount of time in seconds of the total fax session (y), which includes both fax-mail and PSTN time, in the form x/y. For example, 10/15 means that the transfer time took 10 seconds, and the total fax session took 15 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Fax-Connect-Speed</td>
<td>Indicates the modem speed at which this fax-mail was initially transmitted or received. Possible values are 1200, 4800, 9600, and 14400.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Fax-Recipient-Count</td>
<td>Indicates the number of recipients for this fax transmission. Until e-mail servers support Session mode, the number should be 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Fax-Process-Abort-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates that the fax session was terminated or successful. True means that the session was terminated; false means that the session was successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Fax-Dsn-Address</td>
<td>Indicates the address to which DSNs will be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Fax-Dsn-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not DSN has been enabled. True indicates that DSN has been enabled; false means that DSN has not been enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Fax-Mdn-Address</td>
<td>Indicates the address to which MDNs will be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Fax-Mdn-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not message delivery notification (MDN) has been enabled. True indicates that MDN had been enabled; false means that MDN had not been enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Fax-Auth-Status</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not authentication for this fax session was successful. Possible values for this field are success, failed, bypassed, or unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Email-Server-Address</td>
<td>Indicates the IP address of the e-mail server handling the on-ramp fax-mail message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Email-Server-Ack-Flag</td>
<td>Indicates that the on-ramp gateway has received a positive acknowledgment from the e-mail server accepting the fax-mail message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Gateway-Id</td>
<td>Indicates the name of the gateway that processed the fax session. The name appears in the following format: hostname.domain-name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Call-Type</td>
<td>Describes the type of fax activity: fax receive or fax send.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Port-Used</td>
<td>Indicates the slot/port number of the Cisco AS5300 used to either transmit or receive this fax-mail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Abort-Cause</td>
<td>If the fax session terminates, indicates the system component that signaled the termination. Examples of system components that could trigger an termination are FAP (Fax Application Process), TIFF (the TIFF reader or the TIFF writer), fax-mail client, fax-mail server, ESMTP client, or ESMTP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H323 Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Remote-Gateway-ID (h323-remote-address)</td>
<td>Indicates the IP address of the remote gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Connection-ID (h323-conf-id)</td>
<td>Identifies the conference ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Setup-Time (h323-setup-time)</td>
<td>Indicates the setup time for this connection in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and Zulu time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Call-Origin (h323-call-origin)</td>
<td>Indicates the origin of the call relative to the gateway. Possible values are originating and terminating (answer).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Call-Type (h323-call-type)</td>
<td>Indicates call leg type. Possible values are <em>telephony</em> and <em>VoIP</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Connect-Time (h323-connect-time)</td>
<td>Indicates the connection time for this call leg in UTC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Disconnect-Time (h323-disconnect-time)</td>
<td>Indicates the time this call leg was disconnected in UTC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Disconnect-Cause (h323-disconnect-cause)</td>
<td>Specifies the reason a connection was taken offline per Q.931 specification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Voice-Quality (h323-voice-quality)</td>
<td>Specifies the impairment factor (ICPIF) affecting voice quality for a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Gateway-ID (h323-gw-id)</td>
<td>Indicates the name of the underlying gateway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Large Scale Dialout Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>callback-dialstring</td>
<td>Defines a dialing string to be used for callback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>data-service</td>
<td>No description available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>dial-number</td>
<td>Defines the number to dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>force-56</td>
<td>Determines whether the network access server uses only the 56 K portion of a channel, even when all 64 K appear to be available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>map-class</td>
<td>Allows the user profile to reference information configured in a map class of the same name on the network access server that dials out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>send-auth</td>
<td>Defines the protocol to use (PAP or CHAP) for username-password authentication following CLID authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PPP name authentication. To apply for PAP, do not configure the `ppp pap send-name password` command on the interface. For PAP, “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used as the PAP username and PAP password for outbound authentication. For CHAP, “preauth:send-name” will be used not only for outbound authentication, but also for inbound authentication. For a CHAP inbound case, the NAS will use the name defined in “preauth:send-name” in the challenge packet to the caller box.

**Note** The send-name attribute has changed over time: Initially, it performed the functions now provided by both the send-name and remote-name attributes. Because the remote-name attribute has been added, the send-name attribute is restricted to its current behavior.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>send-name</td>
<td>PPP name authentication. To apply for PAP, do not configure the <code>ppp pap send-name password</code> command on the interface. For PAP, “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used as the PAP username and PAP password for outbound authentication. For CHAP, “preauth:send-name” will be used not only for outbound authentication, but also for inbound authentication. For a CHAP inbound case, the NAS will use the name defined in “preauth:send-name” in the challenge packet to the caller box.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>send-secret</td>
<td>PPP password authentication. The vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used as the PAP username and PAP password for outbound authentication. For a CHAP outbound case, both “preauth:send-name” and “preauth:send-secret” will be used in the response packet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>remote-name</td>
<td>Provides the name of the remote host for use in large-scale dial-out. Dialer checks that the large-scale dial-out remote name matches the authenticated name, to protect against accidental user RADIUS misconfiguration. (For example, dialing a valid phone number but connecting to the wrong device.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Miscellaneous Attributes**
### Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Vendor-Specific Company Code</th>
<th>Sub-Type Number</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Cisco-NAS-Port</td>
<td>Specifies additional vendor specific attribute (VSA) information for NAS-Port accounting. To specify additional NAS-Port information in the form an Attribute-Value Pair (AVPair) string, use the <code>radius-server vsa send</code> global configuration command. <strong>Note</strong> This VSA is typically used in Accounting, but may also be used in Authentication (Access-Request) packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>min-links</td>
<td>Sets the minimum number of links for MLP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>proxyacl&lt;&amp;n&gt;</td>
<td>Allows users to configure the downloadable user profiles (dynamic ACLs) by using the authentication proxy feature so that users can have the configured authorization to permit traffic going through the configured interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Vendor-Specific Company Code</td>
<td>Sub-Type Number</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>spi</td>
<td>Carries the authentication information needed by the home agent to authenticate a mobile node during registration. The information is in the same syntax as the <code>ip mobile secure host &lt;addr&gt;</code> configuration command. Basically it contains the rest of the configuration command that follows that string, verbatim. It provides the Security Parameter Index (SPI), key, authentication algorithm, authentication mode, and replay protection timestamp range.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication

Although an IETF draft standard for RADIUS specifies a method for communicating vendor-proprietary information between the device and the RADIUS server, some vendors have extended the RADIUS attribute set in a unique way. Cisco IOS XE software supports a subset of vendor-proprietary RADIUS attributes.

As mentioned earlier, to configure RADIUS (whether vendor-proprietary or IETF draft-compliant), you must specify the host running the RADIUS server daemon and the secret text string it shares with the device. You specify the RADIUS host and secret text string by using the `radius server` global configuration commands.

## How to Configure RADIUS

### Identifying the RADIUS Server Host

To apply these settings globally to all RADIUS servers communicating with the device, use the three unique global configuration commands: `radius-server timeout`, `radius-server retransmit`, and `key string`.

You can configure the device to use AAA server groups to group existing server hosts for authentication.

You also need to configure some settings on the RADIUS server. These settings include the IP address of the device and the key string to be shared by both the server and the device.

Follow these steps to configure per-server RADIUS server communication.
Before you begin
If you configure both global and per-server functions (timeout, retransmission, and key commands) on the device, the per-server timer, retransmission, and key value commands override global timer, retransmission, and key value commands.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>radius server server name</td>
<td>Specifies the name for the RADIUS server configuration for Protected Access Credential (PAC) provisioning, and enters RADIUS server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# radius server rsim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} ip address { auth-port port number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td>For auth-port port-number, specify the UDP destination port for authentication requests. The default is 1645. The range is 0 to 65536.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.2.2.12 auth-port 1612</td>
<td>For acct-port port-number, specify the UDP destination port for authentication requests. The default is 1646.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>key string</td>
<td>(Optional) For key string, specify the authentication and encryption key used between the device and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td>The key is a text string that must match the encryption key used on the RADIUS server. Always configure the key as the last item in the radius server command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123</td>
<td>Leading spaces are ignored, but spaces within and at the end of the key are used. If you use spaces in your key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks are part of the key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retransmit <em>value</em></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent when the server is not responding or responding slowly. The range is 1 to 100. This setting overrides the <em>radius-server retransmit</em> global configuration command setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# retransmit 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout <em>seconds</em></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the time interval that the device waits for the RADIUS server to reply before sending a request again. The range is 1 to 1000. This setting overrides the <em>radius-server timeout</em> global configuration command setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# timeout 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits RADIUS server configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Configuring RADIUS Login Authentication

Follow these steps to configure RADIUS login authentication:

### Before you begin

To secure the device for HTTP access by using AAA methods, you must configure the `ip http authentication` `aaa` global configuration command. Configuring AAA authentication does not secure the device for HTTP access by using AAA methods.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

| Step 4  | aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...] |

#### Example:

Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local

| Purpose |

- **Purpose**: Creates a login authentication method list.  
  - To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the login authentication command, use the `default` keyword followed by the methods that are to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports.

  - For `list-name`, specify a character string to name the list you are creating.

  - For `method1...`, specify the actual method the authentication algorithm tries. The additional methods of authentication are used only if the previous method returns an error, not if it fails.

  Select one of these methods:

  - **enable**—Use the enable password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define an enable password by using the `enable password` global configuration command.

  - **group radius**—Use RADIUS authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must configure the RADIUS server.

  - **line**—Use the line password for authentication. Before you can use this authentication method, you must define a line password. Use the `password` configuration command.

  - **local**—Use the local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database. Use the `username name password` global configuration command.

  - **local-case**—Use a case-sensitive local username database for authentication. You must enter username information in the database by using the `username password` global configuration command.
### Defining AAA Server Groups

You use the `server` group server configuration command to associate a particular server with a defined group server. You can either identify the server by its IP address or identify multiple host instances or entries by using the optional `auth-port` and `acct-port` keywords.

Follow these steps to define AAA server groups:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> radius server name</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the RADIUS server configuration for Protected Access Credential (PAC) provisioning and enters RADIUS server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius server ISE</td>
<td>The device also supports RADIUS for IPv6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 4**

address {ipv4 | ipv6} {ip-address | hostname} auth-port port-number acct-port port-number

**Example:**

Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646

**Purpose:** Configures the IPv4 address for the RADIUS server accounting and authentication parameters.

**Step 5**

key string

**Example:**

Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco123

**Purpose:** Specifies the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the device and the RADIUS server.

**Step 6**

end

**Example:**

Device(config-radius-server)# end

**Purpose:** Exits RADIUS server configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

## Configuring RADIUS Authorization for User Privileged Access and Network Services

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:** Device# configure terminal | |

**Note:** Authorization is bypassed for authenticated users who log in through the CLI even if authorization has been configured.

Follow these steps to configure RADIUS authorization for user privileged access and network services:
### Configuring RADIUS

#### Step 3

Configure the device for user RADIUS authorization for all network-related service requests.

**aaa authorization network**

**authorization-list radius**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization network list1 radius
```

#### Step 4

Configure the device for user RADIUS authorization if the user has privileged EXEC access.

**aaa authorization exec**

**authorization-list radius**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec list1 radius
```

#### Step 5

The `exec` keyword might return user profile information (such as `autocommand` information).

**end**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

### What to do next

You can use the `aaa authorization` global configuration command with the `radius` keyword to set parameters that restrict a user’s network access to privileged EXEC mode.

The `aaa authorization exec radius local` command sets these authorization parameters:

- Use RADIUS for privileged EXEC access authorization if authentication was performed by using RADIUS.
- Use the local database if authentication was not performed by using RADIUS.

### Starting RADIUS Accounting

Follow these steps to start RADIUS accounting:

**Procedure**

#### Step 1

Enables privileged EXEC mode.

**enable**

**Example:**

```
Device> enable
```

#### Step 2

Enters global configuration mode.

**configure terminal**

**Example:**

```
Device# configure terminal
```
### Configuring Settings for All RADIUS Servers

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure settings for all RADIUS servers:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>* Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the name for the RADIUS server configuration for Protected Access Credential (PAC) provisioning, and enters RADIUS server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius server server name</td>
<td>Specifies the name for the RADIUS server configuration for Protected Access Credential (PAC) provisioning, and enters RADIUS server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius server rsim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the shared secret text string used between the switch and all RADIUS servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key string</td>
<td>Specifies the shared secret text string used between the switch and all RADIUS servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring the Device to Use Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

Follow these steps to configure vendor-specific RADIUS attributes:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables the device to recognize and use VSAs as defined by RADIUS IETF attribute 26.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`radius-server vsa send [accounting</td>
<td>authentication]`</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring the Device for Vendor-Proprietary RADIUS Server Communication

Follow these steps to configure vendor-proprietary RADIUS server communication:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
| Example: | Device> enable |  
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
| Example: | Device# configure terminal |  
| Step 3 | radius server server name | Specifies the name for the RADIUS server configuration for Protected Access Credential (PAC) provisioning, and enters RADIUS server configuration mode.  
| Example: | Device(config)# radius server rsim |  
| Step 4 | address { ipv4 | ipv6 } ip address | (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.  
| Example: | Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 172.24.25.10 |
### Configuring RADIUS

#### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> non-standard</td>
<td>Identifies that the RADIUS server using a vendor-proprietary implementation of RADIUS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-radius-server)# non-standard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Step 6 key string | Specifies the shared secret text string used between the device and the vendor-proprietary key string. |
| Example: Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123 | The device and the RADIUS server use this text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses. |

| Step 7 end | Exits RADIUS server mode and enters privileged EXEC mode. |
| Example: Device(config-radius-server)# end | |

### Configuring CoA on the Device

Follow these steps to configure CoA on a device. This procedure is required.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa server radius dynamic-author</td>
<td>Configures the device as an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server to facilitate interaction with an external policy server, and enters dynamic authorization local server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Specifies a RADIUS client from which a device will accept CoA and disconnect requests. | Step 5 client \{ip-address | name\} [vrf vrfname] [server-key string]  
   Example:  
   Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client client1 vrf vrf1 |
| Configures the RADIUS key to be shared between a device and RADIUS clients. | Step 6 server-key [0 | 7] string  
   Example:  
   Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# server-key your_server_key |
| Specifies the port on which a device listens for RADIUS requests from configured RADIUS clients. | Step 7 port port-number  
   Example:  
   Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# port 25 |
| Specifies the type of authorization the device uses for RADIUS clients.  
   The client must match all the configured attributes for authorization. | Step 8 auth-type \{any | all | session-key\}  
   Example:  
   Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# auth-type any |
| (Optional) Configures the device to ignore the server-key. | Step 9 ignore server-key  
   Example:  
   Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# ignore server-key |
| Exits dynamic authorization local server configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode. | Step 10 exit  
   Example:  
   Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# exit |
| (Optional) Configures the device to ignore a CoA request to temporarily disable the port hosting a session. The purpose of temporarily disabling the port is to trigger a DHCP renegotiation from the host when a VLAN change occurs and there is no supplicant on the endpoint to detect the change. | Step 11 authentication command bounce-port ignore  
   Example:  
   Device(config)# authentication command bounce-port ignore |
### Monitoring CoA Functionality

#### Table 15: Privileged EXEC show Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show aaa attributes protocol radius</code></td>
<td>Displays AAA attributes of RADIUS commands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 16: Global Troubleshooting Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>debug radius</code></td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting RADIUS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug aaa coa</code></td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting CoA processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug aaa pod</code></td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting POD packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug aaa subsys</code></td>
<td>Displays information for troubleshooting POD packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`debug cmdhd [detail</td>
<td>error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feature History for RADIUS

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.
### Feature History for RADIUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>RADIUS</td>
<td>RADIUS is a distributed client/server system that secures networks against unauthorized access. RADIUS clients run on supported Cisco devices. Clients send authentication requests to a central RADIUS server, which contains all user authentication and network service access information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
RADIUS Server Load Balancing

The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature distributes authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authentication and accounting transactions across RADIUS servers in a server group. These servers can share the AAA transaction load and thereby respond faster to incoming requests.

This module describes the RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature.

- Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 169
- Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 169
- Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 170
- How to Configure RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 172
- Configuration Examples for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 174
- Additional References for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 179
- Feature History for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 180

Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) must be configured on the RADIUS server.
- AAA RADIUS server groups must be configured.
- RADIUS must be configured for functions such as authentication, accounting, or static route download.

Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Incoming RADIUS requests, such as Packet of Disconnect (POD) requests, are not supported.
- Load balancing is not supported on proxy RADIUS servers and for private server groups.
Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing

RADIUS Server Load Balancing Overview

Load balancing distributes batches of transactions to RADIUS servers within a server group. Load balancing assigns each batch of transactions to the server with the lowest number of outstanding transactions in its queue. The process of assigning a batch of transactions is as follows:

1. The first transaction is received for a new batch.
2. All server transaction queues are checked.
3. The server with the lowest number of outstanding transactions is identified.
4. The identified server is assigned the next batch of transactions.

The batch size is a user-configured parameter. Changes in the batch size may impact CPU load and network throughput. As batch size increases, CPU load decreases and network throughput increases. However, if a large batch size is used, all available server resources may not be fully utilized. As batch size decreases, CPU load increases and network throughput decreases.

Note

There is no set number for large or small batch sizes. A batch with more than 50 transactions is considered large and a batch with fewer than 25 transactions is considered small.

Note

If a server group contains ten or more servers, we recommend that you set a high batch size to reduce CPU load.

Transaction Load Balancing Across RADIUS Server Groups

You can configure load balancing either per-named RADIUS server group or for the global RADIUS server group. The load balancing server group must be referred to as “radius” in the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) method lists. All public servers that are part of the RADIUS server group are then load balanced.

You can configure authentication and accounting to use the same RADIUS server or different servers. In some cases, the same server can be used for preauthentication, authentication, or accounting transactions for a session. The preferred server, which is an internal setting and is set as the default, informs AAA to use the same server for the start and stop record for a session regardless of the server cost. When using the preferred server setting, ensure that the server that is used for the initial transaction (for example, authentication), the preferred server, is part of any other server group that is used for a subsequent transaction (for example, accounting).

The preferred server is not used if one of the following criteria is true:

- The `load-balance method least-outstanding ignore-preferred-server` command is used.
- The preferred server is dead.
• The preferred server is in quarantine.
• The want server flag has been set, overriding the preferred server setting.

The want server flag, an internal setting, is used when the same server must be used for all stages of a multistage transaction regardless of the server cost. If the want server is not available, the transaction fails.

You can use the `load-balance method least-outstanding ignore-preferred-server` command if you have either of the following configurations:

• Dedicated authentication server and a separate dedicated accounting server
• Network where you can track all call record statistics and call record details, including start and stop records and records that are stored on separate servers

If you have a configuration where authentication servers are a superset of accounting servers, the preferred server is not used.

### RADIUS Server Status and Automated Testing

The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature considers the server status when assigning batches. Transaction batches are sent only to live servers. We recommend that you test the status of all RADIUS load-balanced servers, including low usage servers (for example, backup servers).

Transactions are not sent to a server that is marked dead. A server is marked dead until its timer expires, at which time it moves to quarantine state. A server is in quarantine until it is verified alive by the RADIUS automated tester functionality.

To determine if a server is alive and available to process transactions, the RADIUS automated tester sends a request periodically to the server for a test user ID. If the server returns an Access-Reject message, the server is alive; otherwise the server is either dead or quarantined.

A transaction sent to an unresponsive server is failed over to the next available server before the unresponsive server is marked dead. We recommend that you use the retry reorder mode for failed transactions.

When using the RADIUS automated tester, verify that the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) servers are responding to the test packets that are sent by the network access server (NAS). If the servers are not configured correctly, packets may be dropped and the server erroneously marked dead.

---

**Caution**

We recommend that you use a test user that is not defined on the RADIUS server for the RADIUS server automated testing to protect against security issues that may arise if the test user is not correctly configured.

---

**Note**

Use the `test aaa group` command to check load-balancing transactions.
How to Configure RADIUS Server Load Balancing

Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>aaa group server radius group-name</td>
<td>Enters server group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius rad-sg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>load-balance method least-outstanding [batch-size number] [ignore-preferred-server]</td>
<td>Enables the least-outstanding load balancing for a named server group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits server group configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Troubleshooting RADIUS Server Load Balancing

After configuring the RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature, you can monitor the idle timer, dead timer, and load balancing server selection or verify the server status by using a manual test command.
Procedure

Step 1

Use the `debug aaa test` command to determine when an idle timer or dead timer has expired, when test packets are sent, the status of the server, or to verify the server state.

The idle timer is used to check the server status and is updated with or without any incoming requests. Monitoring the idle timer helps to determine if there are nonresponsive servers and to keep the RADIUS server status updated to efficiently utilize available resources. For instance, an updated idle timer would help ensure that incoming requests are sent to servers that are alive.

The dead timer is used either to determine that a server is dead or to update a dead server's status appropriately. Monitoring server selection helps to determine how often the server selection changes. Server selection is effective in analyzing if there are any bottlenecks, a large number of queued requests, or if only specific servers are processing incoming requests.

The following sample output from the `debug aaa test` command shows when the idle timer expired:

**Example:**

```
Device# debug aaa test
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701) quarantined.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Sending test request(s) to server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Sending 1 Access-Requests, 1 Accounting-Requests in current batch.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST(Req#: 1): Sending test AAA Accounting-Request.
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Obtained Test response from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Obtained Test response from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Necessary responses received from server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701)
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701) marked ALIVE. Idle timer set for 60 sec(s).
Jul 16 00:07:01: AAA/SG/TEST: Server (192.0.2.245:1700,1701) removed from quarantine.
```

Step 2

Use the `debug aaa sg-server selection` command to determine the server that is selected for load balancing.

The following sample output from the `debug aaa sg-server selection` command shows five access requests being sent to a server group with a batch size of three:

**Example:**

```
Device# debug aaa sg-server selection
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining a new least loaded server.
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Server[0] load: 3
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Selected Server[1] with load 0
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Selected Server[1] with load 0
Jul 16 03:15:05: AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT: Obtaining least loaded server.
```

Step 3

Use the `test aaa group` command to manually verify the RADIUS load-balanced server status.
The following sample output shows the response from a load-balanced RADIUS server that is alive when the username “test” does not match a user profile. The server is verified alive when it issues an Access-Reject response to an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) packet generated using the `test aaa group` command.

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device# test aaa group SG1 test lab new-code
```

```
00:06:07: RADIUS/ENCODE(00000000): Orig. component type = INVALID
00:06:07: RADIUS/ENCODE(00000000): dropping service type, "radius-server attribute 6 on-for-login-auth" is off
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): Config NAS IP: 192.0.2.4
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): sending
00:06:07: RADIUS/ENCODE: Best Local IP-Address 192.0.2.141 for Radius-Server 192.0.2.176
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): Send Access-Request to 192.0.2.176:1645 id 1645/1, len 50
00:06:07: RADIUS: authenticator CA DB F4 9B 7B 66 C8 A9 - D1 99 4E 6E A4 46 99 B4
00:06:07: RADIUS: User-Password [2] 18 *
00:06:07: RADIUS: User-Name [1] 6 "test"
00:06:07: RADIUS: NAS-IP-Address [4] 6 192.0.2.176
00:06:07: RADIUS: Received from id 1645/1 192.0.2.176:1645, Access-Reject, len 44
00:06:07: RADIUS: authenticator 2F 69 84 3E F0 4E F1 62 - AB B8 75 5B 38 82 49 C3
00:06:07: RADIUS: Reply-Message [18] 24
00:06:07: RADIUS: 41 75 74 68 65 74 69 63 61 74 69 6F 6E 20 66 [Authentication f]
00:06:07: RADIUS: 61 69 6C 75 72 65 [failure]
00:06:07: RADIUS(00000000): Received from id 1645/1
00:06:07: RADIUS/DECODE: Reply-Message fragments, 22, total 22 bytes
```

---

**Configuration Examples for RADIUS Server Load Balancing**

**Example: Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group**

The following examples show load balancing enabled for a named RADIUS server group. These examples are shown in three parts: the current configuration of the RADIUS command output, debug output, and authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server status information.

The following sample output shows the relevant RADIUS configuration:

```plaintext
Device# show running-config

```

```plaintext
aaa group server radius server-group1
  server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096
  server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2015 acct-port 2016
  load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 5

aaa authentication ppp default group server-group1
aaa accounting network default start-stop group server-group1
```

```
Device(config-sg-radius)# load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 30
```

The lines in the current configuration of the preceding RADIUS command output are defined as follows:
• The **aaa group server radius** command shows the configuration of a server group with two member servers.

• The **load-balance** command enables load balancing for global RADIUS server groups with the batch size specified.

• The **aaa authentication ppp** command authenticates all PPP users using RADIUS.

• The **aaa accounting** command enables sending of all accounting requests to the AAA server when the client is authenticated and then disconnected using the **start-stop** keyword.

The show debug sample output below shows the selection of the preferred server and the processing of requests for the preceding configuration:

```
Device# show debug
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002C):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT:Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002D):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002E):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(0000002F):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(00000030):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
*Feb 28 13:51:16.019:AAA/SG/SERVER_SELECT(00000031):Server (192.0.2.238:2095,2096) now being used as preferred server
```
The following sample output from the `show aaa servers` command shows the AAA server status for the named RADIUS server group configuration:

The sample output shows the status of two RADIUS servers. Both servers are alive, and no requests have been processed since the counters were cleared 0 minutes ago.

```
Device# show aaa servers

RADIUS:id 8, priority 1, host 192.0.2.238, auth-port 2095, acct-port 2096
  State:current UP, duration 3781s, previous duration 0s
  Dead:total time 0s, count 0
  Quarantined:No
  Authen:request 0, timeouts 0
    Response:unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction:success 0, failure 0
  Author:request 0, timeouts 0
    Response:unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction:success 0, failure 0
  Account:request 0, timeouts 0
    Response:unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction:success 0, failure 0
  Elapsed time since counters last cleared:0m

RADIUS:id 9, priority 2, host 192.0.2.238, auth-port 2015, acct-port 2016
  State:current UP, duration 3781s, previous duration 0s
  Dead:total time 0s, count 0
  Quarantined:No
  Authen:request 0, timeouts 0
    Response:unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction:success 0, failure 0
  Author:request 0, timeouts 0
    Response:unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction:success 0, failure 0
  Account:request 0, timeouts 0
    Response:unexpected 0, server error 0, incorrect 0, time 0ms
    Transaction:success 0, failure 0
  Elapsed time since counters last cleared:0m
```

**Example: Monitoring Idle Timer**

The following example shows idle timer and related server state for load balancing enabled for a named RADIUS server group. The current configuration of the RADIUS command output and debug command output are also displayed.

The following sample output shows the relevant RADIUS configuration:

```
Device# show running-config | include radius

aaa group server radius server-group1
  radius-server host 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096 test username junk1 idle-time 1 key cisco
  radius-server host 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2015 acct-port 2016 test username junk1 idle-time 1 key cisco
radius-server load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 5
```

The lines in the current configuration of the preceding RADIUS command output are defined as follows:
• The `aaa group server radius` command shows the configuration of a server group.

• The `radius-server host` command defines the IP address of the RADIUS server host with authorization and accounting ports specified and the authentication and encryption key identified.

• The `radius-server load-balance` command enables load balancing for the RADIUS server with the batch size specified.

The `show debug` sample output below shows test requests being sent to servers. The response to the test request sent to the server is received, the server is removed from quarantine as appropriate, the server is marked alive, and then the idle timer is reset.

```
Device# show debug

*Feb 28 13:52:20.835:AAA/SG/TEST:Sending test request(s) to server (192.0.2.238:2015,2016)
```

**Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with the Same Authentication and Authorization Server**

The following example shows an authentication server group and an authorization server group that use the same servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authentication-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius accounting-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# end
```

When a preferred server is selected for a session, all transactions for that session will continue to use the original preferred server. The servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 are load balanced based on sessions rather than transactions.
Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Different Authentication and Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 and an authorization server group that uses servers 209.165.201.1 and 209.165.201.2. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authentication-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius accounting-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.2 key radkey4
Device(config-sg-radius)# end

The authentication server group and the accounting server group do not share any common servers. A preferred server is never found for accounting transactions; therefore, authentication and accounting servers are load-balanced based on transactions. Start and stop records are sent to the same server for a session.

Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Overlapping Authentication and Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225, 209.165.200.226, and 209.165.201.1 and an accounting server group that uses servers 209.165.201.1 and 209.165.201.2. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authentication-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius accounting-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.2 key radkey4
Device(config-sg-radius)# end

If all servers have equal transaction processing capability, one-third of all authentication transactions are directed toward the server 209.165.201.1. Therefore, one-third of all accounting transactions are also directed toward the server 209.165.201.1. The remaining two-thirds of accounting transactions are load balanced equally between servers 209.165.201.1 and 209.165.201.2. The server 209.165.201.1 receives fewer authentication transactions because the server 209.165.201.1 has outstanding accounting transactions.

Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Subset of Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 and an authorization server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225, 209.165.200.226, and 209.165.201.1. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authentication-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius accounting-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
Device(config-sg-radius)# end

One-half of all authentication transactions are sent to the server 209.165.200.225 and the other half to the server 209.165.200.226. Servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 are preferred servers for authentication and accounting transaction. Therefore, there is an equal distribution of authentication and accounting transactions across servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226. The server 209.165.201.1 is relatively unused.

Example: Configuring the Preferred Server with Authentication Servers As a Superset of Authorization Servers

The following example shows an authentication server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225, 209.165.200.226, and 209.165.201.1 and an authorization server group that uses servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226. Both server groups have the preferred server flag enabled.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authentication-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius accounting-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.225 key radkey1
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.200.226 key radkey2
Device(config-sg-radius)# server 209.165.201.1 key radkey3
Device(config-sg-radius)# end

Initially, one-third of authentication transactions are assigned to each server in the authorization server group. As accounting transactions are generated for more sessions, accounting transactions are sent to servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 because the preferred server flag is on. As servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226 begin to process more transactions, authentication transactions will start to be sent to server 209.165.201.1. Transaction requests authenticated by server 209.165.201.1 do not have any preferred server setting and are split between servers 209.165.200.225 and 209.165.200.226, which negates the use of the preferred server flag. This configuration should be used cautiously.

Additional References for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS</td>
<td>“Configuring RADIUS” module in the Security Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.11.1</td>
<td>RADIUS Server Load Balancing</td>
<td>The RADIUS Server Load Balancing feature distributes authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authentication and accounting transactions across servers in a server group. These servers can share the AAA transaction load and thereby respond faster to incoming requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 10

Configuring Kerberos

- Prerequisites for Kerberos, on page 181
- Information about Kerberos, on page 181
- How to Configure Kerberos, on page 185
- Monitoring the Kerberos Configuration, on page 185
- Feature History for Kerberos, on page 185

Prerequisites for Kerberos

The following are the prerequisites for controlling switch access with Kerberos.

- So that remote users can authenticate to network services, you must configure the hosts and the KDC in the Kerberos realm to communicate and mutually authenticate users and network services. To do this, you must identify them to each other. You add entries for the hosts to the Kerberos database on the KDC and add KEYTAB files generated by the KDC to all hosts in the Kerberos realm. You also create entries for the users in the KDC database.

- A Kerberos server can be a switch that is configured as a network security server and that can authenticate users by using the Kerberos protocol.

When you add or create entries for the hosts and users, follow these guidelines:

- The Kerberos principal name must be in all lowercase characters.
- The Kerberos instance name must be in all lowercase characters.
- The Kerberos realm name must be in all uppercase characters.

Information about Kerberos

This section provides the following Kerberos information.

Kerberos and Switch Access

This section describes how to enable and configure the Kerberos security system, which authenticates requests for network resources by using a trusted third party.
Kerberos Overview

Kerberos is a secret-key network authentication protocol, which was developed at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). It uses the Data Encryption Standard (DES) cryptographic algorithm for encryption and authentication and authenticates requests for network resources. Kerberos uses the concept of a trusted third party to perform secure verification of users and services. This trusted third party is called the key distribution center (KDC).

Kerberos verifies that users are who they claim to be and the network services that they use are what the services claim to be. To do this, a KDC or trusted Kerberos server issues tickets to users. These tickets, which have a limited life span, are stored in user credential caches. The Kerberos server uses the tickets instead of user names and passwords to authenticate users and network services.

A Kerberos server can be any switch that is configured as a network security server and that can authenticate users by using the Kerberos protocol.

The Kerberos credential scheme uses a process called single logon. This process authenticates a user once and then allows secure authentication (without encrypting another password) wherever that user credential is accepted.

This software release supports Kerberos 5, which allows organizations that are already using Kerberos 5 to use the same Kerberos authentication database on the KDC that they are already using on their other network hosts (such as UNIX servers and PCs).

Kerberos supports these network services:

- Telnet
- rlogin
- rsh

This table lists the common Kerberos-related terms and definitions.

**Table 17: Kerberos Terms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authentication</td>
<td>A process by which a user or service identifies itself to another service. For example, a client can authenticate to a switch or a switch can authenticate to another switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization</td>
<td>A means by which the switch identifies what privileges the user has in a network or on the switch and what actions the user can perform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credential</td>
<td>A general term that refers to authentication tickets, such as TGTs and service credentials. Kerberos credentials verify the identity of a user or service. If a network service decides to trust the Kerberos server that issued a ticket, it can be used in place of re-entering a username and password. Credentials have a default life span of eight hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instance</td>
<td>An authorization level label for Kerberos principals. Most Kerberos principals are of the form user@REALM (for example, <a href="mailto:smith@EXAMPLE.COM">smith@EXAMPLE.COM</a>). A Kerberos principal with a Kerberos instance has the form user/instance@REALM (for example, smith/admin@EXAMPLE.COM). The Kerberos instance can be used to specify the authorization level for the user if authentication is successful. The server of each network service might implement and enforce the authorization mappings of Kerberos instances but is not required to do so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos principal and instance names must be in all lowercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos realm name must be in all uppercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDC</td>
<td>Key distribution center that consists of a Kerberos server and database program that is running on a network host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kerberized</td>
<td>A term that describes applications and services that have been modified to support the Kerberos credential infrastructure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kerberos realm</td>
<td>A domain consisting of users, hosts, and network services that are registered to a Kerberos server. The Kerberos server is trusted to verify the identity of a user or network service to another user or network service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos realm name must be in all uppercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kerberos server</td>
<td>A daemon that is running on a network host. Users and network services register their identity with the Kerberos server. Network services query the Kerberos server to authenticate to other network services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYTAB</td>
<td>A password that a network service shares with the KDC. In Kerberos 5 and later Kerberos versions, the network service authenticates an encrypted service credential by using the KEYTAB to decrypt it. In Kerberos versions earlier than Kerberos 5, KEYTAB is referred to as SRVTAB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal</td>
<td>Also known as a Kerberos identity, this is who you are or what a service is according to the Kerberos server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>The Kerberos principal name must be in all lowercase characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service credential</td>
<td>A credential for a network service. When issued from the KDC, this credential is encrypted with the password shared by the network service and the KDC. The password is also shared with the user TGT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRVTAB</td>
<td>A password that a network service shares with the KDC. In Kerberos 5 or later Kerberos versions, SRVTAB is referred to as KEYTAB.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Kerberos Operation

A Kerberos server can be a device that is configured as a network security server and that can authenticate remote users by using the Kerberos protocol. Although you can customize Kerberos in a number of ways, remote users attempting to access network services must pass through three layers of security before they can access network services.

To authenticate to network services by using a device as a Kerberos server, remote users must follow these steps:

#### Authenticating to a Boundary Switch

This section describes the first layer of security through which a remote user must pass. The user must first authenticate to the boundary switch. This process then occurs:

1. The user opens an un-Kerberized Telnet connection to the boundary switch.
2. The switch prompts the user for a username and password.
3. The switch requests a TGT from the KDC for this user.
4. The KDC sends an encrypted TGT that includes the user identity to the switch.
5. The switch attempts to decrypt the TGT by using the password that the user entered.
   - If the decryption is successful, the user is authenticated to the switch.
   - If the decryption is not successful, the user repeats Step 2 either by re-entering the username and password (noting if Caps Lock or Num Lock is on or off) or by entering a different username and password.

A remote user who initiates a un-Kerberized Telnet session and authenticates to a boundary switch is inside the firewall, but the user must still authenticate directly to the KDC before getting access to the network services. The user must authenticate to the KDC because the TGT that the KDC issues is stored on the switch and cannot be used for additional authentication until the user logs on to the switch.

#### Obtaining a TGT from a KDC

This section describes the second layer of security through which a remote user must pass. The user must now authenticate to a KDC and obtain a TGT from the KDC to access network services.
Authenticating to Network Services

This section describes the third layer of security through which a remote user must pass. The user with a TGT must now authenticate to the network services in a Kerberos realm.

How to Configure Kerberos

To set up a Kerberos-authenticated server-client system, follow these steps:

- Configure the KDC by using Kerberos commands.
- Configure the switch to use the Kerberos protocol.

Monitoring the Kerberos Configuration

To display the Kerberos configuration, use the following commands:

- `show running-config`
- `show kerberos creds`: Lists the credentials in a current user’s credentials cache.
- `clear kerberos creds`: Destroys all credentials in a current user’s credentials cache, including those forwarded.

Feature History for Kerberos

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Kerberos</td>
<td>Kerberos is a secret-key network authentication protocol, which was developed at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). It uses the Data Encryption Standard (DES) cryptographic algorithm for encryption and authentication and authenticates requests for network resources. Kerberos uses the concept of a trusted third party to perform secure verification of users and services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
CHAPTER 11

MACsec Encryption

- Prerequisites for MACsec Encryption, on page 187
- Restrictions for MACsec Encryption, on page 187
- Information About MACsec Encryption, on page 188
- How to Configure MACsec Encryption, on page 195
- Configuring Examples for MACsec Encryption, on page 216
- Additional References for MACsec Encryption, on page 236
- Feature History for MACsec Encryption, on page 237

Prerequisites for MACsec Encryption

Prerequisites for MACsec Encryption

- Enable the `ssci-based-on-sci` command while configuring MACsec encryption on the device to allow interoperability with non-Cisco and non-IOS XE devices.
- Ensure that 802.1x authentication and AAA are configured on your device.

Prerequisites for Certificate-Based MACsec

- Ensure that you have a Certificate Authority (CA) server configured for your network.
- Generate a CA certificate.
- Ensure that you have configured Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Release 2.0.
- Ensure that both the participating devices, the CA server, and Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) are synchronized using Network Time Protocol (NTP). If time is not synchronized on all your devices, certificates will not be validated.

Restrictions for MACsec Encryption

- MACsec configuration is not supported on EtherChannel ports. Instead, MACsec configuration can be applied on the individual member ports of an EtherChannel. To remove MACsec configuration, you must first unbundle the member ports from the EtherChannel, and then remove it from the individual member ports.
MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) is not supported with high availability.

MACsec with MKA is supported only on point-to-point links.

GCM-AES-256 and XPN cipher suites (GCM-AES-XPN-128 and GCM-AES-XPN-256) are supported only with Network Advantage license.

The MACsec Cipher announcement is not supported for MACsec Extended Packet Numbering (XPN) Ciphers and switch-to-switch MACsec connections.

MACsec XPN Cipher Suites are not supported in switch-to-host MACsec connections.

Certificate-based MACsec is supported only if the access-session is configured as closed or in multiple-host mode. None of the other configuration modes are supported.

If the `dot1q tag vlan native` command is configured globally, the dot1x reauthentication will fail on trunk ports.

MACsec XPN Cipher Suites do not provide confidentiality protection with a confidentiality offset.

MACsec with Precision Time Protocol (PTP) is not supported.

MACsec is not supported on Locator ID Separation Protocol (LISP) interfaces and Cisco Software-Defined Access (SD-Access) solution.

Catalyst 9600 Switches (Dual-Supervisor and StackWise Virtual) does not support MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) with high availability.

## Information About MACsec Encryption

### Recommendations for MACsec Encryption

This section list the recommendations for configuring MACsec encryption:

- Use the confidentiality (encryption) offset as 0 in switch-to-host connections.
- Use Bidirectional Forwarding and Detection (BFD) timer value as 750 milliseconds for 10Gbps ports and 1.25 seconds for any port with speed above 10Gbps.
- Execute the `shutdown` command, and then the `no shutdown` command on a port, after changing any MKA policy or MACsec configuration for active sessions, so that the changes are applied to active sessions.
- Use Extended Packet Numbering (XPN) Cipher Suite for port speeds of 40Gbps and above.
- Do not use Cisco TrustSec Security Association Protocol (SAP) MACsec encryption for port speeds above 10Gbps.
- Set the connectivity association key (CAK) rekey overlap timer to 30 seconds or more.
MACsec Encryption Overview

MACsec is the IEEE 802.1AE standard for authenticating and encrypting packets between two MACsec-capable devices. Catalyst switches support 802.1AE encryption with MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) on switch-to-host links for encryption between the switch and host device. The switch also supports MACsec encryption for switch-to-switch (inter-network device) security using both Cisco TrustSec Network Device Admission Control (NDAC), Security Association Protocol (SAP) and MKA-based key exchange protocol.

Note

When switch-to-switch MACSec is enabled, all traffic is encrypted, except the EAP-over-LAN (EAPOL) packets.

Link layer security can include both packet authentication between switches and MACsec encryption between switches (encryption is optional). Link layer security is supported on SAP-based MACsec.

Table 18: MACsec Support on Switch Ports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connections</th>
<th>MACsec Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch-to-Host</td>
<td>MACsec MKA Encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch-to-Switch</td>
<td>MACsec MKA encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco TrustSec NDAC MACsec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cisco TrustSec and Cisco SAP are meant only for switch-to-switch links and are not supported on switch ports connected to end hosts, such as PCs or IP phones. MKA is supported on switch-to-host facing links as well as switch-to-switch links. Host-facing links typically use flexible authentication ordering for handling heterogeneous devices with or without IEEE 802.1x, and can optionally use MKA-based MACsec encryption. Cisco NDAC and SAP are mutually exclusive with Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT), which is used for compact switches to extend security outside the wiring closet.

Media Access Control Security and MACsec Key Agreement

MACsec, defined in 802.1AE, provides MAC-layer encryption over wired networks by using out-of-band methods for encryption keying. The MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) Protocol provides the required session keys and manages the required encryption keys. MKA and MACsec are implemented after successful authentication using the certificate-based MACsec or Pre Shared Key (PSK) framework.

A switch using MACsec accepts either MACsec or non-MACsec frames, depending on the policy associated with the MKA peer. MACsec frames are encrypted and protected with an integrity check value (ICV). When the switch receives frames from the MKA peer, it decrypts them and calculates the correct ICV by using session keys provided by MKA. The switch compares that ICV to the ICV within the frame. If they are not identical, the frame is dropped. The switch also encrypts and adds an ICV to any frames sent over the secured port (the access point used to provide the secure MAC service to a MKA peer) using the current session key.

The MKA Protocol manages the encryption keys used by the underlying MACsec protocol. The basic requirements of MKA are defined in 802.1x-REV. The MKA Protocol extends 802.1x to allow peer discovery with confirmation of mutual authentication and sharing of MACsec secret keys to protect data exchanged by the peers.
The EAP framework implements MKA as a newly defined EAP-over-LAN (EAPOL) packet. EAP authentication produces a master session key (MSK) shared by both partners in the data exchange. Entering the EAP session ID generates a secure connectivity association key name (CKN). The switch acts as the authenticator for both switch-to-switch and switch-to-host; and acts as the key server for switch-to-host. It generates a random secure association key (SAK), which is sent to the client partner. The client is never a key server and can only interact with a single MKA entity, the key server. After key derivation and generation, the switch sends periodic transports to the partner at a default interval of 2 seconds.

The packet body in an EAPOL Protocol Data Unit (PDU) is referred to as a MACsec Key Agreement PDU (MKPDU). MKA sessions and participants are deleted when the MKA lifetime (6 seconds) passes with no MKPDU received from a participant. For example, if a MKA peer disconnects, the participant on the switch continues to operate MKA until 6 seconds have elapsed after the last MKPDU is received from the MKA peer.

Note

Integrity check value (ICV) indicator in MKPDU is optional. ICV is not optional when the traffic is encrypted.

MKA Policies

You apply a defined MKA policy to an interface to enable MKA on the interface. Removing the MKA policy disables MKA on that interface. You can configure these options:

- Policy name, not to exceed 16 ASCII characters.
- Confidentiality (encryption) offset of 0, 30, or 50 bytes for each physical interface

Definition of Policy-Map Actions

This section describes the policy-map actions and its definition:

- Activate: Applies a service template to the session.
- Authenticate: Starts authentication of the session.
- Authorize: Explicitly authorizes a session.
- Set-domain: Explicitly sets the domain of a client.
- Terminate: Terminates the method that is running, and deletes all the method details associated with the session.
- Deactivate: Removes the service-template applied to the session. If not applied, no action is taken.
- Set-timer: Starts a timer and gets associated with the session. When the timer expires, any action that needs to be started can be processed.
- Authentication-restart: Restarts authentication.
- Clear-session: Deletes a session.
- Pause: Pauses authentication.

Rest of the actions as self-explanatory and are associated with authentication.
Virtual Ports

Use virtual ports for multiple secured connectivity associations on a single physical port. Each connectivity association (pair) represents a virtual port. In switch-to-switch, you can have only one virtual port per physical port. In switch-to-host, you can have a maximum of two virtual ports per physical port, of which one virtual port can be part of a data VLAN; the other must externally tag its packets for the voice VLAN. You cannot simultaneously host secured and unsecured sessions in the same VLAN on the same port. Because of this limitation, 802.1x multiple authentication mode is not supported.

The exception to this limitation is in multiple-host mode when the first MACsec supplicant is successfully authenticated and connected to a hub that is connected to the switch. A non-MACsec host connected to the hub can send traffic without authentication because it is in multiple-host mode. We do not recommend using multi-host mode because after the first successful client, authentication is not required for other clients.

Virtual ports represent an arbitrary identifier for a connectivity association and have no meaning outside the MKA Protocol. A virtual port corresponds to a separate logical port ID. Valid port IDs for a virtual port are 0x0002 to 0xFFFF. Each virtual port receives a unique secure channel identifier (SCI) based on the MAC address of the physical interface concatenated with a 16-bit port ID.

MKA Statistics

Some MKA counters are aggregated globally, while others are updated both globally and per session. You can also obtain information about the status of MKA sessions. See Example: Displaying MKA Information, on page 230 for further information.

Key Lifetime and Hitless Key Rollover

A MACsec key chain can have multiple pre-shared keys (PSK) each configured with a key id and an optional lifetime. A key lifetime specifies at which time the key expires. In the absence of a lifetime configuration, the default lifetime is unlimited. When a lifetime is configured, MKA rolls over to the next configured pre-shared key in the key chain after the lifetime is expired. Time zone of the key can be local or UTC. Default time zone is UTC.

You can Key rolls over to the next key within the same key chain by configuring a second key in the key chain and configuring a lifetime for the first key. When the lifetime of the first key expires, it automatically rolls over to the next key in the list. If the same key is configured on both sides of the link at the same time, then the key rollover is hitless, that is, key rolls over without traffic interruption.

---

Note

The lifetime of the keys need to be overlapped in order to achieve hitless key rollover.

MACsec, MKA and 802.1x Host Modes

You can use MACsec and the MKA Protocol with 802.1x single-host mode, multi-host mode, or Multi Domain Authentication (MDA) mode. Multiple authentication mode is not supported.

Single-Host Mode

The figure shows how a single EAP authenticated session is secured by MACsec by using MKA
Multiple Host Mode

In standard (not 802.1x REV) 802.1x multiple-host mode, a port is open or closed based on a single authentication. If one user, the primary secured client services client host, is authenticated, the same level of network access is provided to any host connected to the same port. If a secondary host is a MACsec supplicant, it cannot be authenticated and traffic would not flow. A secondary host that is a non-MACsec host can send traffic to the network without authentication because it is in multiple-host mode. The figure shows MACsec in Standard Multiple-Host Unsecure Mode.

Figure 13: MACsec in Multiple-Host Mode - Unsecured

Note
Multi-host mode is not recommended because after the first successful client, authentication is not required for other clients, which is not secure.

In standard (not 802.1x REV) 802.1x multiple-domain mode, a port is open or closed based on a single authentication. If the primary user, a PC on data domain, is authenticated, the same level of network access is provided to any domain connected to the same port. If a secondary user is a MACsec supplicant, it cannot be authenticated and traffic would not flow. A secondary user, an IP phone on voice domain, that is a non-MACsec host, can send traffic to the network without authentication because it is in multiple-domain mode.

Multiple-Domain Mode

In standard (not 802.1x REV) 802.1x multiple-domain mode, a port is open or closed based on a single authentication. If the primary user, a PC on data domain, is authenticated, the same level of network access is provided to any domain connected to the same port. If a secondary user is a MACsec supplicant, it cannot be authenticated and traffic would not flow. A secondary user, an IP phone on voice domain, that is a non-MACsec host, can send traffic to the network without authentication because it is in multiple-domain mode.
Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption

Using certificate-based MACsec encryption, you can configure MACsec MKA between device switch-to-switch ports. Certificate-based MACsec encryption allows mutual authentication and obtains an MSK (master session key) from which the connectivity association key (CAK) is derived for MKA operations. Device certificates are carried, using certificate-based MACsec encryption, for authentication to the AAA server.

MACsec Connections Across Intermediate Switches

Prior to Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1, MACsec connection between end devices which have WAN MACsec configured with the intermediate switches as the Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches was not supported. The encrypted packets were dropped if WAN MACsec was configured on the end devices with MACsec not configured on the intermediate switches. With the ClearTag feature implemented on the ASIC, the switch forwards the encrypted packet without parsing the MACsec header. Below topology displays how the encrypted packets are forwarded through the intermediate switches with L2 switching.

Figure 14: Topology for ClearTag MACsec: MACsec not configured on the intermediate switches

Limitations for MACsec Connections Across Intermediate Switches

- Hop-by-hop MACsec encryption with Catalyst 9000 Series switches as intermediate switches where WAN MACsec is configured on the routers is not supported.
- WAN MACsec configured on the routers with intermediate switches as the Catalyst 9000 Series switches is not supported on Layer 3 VPNs.
- WAN MACsec configured on the routers with intermediate switches as the Catalyst 9000 Series switches show Cisco Discovery Protocol neighbors only in should-secure mode.

MACsec Extended Packet Numbering (XPN)

Every MACsec frame contains a 32-bit packet number (PN), and it is unique for a given Security Association Key (SAK). Upon PN exhaustion (after reaching 75% of $2^{31} - 1$), SAK rekey takes place to refresh the data plane keys. For high capacity links such as 40 Gb/s, PN exhausts within a few seconds, and frequent SAK rekey to the control plane is required. When XPN is used, the PN of the MACsec frame is a 64-bit value, after reaching 75% of $2^{63} - 1$, it will require several years to exhaust the PN; this ensures that frequent SAK
rekey does not happen on high speed links. The XPN feature in MKA/MACsec eliminates the need for frequent SAK rekey that may occur in high capacity links. XPN is a mandatory requirement for FIPS/CC compliance on high speed links such as 40 Gb/s, 100 Gb/s, and so on.

Note

MACsec XPN is supported only on the switch-to-switch ports.

The following rekey is possible in XPN:

- **Volume-based Rekey**—To ensure that frequent SAK rekey does not happen, you can configure XPN using the GCM-AES-XPN-128 or GCM-AES-XPN-256 cipher suites under the defined MKA policy; these cipher suites allow more than $2^{32}$ frames to be protected with a single SAK. XPN supports a 64-bit value for the PN. The MACsec frame contains only the lowest 32 bits and the most significant 32 bits would be maintained by the peer itself, both the sending and the receiving peers. The most significant 32 bits of the PN is incremented at the receiving end when the MSB (most significant bits) of LAPN (lowest acceptable packet number) for the respective peer is set, and the MSB of the PN value received in the MACsec frame is 0. Thus, both the sending and the receiving peer maintain the same PN value without changing the MACsec frame structure.

- **Time-based Rekey**—To set the SAK rekey manually, timer-based rekey is supported where you have the provision to start re-keying SAK at a given interval. Use the `sak rekey interval time-interval` command in MKA policy configuration mode to configure the SAK rekey interval for a defined MKA policy applied to the interface.

**MKA/MACsec for Port Channel**

MKA/MACsec can be configured on the port members of a port channel. MKA/MACsec is agnostic to the port channel since the MKA session is established between the port members of a port channel.

Note

Etherchannel links that are formed as part of the port channel can either be congruent or disparate i.e. the links can either be MACsec-secured or non-MACsec-secured. MKA session between the port members is established even if a port member on one side of the port channel is not configured with MACsec.

It is recommended that you enable MKA/MACsec on all the member ports for better security of the port channel.

**MACsec Cipher Announcement**

Cipher Announcement allows the supplicant and the authenticator to announce their respective MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities to each other. Both the supplicant and the authenticator calculate the largest common supported MACsec Cipher Suite and use the same as the keying material for the MKA session.

Note

Only the MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities which are configured in the MKA policy are announced from the authenticator to the supplicant.

There are two types of EAPoL Announcements:
• Unsecured Announcements (EAPoL PDUs): Unsecured announcements are EAPoL announcements carrying MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities in an unsecured manner. These announcements are used to decide the width of the key used for MKA session prior to authentication.

• Secure Announcements (MKPDUs): Secure announcements revalidate the MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities which were shared previously through unsecure announcements.

Once the session is authenticated, peer capabilities which were received through EAPoL announcements are revalidated with the secure announcements. If there is a mismatch in the capabilities, the MKA session tears down.

Limitations for MACsec Cipher Announcement

• MACsec Cipher Announcement is supported only on the switch-to-host links.

• The MKA session between the supplicant and the authenticator does not tear down even if the MACsec Cipher Suite capabilities configured on both do not result in a common cipher suite.

How to Configure MACsec Encryption

Configuring MKA and MACsec

By default, MACsec is disabled. No MKA policies are configured.

Configuring an MKA Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>mka policy policy-name</td>
<td>Identifies an MKA policy, and enters MKA policy configuration mode. The maximum policy name length is 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring an MKA Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> key-server priority</td>
<td>Configures MKA key server options and set priority (between 0-255).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** When value of key server priority is set to 255, the peer can not become the key server. The key server priority value is valid only for MKA PSK; and not for MKA EAPTLS.

| **Step 5** include-icv-indicator | Enables the ICV indicator in MKPDU. Use the no form of this command to disable the ICV indicator. |
| **Example:** Device(config-mka-policy)# include-icv-indicator |

| **Step 6** macsec-cipher-suite {gcm-aes-128 | gcm-aes-256} | Configures a cipher suite for deriving SAK with 128-bit or 256-bit encryption. |
| **Example:** Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128 |

| **Step 7** confidentiality-offset offset-value | Set the confidentiality (encryption) offset for each physical interface. |
| **Example:** Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0 |

**Note** Offset Value can be 0, 30 or 50. If you are using Anyconnect on the client, it is recommended to use Offset 0.

| **Step 8** ssci-based-on-sci | (Optional) Computes Short Secure Channel Identifier (SSCI) value based on Secure Channel Identifier (SCI) value. The higher the SCI value, the lower is the SSCI value. |
| **Example:** Device(config-mka-policy)# ssci-based-on-sci |

| **Step 9** end | Exit enters MKA policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** Device(config-mka-policy)# end |
### Configuring Switch-to-host MACsec Encryption

Follow these steps to configure MACsec on an interface with one MACsec session for voice and one for data:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable<br>**Example:**<br>Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  • Enter the password if prompted. |
<p>| <strong>Step 2</strong> | configure terminal&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal | Enters the global configuration mode. |
| <strong>Step 3</strong> | interface type number&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1 | Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface. |
| <strong>Step 4</strong> | switchport access vlan vlan-id&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 1 | Configures the access VLAN for the port. |
| <strong>Step 5</strong> | switchport mode access&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# switchport mode access | Configures the interface as an access port. |
| <strong>Step 6</strong> | macsec&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# macsec | Enables 802.1ae MACsec on the interface. The macsec command enables MKA MACsec on switch-to-host links only. |
| <strong>Step 7</strong> | authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan vlan-id&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-if)# authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan 1 | (Optional) Specifies that the switch processes authentication link-security failures resulting from unrecognized user credentials by authorizing a restricted VLAN on the port after a failed authentication attempt. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>authentication host-mode multi-domain</td>
<td>Configures authentication manager mode on the port to allow both a host and a voice device to be authenticated on the 802.1x-authorized port. If not configured, the default host mode is single.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>authentication linksec policy must-secure</td>
<td>Sets the LinkSec security policy to secure the session with MACsec if the peer is available. If not set, the default is <em>should secure</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication linksec policy must-secure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>authentication port-control auto</td>
<td>Enables 802.1x authentication on the port. The port changes to the authorized or unauthorized state based on the authentication exchange between the switch and the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>authentication periodic</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables or disables re-authentication for this port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication periodic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>authentication timer reauthenticate</td>
<td>(Optional) Enters a value between 1 and 65535 (in seconds). Obtains re-authentication timeout value from the server. Default re-authentication time is 3600 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>authentication violation protect</td>
<td>Configures the port to drop unexpected incoming MAC addresses when a new device connects to a port or when a device connects to a port after the maximum number of devices are connected to that port. If not configured, the default is to shut down the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication violation protect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>mka policy <em>policy-name</em></td>
<td>Applies an existing MKA protocol policy to the interface, and enable MKA on the interface. If no MKA policy was configured (by entering <code>mka policy</code> global configuration command).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# mka policy mka_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td>Configures the port as an 802.1x port access entity (PAE) authenticator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>spanning-tree portfast</td>
<td>Enables spanning tree Port Fast on the interface in all its associated VLANs. When the Port Fast feature is enabled, the interface changes directly from a blocking state to a forwarding state without making the intermediate spanning-tree state changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring MKA MACsec using PSK

#### Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device> enable | |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device# configure terminal | |
| **Step 3** | key chain *key-chain-name* macsec | Configures a key chain and enters the key chain configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# key chain keychain1 macsec | |
| **Step 4** | key *hex-string* | Configures a unique identifier for each key in the keychain and enters the keychain's key configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000 | |
### Configuring MACsec MKA on an Interface using PSK

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:** Device> enable |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:** Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** | interface type number | Enters interface configuration mode.  
**Example:** Device(config-if)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0 |
### Command or Action

| Step 4 | `macsec network-link` **Purpose** Enables MACsec on the interface. |
| Example: | Device(config-if)# `macsec network-link` |
| Step 5 | `mka policy policy-name` **Purpose** Configures an MKA policy. |
| Example: | Device(config-if)# `mka policy mka_policy` |
| Step 6 | `mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain name` **Purpose** Configures an MKA pre-shared-key key-chain name. **Note** The MKA pre-shared key can be configured on either physical interface or sub-interfaces and not on both. |
| Example: | Device(config-if)# `mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name` |
| Step 7 | `macsec replay-protection window-size frame number` **Purpose** Sets the MACsec window size for replay protection. |
| Example: | Device(config-if)# `macsec replay-protection window-size 10` |
| Step 8 | `end` **Purpose** Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| Example: | Device(config-if)# `end` |

### What to do next

It is not recommended to change the MKA policy on an interface with MKA PSK configured when the session is running. However, if a change is required, you must reconfigure the policy as follows:

1. Disable the existing session by removing `macsec network-link` configuration on each of the participating node using the `no macsec network-link` command
2. Configure the MKA policy on the interface on each of the participating node using the `mka policy policy-name` command.
3. Enable the new session on each of the participating node by using the `macsec network-link` command.

### Configuring Certificate-Based MACsec Encryption

To configure MACsec with MKA on point-to-point links, perform these tasks:

- Configure Certificate Enrollment
  - Generate Key Pairs
  - Configure SCEP Enrollment
Generating Key Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>crypto key generate rsa label label-name general-keys modulus size</td>
<td>Generates a RSA key pair for signing and encryption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>You can also assign a label to each key pair using the label keyword. The label is referenced by the trustpoint that uses the key pair. If you do not assign a label, the key pair is automatically labeled &lt;Default-RSA-Key&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa label general-keys modulus 2048</td>
<td>If you do not use additional keywords this command generates one general purpose RSA key pair. If the modulus is not specified, the default key modulus of 1024 is used. You can specify other modulus sizes with the modulus keyword.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>show authentication session interface interface-id</td>
<td>Verifies the authorized session security status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show authentication session interface gigabitethernet 0/1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring Enrollment using SCEP

Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) is a Cisco-developed enrollment protocol that uses HTTP to communicate with the certificate authority (CA) or registration authority (RA). SCEP is the most commonly used method for sending and receiving requests and certificates.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable&lt;br&gt;Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. &lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>crypto pki trustpoint server name&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint ka</td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>enrollment url url name pem&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url <a href="http://url:80">http://url:80</a></td>
<td>Specifies the URL of the CA on which your device should send certificate requests. &lt;br&gt;• An IPv6 address can be added in the URL enclosed in brackets. For example: http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80. &lt;br&gt;The pem keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>rsakeypair label&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair exampleCAkeys</td>
<td>Specifies which key pair to associate with the certificate. &lt;br&gt;Note: The rsakeypair name must match the trust-point name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>serial-number none&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number none</td>
<td>The none keyword specifies that a serial number will not be included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>ip-address none&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address none</td>
<td>The none keyword specifies that no IP address should be included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>revocation-check crl&lt;br&gt;Example:</td>
<td>Specifies CRL as the method to ensure that the certificate of a peer has not been revoked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl</td>
<td>Enables auto-enrollment, allowing the client to automatically request a rollover certificate from the CA.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto-enroll <em>percent regenerate</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# auto-enroll 90 regenerate</td>
<td>If auto-enrollment is not enabled, the client must be manually re-enrolled in your PKI upon certificate expiration.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By default, only the Domain Name System (DNS) name of the device is included in the certificate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the percent argument to specify that a new certificate will be requested after the percentage of the lifetime of the current certificate is reached.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the regenerate keyword to generate a new key for the certificate even if a named key already exists.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the key pair being rolled over is exportable, the new key pair will also be exportable. The following comment will appear in the trustpoint configuration to indicate whether the key pair is exportable: “! RSA key pair associated with trustpoint is exportable.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is recommended that a new key pair be generated for security reasons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto pki authenticate <em>name</em></td>
<td>Retrieves the CA certificate and authenticates it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate myca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show crypto pki certificate <em>trustpoint</em> name*</td>
<td>Displays information about the certificate for the trust point.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show crypto pki certificate ka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring Enrollment Manually

If your CA does not support SCEP or if a network connection between the router and CA is not possible. Perform the following task to set up manual certificate enrollment:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> `enable` |
| Step 2 | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device# `configure terminal` |
| Step 3 | `crypto pki trustpoint server name` | Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device# `crypto pki trustpoint ka` |
| Step 4 | `enrollment url url-name` | Specifies the URL of the CA on which your device should send certificate requests.  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# `enrollment url http://url:80`  
An IPv6 address can be added in the URL enclosed in brackets. For example: http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80.  
The pem keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.  
| Step 5 | `rsakeypair label` | Specifies which key pair to associate with the certificate.  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# `rsakeypair exampleCAkeys` |
| Step 6 | `serial-number none` | Specifies that serial numbers will not be included in the certificate request.  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# `serial-number none` |
| Step 7 | `ip-address none` | The `none` keyword specifies that no IP address should be included in the certificate request.  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# `ip-address none` |
| Step 8 | `revocation-check crl` | Specifies CRL as the method to ensure that the certificate of a peer has not been revoked.  
Example:  
Device(ca-trustpoint)# `revocation-check crl` |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto pki authenticate name</td>
<td>Retreives the CA certificate and authenticates it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate myca</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto pki enroll name</td>
<td>Generates certificate request and displays the request for copying and pasting into the certificate server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki enroll myca</td>
<td>Enter enrollment information when you are prompted. For example, specify whether to include the device FQDN and IP address in the certificate request. You are also given the choice about displaying the certificate request to the console terminal. The base-64 encoded certificate with or without PEM headers as requested is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto pki import name certificate</td>
<td>Imports a certificate via TFTP at the console terminal, which retrieves the granted certificate. The device attempts to retrieve the granted certificate via TFTP using the same filename used to send the request, except the extension is changed from “.req” to “.crt”. For usage key certificates, the extensions “-sign.crt” and “-encr.crt” are used. The device parses the received files, verifies the certificates, and inserts the certificates into the internal certificate database on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki import myca certificate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Applying the 802.1x MACsec MKA Configuration on Interfaces

To apply MACsec MKA using certificate-based MACsec encryption to interfaces, perform the following task:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | **enable**        | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  | **Example:** Device> enable | • Enter your password if prompted.  |
| 2    | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode.  |
  | **Example:** Device# configure terminal | |
| 3    | **interface** type number | Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface.  |
  | **Example:** Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/2/1 | |
| 4    | **macsec network-link** | Enables MACsec on the interface.  |
  | **Example:** Device(config-if)# macsec network-link | |
| 5    | **authentication periodic** | Enables reauthentication for this port.  |
  | **Example:** Device(config-if)# authentication periodic | |
| 6    | **authentication timer reauthenticate interval** | Sets the reauthentication interval.  |
  | **Example:** Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate interval | |
| 7    | **access-session host-mode multi-domain** | Allows hosts to gain access to the interface.  |
  | **Example:** Device(config-if)# access-session host-mode multi-domain | |
### Configuring MACsec XPN

#### Configuring an MKA Policy for XPN

Follow these steps to configure XPN in an MKA policy:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  enable
  Example:
  Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.
  • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
  configure terminal
  Example:
  Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>mka policy policy-name</td>
<td>Identifies an MKA policy, and enters MKA policy configuration mode. The maximum policy name length is 16 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)#macsec-cipher-suite {gcm-aes-128</td>
<td>Configures cipher suite for deriving SAK with 128-bit and 256-bit encryption for XPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gcm-aes-256</td>
<td>gcm-aes-xpn-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-xpn-256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>sak-rekey interval time-interval</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the SAK rekey interval (in seconds). The range is from 30 to 65535. By default, the SAK rekey interval occurs automatically depending on the interface speed. Use the no form of this command to stop the SAK rekey timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# sak-rekey interval 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits MKA policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-mka-policy)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Applying the XPN MKA Policy to an Interface

To apply the XPN MKA policy to an interface, perform the following task:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Identifies the MACsec interface, and enters interface configuration mode. The interface must be a physical interface.

Applies the XPN MKA protocol policy to the interface.

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Configuring MKA/MACsec for Port Channel using PSK

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure MKA policies on an interface using a Pre-Shared Key (PSK).

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macsec network-link</td>
<td>Enables MACsec on the interface. Supports layer 2 and layer 3 port channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mka policy policy-name</td>
<td>Configures an MKA policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device(config-if)# mka policy mka_policy</strong></td>
<td>Configures an MKA pre-shared key key-chain name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name**</td>
<td>The MKA pre-shared key can be configured either on the physical interface or the subinterface but not on both.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> macsec replay-protection window-size frame number</td>
<td>Sets the MACsec window size for replay protection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# macsec replay-protection window-size 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> channel-group channel-group-number mode {auto</td>
<td>desirable}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# channel-group 3 mode auto active on</td>
<td>You cannot configure ports in a channel group without configuring MACsec on the interface. You must configure the commands in Step 3, 4, 5 and 6 before this step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The channel-number range is from 1 to 4096. The port channel associated with this channel group is automatically created if the port channel does not already exist. For mode, select one of the following keywords:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>auto</strong> — Enables PAgP only if a PAgP device is detected. This places the port into a passive negotiating state, in which the port responds to PAgP packets it receives but does not start PAgP packet negotiation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>desirable</strong> — Unconditionally enables PAgP. This places the port into an active negotiating state, in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending PAgP packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <strong>auto</strong> keyword is not supported when EtherChannel members are from different switches in the switch stack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <strong>desirable</strong> keyword is not supported when EtherChannel members are from different switches in the switch stack.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
**on**— Forcethetheporttochannelwithout
PAgPorLACP.Inthe**on**mode,anether
Channelexistsonlywhenaport
groupinthe**on**modisconnectedto
anotherportgroupinthe**on**mode.

**active**— EnablesLACPonlyifanLACP
devicedetected. Itplacestheportinto
anactivenegotiatingstate, inwhichthe
portstartsnegotiationswithotherportsby
sendingLACPpackets.

**passive**— EnablesLACPontheportand
places it into apassivenegotiating state in
which the port responds to LACP packets
that it receives, but does not start LACP
packet negotiation.

### Configuring Port Channel Logical Interfaces for Layer 2 EtherChannels

To create a port channel interface for a Layer 2 EtherChannel, perform this task:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>enable</em></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 2** | Creates the port channel interface, and enters
| *configure terminal* | interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | Switches an interface that is in Layer 3 mode
| *interface port-channel channel-group-number* | into Layer 2 mode for Layer 2 configuration. |
| **Step 4** | Switches an interface that is in Layer 3 mode
| *switchport* | into Layer 2 mode for Layer 2 configuration. |

---

MACsec Encryption

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
### Configuring Port Channel Logical Interfaces for Layer 3 EtherChannels

To create a port channel interface for a Layer 3 EtherChannel, perform this task:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> enable  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device# configure terminal |
| Step 3 | interface interface-id | Enters interface configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2 |
| Step 4 | no switchport | Switches an interface that is in Layer 2 mode into Layer 3 mode for Layer 3 configuration.  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# no switchport |
| Step 5 | ip address ip-address subnet-mask | Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the EtherChannel.  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.2.2.3 255.255.255.254 |
| Step 6 | end | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# end |
# Configuring MACsec Cipher Announcement

## Configuring an MKA Policy for Secure Announcement

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to create an MKA Protocol policy to enable secure announcement in MKPDUs. By default, secure announcements are disabled.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | **enable** | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**  
Device> enable  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**  
Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** | **mka policy policy-name** | Identifies an MKA policy and enters MKA policy configuration mode. The maximum policy name length is 16 characters.  
**Note**  
The default MACsec cipher suite in the MKA policy is GCM-AES-128. If the device supports both "GCM-AES-128" and "GCM-AES-256" ciphers, it is highly recommended to define and use a user defined MKA policy to include both 128 and 256 bits ciphers or only 256 bits cipher, as may be required.  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy |
| **Step 4** | **key-server priority** | Configures MKA key server options and sets priority between 0-255.  
**Note**  
When value of key server priority is set to 255, the peer cannot become the key server. The key server priority value is valid only for MKA PSK. This does not apply to MKA EAP-TLS.  
**Example:**  
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 200 |
| **Step 5** | **send-secure-announcements** | Enables sending of secure announcements. Use the no form of the command to disable sending of secure announcements. By default, secure announcements are disabled.  
**Example:**  
Device(config-mka-policy)# send-secure-announcements |
### Configuring Secure Announcement Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable secure announcement globally across all the MKA Policies.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements</td>
<td>Enables sending of secure announcements in MKPDUs across MKA policies. By default, secure announcements are disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring EAPoL Announcements on an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure EAPoL Announcement on an interface.
### Configuring Examples for MACsec Encryption

#### Example: Configuring MKA and MACsec

This example shows how to create an MKA policy:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 200
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 30
Device(config-mka-policy)# ssci-based-on-sci
Device(config-mka-policy)# end
```

This example shows how to configure MACsec on an interface:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# macsec
Device(config-if)# authentication event linksec fail action authorize vlan 1
Device(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-domain
```
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA using PSK

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA using PSK.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain keychain1 macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-keychain-key)# cryptographic-algorithm gcm-aes-128
Device(config-keychain-key)# key-string 12345678901234567890123456789012
Device(config-keychain-key)# lifetime local 12:12:00 July 28 2016 12:19:00 July 28 2016
Device(config-keychain-key)# end

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA on an interface using PSK.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0
Device(config-if)# mka policy mka_policy
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain key-chain-name
Device(config-if)# macsec replay-protection window-size 10
Device(config-if)# end

Example: Configuring MACsec MKA using Certificate-based MACsec Encryption

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA using certificate-based MACsec encryption:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# authentication periodic
Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate interval
Device(config-if)# access-session host-mode multi-domain
Device(config-if)# access-session closed
Device(config-if)# access-session port-control auto
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae both
Device(config-if)#dot1x credentials profile
Device(config-if)# dot1x supplicant eap profile profile_eap_tls
Device(config-if)# end

Example: Configuring MACsec XPN

This example shows how to configure MACsec MKA XPN policy.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka policy mka-xpn-policy
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-xpn-256
Device(config-mka-policy)# end

This example shows how to apply MACsec MKA XPN policy to an interface.

Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface Fo 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# mka policy mka-xpn-policy
Device(config-if)# end

The following is a sample output of the show mka sessions details command with 128-bit XPN Cipher Suite configured.

Device# show mka sessions details

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ebe4/0e2b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ebe4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name............ GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID.......... 89572
CAK Name (CKN)............ 0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89572
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............. 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)....... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status............ FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN............... 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time........... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection.......... NO
Replay Protection......... YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C200100000003 (GCM-AES-XPN-128)
MACsec Capability......... 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers........... 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
MI | MN | Rx-SCI (Peer) | KS Priority
---|----|---------------|-----------
38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9 | 89560 | c800.8459.e764/002a | 10

Potential Peers List:
MI | MN | Rx-SCI (Peer) | KS Priority
---|----|---------------|-----------

Dormant Peers List:

The following is sample output of the `show mka sessions details` command with 256-bit XPN Cipher Suite configured.

Device# `show mka sessions details`

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
====================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID..........
CAK Name (CKN)...........
0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)..... 89572
EAP Role................ NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status....... Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............ 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)...... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status......... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN............. 0
Old SAK KI (KN)......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name........... p2
Key Server Priority..... 2
Delay Protection......... NO
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA for Port Channel using PSK

Etherchannel Mode — Static/On

The following is sample configuration on Device 1 and Device 2 with EtherChannel Mode on:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain KC macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-key-chain)# cryptographic-algorithm aes-128-cmac
Device(config-key-chain)# key-string FC8F5B10557C192F03F60198413D7D45
Device(config-key-chain)# exit
Device(config)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode on
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode on
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
```
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# end

Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command:

Flags:  D - down     P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        R - Layer3      S - Layer2
        U - in use      f - failed to allocate aggregator
        M - not in use, minimum links not met
        u - unsuitable for bundling
        w - waiting to be aggregated
        d - default port
        A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Port-channel</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Po2(RU)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Tel/0/1(P) Tel/0/2(P)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Example: Configuring MACsec MKA for Port Channel using PSK

MACsec Encryption

Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.3 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.4 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the show etherchannel summary command:

Flags:  D - down          P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone   s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby   (LACP only)
        R - Layer3       S - Layer2
        U - in use        f - failed to allocate aggregator

M - not in use, minimum links not met
u - unsuitable for bundling
w - waiting to be aggregated
d - default port

A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

Group     Port-channel  Protocol  Ports
-----------+-------------------+----------+--------------------
           | 2   Po2 (RU)     | -        | Tel/0/1(P)  Tel/0/2(P)

Etherchannel Mode — LACP

The following is sample configuration on Device 1 and Device 2 with EtherChannel Mode as LACP.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain KC macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-key-chain)# cryptographic-algorithm aes-128-cmac
Device(config-key-chain)# key-string FC8F5B10557C192F03F60198413D7D45
Device(config-key-chain)# exit
Device(config)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0
MACsec Encryption

Example: Configuring MACsec MKA for Port Channel using PSK

Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command:

Flags:  D - down         P - bundled in port-channel
I - stand-alone  s - suspended
H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
R - Layer3      S - Layer2
U - in use      f - failed to allocate aggregator
M - not in use, minimum links not met
u - unsuitable for bundling
w - waiting to be aggregated
d - default port
A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

------------------------------------------------------------------------

2   Po2(SU)   LACP   Tel/1/1(P)   Tel/1/2(P)
Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.3 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.4 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command:

Flags:  D - down  P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        R - Layer3  S - Layer2
        U - in use  f - failed to allocate aggregator
        M - not in use, minimum links not met
        U - unsuitable for bundling
        W - waiting to be aggregated
        D - default port
        A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators:  1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Port-channel</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Po2 (RU)</td>
<td>LACP</td>
<td>Tel/1/1(P)  Tel/1/2(P)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Etherchannel Mode — PAgP

The following is sample configuration on Device 1 and Device 2 with EtherChannel Mode as PAgP:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# key chain KC macsec
Device(config-key-chain)# key 1000
Device(config-key-chain)# cryptographic-algorithm aes-128-cmac
Device(config-key-chain)# key-string FC8F5B10557C192F03F60198413D7D45
Device(config-key-chain)# exit
Device(config)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server priority 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128
Device(config-mka-policy)# confidentiality-offset 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode desirable
Device(config-if)# macsec network-link
Device(config-if)# mka policy POLICY
Device(config-if)# mka pre-shared-key key-chain KC
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)#

Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following shows a sample output from the `show etherchannel summary` command.

Flags:  D - down  P - bundled in port-channel
 I - stand-alone  s - suspended
 H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
 R - Layer3  S - Layer2
 U - in use  f - failed to allocate aggregator
 M - not in use, minimum links not met
 u - unsuitable for bundling
 w - waiting to be aggregated
 d - default port
 A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1
Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration

Device 1

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.3 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

Device 2

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.25.25.4 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
Device(config-if)# end

The following is sample output from the show etherchannel summary command:

Flags:  D - down  P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        R - Layer3  S - Layer2
        U - in use  f - failed to allocate aggregator
        M - not in use, minimum links not met
        u - unsuitable for bundling
        w - waiting to be aggregated
        d - default port
        A - formed by Auto LAG

Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators: 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Port-channel</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Po2 (RU)</td>
<td>PAgP</td>
<td>Tel1/1/1(P) Tel1/1/2(P)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Displaying Active MKA Sessions

The following shows all the active MKA sessions.

Device# show mka sessions interface Te1/0/1
### Example: Configuring MACsec Cipher Announcement

This example shows how to configure MKA policy for Secure Announcement:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka policy mka_policy
Device(config-mka-policy)# key-server 2
Device(config-mka-policy)# send-secure-announcements
Device(config-mka-policy)# macsec-cipher-suite gcm-aes-128 confidentiality-offset 0
Device(config-mka-policy)# end
```

This example shows how to configure Secure Announcement globally:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mka defaults policy send-secure-announcements
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to configure EAPoL Announcements on an interface:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# eapol announcement
Device(config-if)# end
```

The following is a sample output for `show running-config interface interface-name` command with EAPoL announcement enabled.

```
Device# show running-config interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1

switchport mode access
macsec
access-session host-mode multi-host
access-session closed
access-session port-control auto
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 10
dot1x timeout tx-period 5
dot1x timeout supp-timeout 10
dot1x supplicant eap profile peap
eapol announcement
spanning-tree portfast
service-policy type control subscriber Dot1X
```

The following is a sample output of the `show mka sessions interface interface-name detail` command with secure announcement disabled.
Device# `show mka sessions interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1 detail`

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
====================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID..........
CAK Name (CKN).......... 0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89567
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server................ YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............ 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)....... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status.......... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN............ 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name.......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection.......... NO
Replay Protection......... YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C200100000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers............ 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89555</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential Peers List:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
The following is sample output of the `show mka sessions details` command with secure announcement disabled.

```
Device# show mka sessions details

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID..........
CAK Name (CKN)...........
0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89572
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite........... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............. 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)........ D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status............ FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN.................. 0
Old SAK KI (KN)........... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time........... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name........... p2
Key Server Priority....... 2
Delay Protection.......... NO
Replay Protection......... YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C20001000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES
```

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers............ 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1
Live Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89560</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Dormant Peers List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The following is sample output of the `show mka policy policy-name detail` command with secure announcement disabled.

```
Device# show mka policy p2 detail

MKA Policy Configuration ("p2")
================================
MKA Policy Name........ p2
Key Server Priority.... 2
Confidentiality Offset. 0
Send Secure Announcement..DISABLED
Cipher Suite(s)........... GCM-AES-128

Applied Interfaces...
  GigabitEthernet1/0/1
```

Example: Displaying MKA Information

The following is sample output from the `show mka sessions` command.

```
Device# show mka sessions

Total MKA Sessions....... 1
  Secured Sessions... 1
  Pending Sessions... 0

Interface Local-TxSCI Policy-Name Inherited Key-Server Port-ID Peer-RxSCI MACsec-Peers Status CKN
-----------------------------------------------
Gi1/0/1 204c.9e85.ede4/002b p2 NO Secured 43 c800.8459.e764/002a 1
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka sessions interface interface-name` command.

```
Device# show mka sessions interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1

Summary of All Currently Active MKA Sessions on Interface
```
GigabitEthernet1/0/1...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Local-TxSCI</th>
<th>Policy-Name</th>
<th>Inherited</th>
<th>Port-ID</th>
<th>Peer-RxSCI</th>
<th>MACsec-Peers</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>CKN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td>204c.9e85.e854/002b</td>
<td>p2</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Secured</td>
<td>0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is sample output from the `show mka sessions interface interface-name detail` command.

Device# `show mka sessions interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1 detail`

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.e854/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.e854
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID.........
CAK Name (CKN)...........
0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)...... 89567
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server................. YES
MKA Cipher Suite......... AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status....... Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............ 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)....... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status........... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN................. 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name......... p2
Key Server Priority...... 2
Delay Protection......... NO
Replay Protection........ YES
Replay Window Size....... 0
Confidentiality Offset... 0
Algorithm Agility........ 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite.......... 0080C20001000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers........... 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
MI MN Rx-SCI (Peer) KS Priority
----------------------------------------------------------------------
38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9 89555 c800.8459.e764/002a 10

Potential Peers List:
MI MN Rx-SCI (Peer) KS Priority
----------------------------------------------------------------------

Dormant Peers List:
MI MN Rx-SCI (Peer) KS Priority
----------------------------------------------------------------------

The following is sample output from the show mka sessions details command:

Device# show mka sessions details

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
===================================
Status: SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI............. 204c.9e85.ede4/002b
Interface MAC Address.... 204c.9e85.ede4
MKA Port Identifier...... 43
Interface Name........... GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Audit Session ID........
CAK Name (CKN)...........
0100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Member Identifier (MI)... D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE
Message Number (MN)..... 89572
EAP Role.................. NA
Key Server............... YES
MKA Cipher Suite........ AES-128-CMAC

Latest SAK Status........ Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN............. 0
Latest SAK KI (KN)........ D46CBEC05D5D67594543CEAE00000001 (1)
Old SAK Status........... FIRST-SAK
Old SAK AN............... 0
Old SAK KI (KN).......... FIRST-SAK (0)

SAK Transmit Wait Time... 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time.......... 0s (No Old SAK to retire)

MKA Policy Name......... p2
Key Server Priority..... 2
Delay Protection........ NO
Replay Protection........ YES
Replay Window Size........ 0
Confidentiality Offset..... 0
Algorithm Agility.......... 80C201
Send Secure Announcement.. DISABLED
SAK Cipher Suite......... 0080C20001000001 (GCM-AES-128)
MACsec Capability........ 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired........... YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers......... 1
# of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded.. 1

Live Peers List:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MI</th>
<th>MN</th>
<th>Rx-SCI (Peer)</th>
<th>KS Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38046BA37D7DA77E06D006A9</td>
<td>89560</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Potential Peers List:

Dormant Peers List:

The following is sample output from the show mka policy command:

Device# show mka policy

MKA Policy Summary...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Interfaces</th>
<th>KS</th>
<th>Delay</th>
<th>Replay Window</th>
<th>Conf</th>
<th>Cipher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>DEFAULT POLICY</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is sample output from the show mka policy policy-name command:

Device# show mka policy p2

MKA Policy Summary...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Interfaces</th>
<th>KS</th>
<th>Delay</th>
<th>Replay Window</th>
<th>Conf</th>
<th>Cipher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Displaying MKA Information
Example: Displaying MKA Information

The following is sample output from the `show mka policy policy-name detail` command:

```
Device# show mka policy p2 detail

MKA Policy Configuration ("p2")
-----------------------------
MKA Policy Name........ p2
Key Server Priority.... 2
Confidentiality Offset. 0
Send Secure Announcement..DISABLED
Cipher Suite(s)........ GCM-AES-128

Applied Interfaces...
  GigabitEthernet1/0/1
```

The following is sample output from the `show mka statistics interface interface-name` command:

```
Device# show mka statistics interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1

MKA Statistics for Session
---------------------------
Reauthentication Attempts.. 0

CA Statistics
  Pairwise CAKs Derived... 0
  Pairwise CAK Rekeys..... 0
  Group CAKs Generated.... 0
  Group CAKs Received..... 0

SA Statistics
  SAKs Generated.......... 1
  SAKs Rekeyed............ 0
  SAKs Received........... 0
  SAK Responses Received.. 1

MKPDU Statistics
  MKPDUs Validated & Rx... 89585
    "Distributed SAK".. 0
    "Distributed CAK".. 0
  MKPDUs Transmitted...... 89596
    "Distributed SAK".. 1
    "Distributed CAK".. 0

The following is sample output from the `show mka summary` command:

```
Device# show mka summary

Total MKA Sessions....... 1
  Secured Sessions... 1
```
Pending Sessions... 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Local-TxSCI</th>
<th>Policy-Name</th>
<th>Inherited</th>
<th>Key-Server</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td>204c.9e85.ede4/002b</td>
<td>p2</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>c800.8459.e764/002a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Secured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MKA Global Statistics

MKA Session Totals
- Secured: 1
- Reauthentication Attempts: 0
- Deleted (Secured): 0
- Keepalive Timeouts: 0

CA Statistics
- Pairwise CAKs Derived: 0
- Pairwise CAK Rekeys: 0
- Group CAKs Generated: 0
- Group CAKs Received: 0

SA Statistics
- SAKs Generated: 1
- SAKs Rekeyed: 0
- SAKs Received: 0
- SAK Responses Received: 1

MKPDU Statistics
- MKPDUs Validated & Rx: 89589
  - "Distributed SAK": 0
  - "Distributed CAK": 0
- MKPDUs Transmitted: 89600
  - "Distributed SAK": 1
  - "Distributed CAK": 0

MKA Error Counter Totals

Session Failures
- Bring-up Failures: 0
- Reauthentication Failures: 0
- Duplicate Auth-Mgr Handle: 0

SAK Failures
- SAK Generation: 0
Additional References for MACsec Encryption

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1AE-2006</td>
<td>Media Access Control (MAC) Security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1X-2010</td>
<td>Port-Based Network Access Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1AEbw-2013</td>
<td>Media Access Control (MAC) Security (Amendment to IEEE 802.1AE-2006)—Extended Packet Numbering (XPN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1Xbx-2014</td>
<td>Port-Based Network Access Control (Amendment to IEEE 802.1X-2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 4493</td>
<td>The AES-CMAC Algorithm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for MACsec Encryption

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>MACsec Encryption</td>
<td>MACsec is the IEEE 802.1AE standard for authenticating and encrypting packets between two MACsec-capable devices. Catalyst switches support 802.1AE encryption with MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) encryption between the switch and host device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MKA with High Availability</td>
<td>MKA with high availability is supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
CHAPTER 12

Configuring Secure Shell

The Secure Shell (SSH) feature is an application and a protocol that provides a secure replacement to the Berkeley r-tools. The protocol secures sessions using standard cryptographic mechanisms, and the application can be used similarly to the Berkeley rexec and rsh tools. Two versions of SSH are available: SSH Version 1 and SSH Version 2. Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only. For information about SSH Version 2, see the “Secure Shell Version 2 Support” feature module.

Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell

- For SSH to work, the switch needs an Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) public/private key pair. This is the same with Secure Copy Protocol (SCP), which relies on SSH for its secure transport.

- Download the required image on the device. The Secure Shell (SSH) server requires an IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image; the SSH client requires an IPsec (DES or 3DES) encryption software image.

- Configure a hostname and host domain for your device by using the hostname and ip domain name commands in global configuration mode.

- Generate a Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) key pair for your device. This key pair automatically enables SSH and remote authentication when the crypto key generate rsa command is entered in global configuration mode.

To delete the RSA key pair, use the crypto key zeroize rsa global configuration command. Once you delete the RSA key pair, you automatically disable the SSH server.
• Configure user authentication for local or remote access. You can configure authentication with or without authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA).

• The Secure Shell (SSH) server requires an IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image; the SSH client requires an IPsec (DES or 3DES) encryption software image.

Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

• The Secure Shell (SSH) server and SSH client are supported on Data Encryption Standard (DES) (56-bit) and 3DES (168-bit) data encryption software images only. In DES software images, DES is the only encryption algorithm available. In 3DES software images, both DES and 3DES encryption algorithms are available.

• Execution shell is the only application supported.

• The login banner is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1. It is supported in Secure Shell Version 2.

• The SFTP server is not supported.

Information About Configuring Secure Shell

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

SSH Server

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

The Secure Shell (SSH) Server feature enables an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco device. This connection provides functionality that is similar to that of an inbound Telnet connection. Before SSH, security was limited to Telnet security. SSH allows a strong encryption to be used with the Cisco software authentication. The SSH server in Cisco software works with publicly and commercially available SSH clients.

SSH Integrated Client

Note

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

The Secure Shell (SSH) Integrated Client feature is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco device or to any other device running the SSH server. This connection provides
functionality similar to that of an outbound Telnet connection except that the connection is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for secure communication over an unsecured network. The SSH client in Cisco software works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers. The SSH client supports the ciphers of Data Encryption Standard (DES), 3DES, and password authentication. User authentication is performed like that in the Telnet session to the device. The user authentication mechanisms supported for SSH are RADIUS, TACACS+, and the use of locally stored usernames and passwords.

The SSH client functionality is available only when the SSH server is enabled.

**RSA Authentication Support**

Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) authentication available in Secure Shell (SSH) clients is not supported on the SSH server for Cisco software by default. For more information about RSA authentication support, see the “Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using RSA Pairs” section of the “Secure Shell Version 2 Support” module.

**SSH Servers, Integrated Clients, and Supported Versions**

The Secure Shell (SSH) Integrated Client feature is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco device or to any other device running the SSH server. This connection provides functionality similar to that of an outbound Telnet connection except that the connection is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for secure communication over an unsecured network. The SSH server and SSH integrated client are applications that run on the switch. The SSH server works with the SSH client supported in this release and with non-Cisco SSH clients. The SSH client works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers. The SSH client supports the ciphers of Data Encryption Standard (DES), 3DES, and password authentication.

The SSH client functionality is available only when the SSH server is enabled.

User authentication is performed like that in the Telnet session to the device. SSH also supports the following user authentication methods:

- TACACS+
- RADIUS
- Local authentication and authorization

**SSH Configuration Guidelines**

Follow these guidelines when configuring the switch as an SSH server or SSH client:

- An RSA key pair generated by a SSHv1 server can be used by an SSHv2 server, and the reverse.
- If the SSH server is running on an active switch and the active switch fails, the new active switch uses the RSA key pair generated by the previous active switch.
How to Configure Secure Shell

Setting Up the Device to Run SSH

Follow the procedure given below to set up your device to run SSH:

**Before you begin**

Configure user authentication for local or remote access. This step is required.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
| enable
| **Example:**
| Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.
| | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
| configure terminal
| **Example:**
| Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**
| hostname *hostname*
| **Example:**
| Device(config)# hostname your_hostname | Configures a hostname and IP domain name for your device. |
| | **Note** Follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server. |
| **Step 4**
| ip domain name *domain_name*
| **Example:**
<p>| Device(config)# ip domain name your_domain | Configures a host domain for your device. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device and generates an RSA key pair. Generating an RSA key pair for the device automatically enables SSH. We recommend that a minimum modulus size of 1024 bits. When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use. <strong>Note</strong> Follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>show ip ssh</td>
<td>(Optional) Verifies that the SSH server is enabled and displays the version and configuration data for the SSH connection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Configuring an SSH Server

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable           | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  - Enter your password if prompted. |
| 2    | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| 3    | ip ssh {time-out seconds | Configures Secure Shell (SSH) control parameters.  
  authentication-retries integer} |
### Invoking an SSH Client

#### Purpose

- **Command or Action**: `Device(config)# ip ssh time-out 30`

- **Purpose**

**Note** This command can also be used to establish the number of password prompts provided to the user. The number is the lower of the following two values:

  - Value proposed by the client using the `ssh -o numberofpasswordprompt` command.
  - Value configured on the device using the `ip ssh authentication-retries integer` command, plus one.

#### Step 4

- **Command or Action**: `ip ssh rekey {time time | volume volume}`

- **Example**:

  `Device(config)# ip ssh rekey time 108`

- **Purpose** (Optional) Configures a time-based rekey or a volume-based rekey for SSH.

#### Step 5

- **Command or Action**: `exit`

- **Example**:

  `Device(config)# exit`

- **Purpose** Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

#### Step 6

- **Command or Action**: `show ip ssh`

- **Example**:

  `Device# show ip ssh`

- **Purpose** (Optional) Verifies that the SSH server is enabled and displays the version and configuration data for the SSH connection.

---

**Invoking an SSH Client**

- **Note** Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

Perform this task to invoke the Secure Shell (SSH) client. The SSH client runs in user EXEC mode and has no specific configuration tasks.

---

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Example**:

  `Device> enable`

  - Enter your password if prompted.
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command: ssh -l username -vrf vrf-name ip-address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# ssh -l user1 -vrf vrf1 192.0.2.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Invokes the SSH client to connect to an IP host or address in the specified virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance.

### Configuration Examples for Secure Shell

#### Example: Configuring an SSH Server

**Note**

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

The following is an example of the Secure Shell (SSH) control parameters configured for the server. In this example, the timeout interval of 30 seconds has been specified. This timeout interval is used during the SSH negotiation phase.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh timeout 30
Device(config)# end
```

#### Example: Invoking an SSH Client

**Note**

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

In the following example, the Secure Shell (SSH) client has been invoked to connect to IP address 192.0.2.1 in the specified virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance:

```
Device> enable
Device# ssh -l user1 -vrf vrf1 192.0.2.1
```

#### Example: Verifying SSH

**Note**

Unless otherwise noted, the term “SSH” denotes “SSH Version 1” only.

To verify that the Secure Shell (SSH) server is enabled and to display the version and configuration data for your SSH connection, use the `show ip ssh` command. The following example shows that SSH is enabled:

```
Device# show ip ssh
SSH Enabled - version 1.5
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3
```
The following example shows that SSH is disabled:

Device# show ip ssh
%SSH has not been enabled

To verify the status of your SSH server connections, use the `show ssh` command. The following example shows the SSH server connections on the device when SSH is enabled:

Device# show ssh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connection</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Encryption</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Username</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.1.5</td>
<td>3DES</td>
<td>Session Started</td>
<td>guest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example shows that SSH is disabled:

Device# show ssh
%No SSH server connections running.

---

### Additional References for Secure Shell

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Feature History for Configuring Secure Shell

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.
Feature Information

SSHis a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.11.1</td>
<td>Secure Shell</td>
<td>SSH is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Secure Shell Version 2 Support

The Secure Shell Version 2 Support feature allows you to configure Secure Shell (SSH) Version 2. (SSH Version 1 support was implemented in an earlier Cisco software release.) SSH runs on top of a reliable transport layer and provides strong authentication and encryption capabilities. The only reliable transport that is defined for SSH is TCP. SSH provides a means to securely access and securely execute commands on another computer over a network. The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature that is provided with SSH allows for the secure transfer of files.

- Prerequisites for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 249
- Restrictions for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 250
- Information About Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 250
- How to Configure Secure Shell, on page 253
- Configuration Examples for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 265
- Additional References for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 269
- Feature History for Secure Shell Version 2 Support, on page 270

Prerequisites for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

- Before configuring SSH, ensure that the required image is loaded on your device. The SSH server requires you to have a k9 (Triple Data Encryption Standard [3DES]) software image depending on your release.
- You have to use a SSH remote device that supports SSH Version 2 and connect to a Cisco device.
- SCP relies on authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) to function correctly. Therefore, AAA must be configured on the device to enable the secure copy protocol on the SSH Server.

Note

The SSH Version 2 server and the SSH Version 2 client are supported on your Cisco software, depending on your release. (The SSH client runs both the SSH Version 1 protocol and the SSH Version 2 protocol. The SSH client is supported in k9 images depending on your release.)
Restrictions for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

- Secure Shell (SSH) servers and SSH clients are supported in Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES) software images.
- Execution Shell, remote command execution, and Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) are the only applications supported.
- Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) key generation is an SSH server-side requirement. Devices that act as SSH clients need not generate RSA keys.
- The RSA key pair size must be greater than or equal to 768 bits.
- The following features are not supported:
  - Port forwarding
  - Compression

Information About Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Secure Shell Version 2


The configuration for the SSH Version 2 server is similar to the configuration for SSH Version 1. The `ip ssh version` command defines the SSH version to be configured. If you do not configure this command, SSH by default runs in compatibility mode; that is, both SSH Version 1 and SSH Version 2 connections are honored.

Note
SSH Version 1 is a protocol that has never been defined in a standard. If you do not want your device to fall back to the undefined protocol (Version 1), you should use the `ip ssh version` command and specify Version 2.

The `ip ssh rsa keypair-name` command enables an SSH connection using the Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) keys that you have configured. Previously, SSH was linked to the first RSA keys that were generated (that is, SSH was enabled when the first RSA key pair was generated). This behavior still exists, but by using the `ip ssh rsa keypair-name` command, you can overcome this behavior. If you configure the `ip ssh rsa keypair-name` command with a key pair name, SSH is enabled if the key pair exists or SSH will be enabled if the key pair is generated later. If you use this command to enable SSH, you are not forced to configure a hostname and a domain name, which was required in SSH Version 1 of the Cisco software.

Note
The login banner is supported in SSH Version 2, but it is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1.
Secure Shell Version 2 Enhancements

The SSH Version 2 Enhancements feature includes a number of additional capabilities such as supporting Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF)-Aware SSH, SSH debug enhancements, and Diffie-Hellman (DH) group exchange support.

Note

The VRF-Aware SSH feature is supported depending on your release.

The Cisco SSH implementation has traditionally used 768-bit modulus, but with an increasing need for higher key sizes to accommodate DH Group 14 (2048 bits) and Group 16 (4096 bits) cryptographic applications, a message exchange between the client and the server to establish the favored DH group becomes necessary. The `ip ssh dh min size` command configures the modulus size on the SSH server. In addition to this, the `ssh` command was extended to add VRF awareness to the SSH client-side functionality through which the VRF instance name in the client is provided with the IP address to look up the correct routing table and establish a connection.

Debugging was enhanced by modifying SSH debug commands. The `debug ip ssh` command was extended to simplify the debugging process. Before the simplification of the debugging process, this command printed all debug messages related to SSH regardless of what was specifically required. The behavior still exists, but if you configure the `debug ip ssh` command with a keyword, messages are limited to information specified by the keyword.

Secure Shell Version 2 Enhancements for RSA Keys

Cisco SSH Version 2 supports keyboard-interactive and password-based authentication methods. The SSH Version 2 Enhancements for RSA Keys feature also supports RSA-based public key authentication for the client and the server.

User authentication—RSA-based user authentication uses a private/public key pair associated with each user for authentication. The user must generate a private/public key pair on the client and configure a public key on the Cisco SSH server to complete the authentication.

An SSH user trying to establish credentials provides an encrypted signature using the private key. The signature and the user’s public key are sent to the SSH server for authentication. The SSH server computes a hash over the public key provided by the user. The hash is used to determine if the server has a matching entry. If a match is found, an RSA-based message verification is performed using the public key. Hence, the user is authenticated or denied access based on the encrypted signature.

Server authentication—While establishing an SSH session, the Cisco SSH client authenticates the SSH server by using the server host keys available during the key exchange phase. SSH server keys are used to identify the SSH server. These keys are created at the time of enabling SSH and must be configured on the client.

For server authentication, the Cisco SSH client must assign a host key for each server. When the client tries to establish an SSH session with a server, the client receives the signature of the server as part of the key exchange message. If the strict host key checking flag is enabled on the client, the client checks if it has the host key entry corresponding to the server. If a match is found, the client tries to validate the signature by using the server host key. If the server is successfully authenticated, the session establishment continues; otherwise, it is terminated and displays a “Server Authentication Failed” message.
Storing public keys on a server uses memory; therefore, the number of public keys configurable on an SSH server is restricted to ten users, with a maximum of two public keys per user.

Note

RSA-based user authentication is supported by the Cisco server, but Cisco clients cannot propose public key as an authentication method. If the Cisco server receives a request from an open SSH client for RSA-based authentication, the server accepts the authentication request.

Note

For server authentication, configure the RSA public key of the server manually and configure the `ip ssh stricthostkeycheck` command on the Cisco SSH client.

### SSH And Switch Access

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

SSH functions the same in IPv6 as in IPv4. For IPv6, SSH supports IPv6 addresses and enables secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.

### SNMP Trap Generation

Depending on your release, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps are generated automatically when an SSH session terminates if the traps have been enabled and SNMP debugging has been enabled.

Note

When you configure the `snmp-server host` command, the IP address must be the address of the PC that has the SSH (telnet) client and that has IP connectivity to the SSH server.

You must also enable SNMP debugging using the `debug snmp packet` command to display the traps. The trap information includes information such as the number of bytes sent and the protocol that was used for the SSH session.

### SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication

The SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication feature, also known as Generic Message Authentication for SSH, is a method that can be used to implement different types of authentication mechanisms. Basically, any currently supported authentication method that requires only user input can be performed with this feature. The feature is automatically enabled.

The following methods are supported:

- Password
- SecurID and hardware tokens printing a number or a string in response to a challenge sent by the server
- Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM)
- S/KEY (and other One-Time-Pads)

# How to Configure Secure Shell

## Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using a Hostname and Domain Name

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>hostname <em>name</em></td>
<td>Configures a hostname for your device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# hostname catalyst9k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ip domain name <em>name</em></td>
<td>Configures a domain name for your device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>catalyst9k(config)# ip domain name example.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>catalyst9k(config)# crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>ip ssh [time-out <em>seconds</em></td>
<td>authentication-retries <em>integer</em>]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>catalyst9k(config)# ip ssh time-out 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring a Device for SSH Version 2 Using RSA Key Pairs

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Step 2</strong></th>
<th>Enters global configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Step 3</strong></th>
<th>Specifies the RSA key pair to be used for SSH.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ip ssh rsa keypair-name</code></td>
<td>Note: A Cisco device can have many RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>keypair-name</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# ip ssh rsa keypair-name sshkeys</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Step 4</strong></th>
<th>Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto key generate rsa usage-keys label</code></td>
<td>Note: To delete the RSA key pair, use the <code>crypto key zeroize rsa</code> command. When you delete the RSA key pair, you automatically disable the SSH server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>key-label</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>modulus</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>modulus-size</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa usage-keys label sshkeys modulus 768</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring the Cisco SSH Server to Perform RSA-Based User Authentication

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> hostname name</td>
<td>Specifies the hostname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# hostname host1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip domain name name</td>
<td>Defines a default domain name that the Cisco software uses to complete unqualified hostnames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(config)# ip domain name name1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>Generates RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host1(config)# crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

| Step 6 | ip ssh pubkey-chain  
Example: |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>host1(config)# ip ssh pubkey-chain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configures SSH-RSA keys for user and server authentication on the SSH server and enters public-key configuration mode.

- The user authentication is successful if the RSA public key stored on the server is verified with the public or the private key pair stored on the client.

| Step 7 | username  
Example: |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey)# username user1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configures the SSH username and enters public-key user configuration mode.

| Step 8 | key-string  
Example: |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-user)# key-string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifies the RSA public key of the remote peer and enters public-key data configuration mode.

**Note** You can obtain the public key value from an open SSH client; that is, from the .ssh/id_rsa.pub file.

| Step 9 | key-hash  
key-type  key-name  
Example: |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-data)# key-hash ssh-rsa key1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Optional) Specifies the SSH key type and version.

- The key type must be ssh-rsa for the configuration of private public key pairs.
- This step is optional only if the key-string command is configured.
- You must configure either the key-string command or the key-hash command.

**Note** You can use a hashing software to compute the hash of the public key string, or you can also copy the hash value from another Cisco device. Entering the public key data using the key-string command is the preferred way to enter the public key data for the first time.

| Step 10 | end  
Example: |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-data)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exits public-key data configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

- Use no hostname command to return to the default host.
## Configuring the Cisco IOS SSH Client to Perform RSA-Based Server Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `enable`        | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> `enable`  
|            |                  | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
Example:  
Device# `configure terminal` |
| **Step 3** | `hostname name` | Specifies the hostname. |
Example:  
Device(config)# `hostname host1` |
| **Step 4** | `ip domain name name` | Defines a default domain name that the Cisco software uses to complete unqualified hostnames. |
Example:  
host1(config)# `ip domain name name1` |
| **Step 5** | `crypto key generate rsa` | Generates RSA key pairs. |
Example:  
host1(config)# `crypto key generate rsa` |
| **Step 6** | `ip ssh pubkey-chain` | Configures SSH-RSA keys for user and server authentication on the SSH server and enters public-key configuration mode. |
Example:  
host1(config)# `ip ssh pubkey-chain` |
| **Step 7** | `server server-name` | Enables the SSH server for public-key authentication on the device and enters public-key server configuration mode. |
Example:  
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey)# `server server1` |
| **Step 8** | `key-string` | Specifies the RSA public-key of the remote peer and enters public key data configuration mode.  
**Note** You can obtain the public key value from an open SSH client; that is, from the `.ssh/id_rsa.pub` file. |
Example:  
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-server)# `key-string` |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 9    | exit              | Exits public-key data configuration mode and enters public-key server configuration mode.  
**Example:**

```
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-data)# exit
``` |
| 10   | key-hash key-type key-name  
**Example:**  
```
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-server)# key-hash
ssh-rsa key1
```  
(Optional) Specifies the SSH key type and version.  
- The key type must be ssh-rsa for the configuration of private/public key pairs.  
- This step is optional only if the `key-string` command is configured.  
- You must configure either the `key-string` command or the `key-hash` command. |  
**Note** You can use a hashing software to compute the hash of the public key string, or you can copy the hash value from another Cisco device. Entering the public key data using the `key-string` command is the preferred way to enter the public key data for the first time. |
| 11   | end               | Exits public-key server configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**

```
host1(conf-ssh-pubkey-server)# end
``` |
| 12   | configure terminal  
**Example:**  
```
host1# configure terminal
```  
Enters global configuration mode. |
| 13   | ip ssh stricthostkeycheck  
**Example:**  
```
host1(config)# ip ssh stricthostkeycheck
```  
Ensures that server authentication takes place.  
- The connection is terminated in case of a failure.  
- Use `no hostname` command to return to the default host. |
| 14   | end               | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**

```
host1(config)# end
``` |
**Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device**

The device with which you want to connect must support a Secure Shell (SSH) server that has an encryption algorithm that is supported in Cisco software. Also, you need not enable your device. SSH can be run in disabled mode.

---

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssh [-v {1</td>
<td>2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# ssh -v 2 -c aes256-ctr -m hmac-sha1-96 -l user2 10.76.82.24</td>
<td>Starts an encrypted session with a remote networking device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Verifying the Status of the Secure Shell Connection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ssh</td>
<td>Displays the status of SSH server connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show ssh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verifying the Secure Shell Version 2 Status

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sample output from the `show ssh` command displays status of various SSH Version 1 and Version 2 connections for Version 1 and Version 2 connections:

```
Device# show ssh
Connection Version Encryption State Username
  0 1.5 3DES Session started lab
Connection Version Mode Encryption Hmac State Username
  1 2.0 IN aes128-cbc hmac-md5 Session started lab
  1 2.0 OUT aes128-cbc hmac-md5 Session started lab
```

The following sample output from the `show ssh` command displays status of various SSH Version 1 and Version 2 connections for a Version 2 connection with no Version 1 connection:

```
Device# show ssh
Connection Version Mode Encryption Hmac State Username
  1 2.0 IN aes128-cbc hmac-md5 Session started lab
  1 2.0 OUT aes128-cbc hmac-md5 Session started lab
%No SSHv1 server connections running.
```

The following sample output from the `show ssh` command displays status of various SSH Version 1 and Version 2 connections for a Version 1 connection with no Version 2 connection:

```
Device# show ssh
Connection Version Encryption State Username
  0 1.5 3DES Session started lab
%No SSHv2 server connections running.
```
### Command or Action

**Example:**

Device> enable

**Step 2**

**Example:**

Device# show ip ssh

**Step 3**

**Example:**

Device# exit

### Examples

The following sample output from the `show ip ssh` command displays the version of SSH that is enabled, the authentication timeout values, and the number of authentication retries for Version 1 and Version 2 connections:

```
Device# show ip ssh
SSH Enabled - version 1.99
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3
```

The following sample output from the `show ip ssh` command displays the version of SSH that is enabled, the authentication timeout values, and the number of authentication retries for a Version 2 connection with no Version 1 connection:

```
Device# show ip ssh
SSH Enabled - version 2.0
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3
```

The following sample output from the `show ip ssh` command displays the version of SSH that is enabled, the authentication timeout values, and the number of authentication retries for a Version 1 connection with no Version 2 connection:

```
Device# show ip ssh
3d06h: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
SSH Enabled - version 1.5
Authentication timeout: 120 secs; Authentication retries: 3
```
Monitoring and Maintaining Secure Shell Version 2

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  *Example:*  
  Device> enable  
  *Enter your password if prompted.* |
| **Step 2** | debug ip ssh | Enables debugging of SSH.  
  *Example:*  
  Device# debug ip ssh |
| **Step 3** | debug snmp packet | Enables debugging of every SNMP packet sent or received by the device.  
  *Example:*  
  Device# debug snmp packet |

### Example

The following sample output from the `debug ip ssh` command shows the connection is an SSH Version 2 connection:

```
00:33:55: SSH1: starting SSH control process
00:33:55: SSH1: sent protocol version id SSH-1.99-Cisco-1.25
00:33:55: SSH1: protocol version id is - SSH-2.0-OpenSSH_2.5.2p2
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: send: len 280 (includes padlen 4)
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT sent
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: ssh_receive: 536 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: input: packet len 632
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: partial packet 8, need 624, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: ssh_receive: 96 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: partial packet 8, need 624, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: input: padlen 11
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: received packet type 20
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT received
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: expecting SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: ssh_receive: 144 bytes received
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: input: packet len 144
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: partial packet 8, need 136, maclen 0
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: input: padlen 5
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: received packet type 30
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT received
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: signature length 111
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: send: len 384 (includes padlen 7)
00:33:55: SSH2: kex_derive_keys complete
00:33:55: SSH2: 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 10)
```
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:04: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:04: SSH2 1: MAC #10 ok
00:34:04: SSH2 1: input: padlen 12
00:34:04: SSH2 1: received packet type 98
00:34:04: SSH2 1: shell request
00:34:04: SSH2 1: shell message received
00:34:04: SSH2 1: starting shell for vty
00:34:04: SSH2 1: send: len 48 (includes padlen 18)
00:34:04: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #7
00:34:07: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:07: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:07: SSH2 1: MAC #11 ok
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:07: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:07: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:07: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #8
00:34:07: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:07: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:07: SSH2 1: MAC #12 ok
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:07: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:07: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:07: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #9
00:34:07: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:07: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:07: SSH2 1: MAC #13 ok
00:34:07: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:07: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:07: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #10
00:34:08: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:08: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:08: SSH2 1: MAC #14 ok
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:08: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 17)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #11
00:34:08: SSH2 1: ssh_receive: 48 bytes received
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: packet len 32
00:34:08: SSH2 1: partial packet 16, need 16, maclen 16
00:34:08: SSH2 1: MAC #15 ok
00:34:08: SSH2 1: input: padlen 17
00:34:08: SSH2 1: received packet type 94
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 32 (includes padlen 16)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #12
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 48 (includes padlen 18)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #13
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 6)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #14
00:34:08: SSH2 1: send: len 16 (includes padlen 6)
00:34:08: SSH2 1: done calc MAC out #15
00:34:08: SSH1: Session terminated normally
Configuration Examples for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Example: Configuring Secure Shell Version 2

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh version 2
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Configuring Secure Shell Versions 1 and 2

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# no ip ssh version
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Starting an Encrypted Session with a Remote Device

```
Device> enable
Device# ssh -v 2 -c aes256-cbc -m hmac-shal-160 -l shaship 10.76.82.24
Device# exit
```

Example: Setting an SNMP Trap

The following example shows how to set an SNMP trap is set. The trap notification is generated automatically when the SSH session terminates. In the example, 10.1.1.1 is the IP address of the SSH client.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# snmp-server trap link switchover
Device(config)# snmp-server host 10.1.1.1 public tty
Device(config)# end
```

Examples: SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication

Example: Enabling Client-Side Debugs

The following example shows that the client-side debugs are turned on, and the maximum number of prompts is six (three for the SSH keyboard interactive authentication method and three for the password authentication method).

```
Password:
Password:
Password:
Password:
Password: cisco123
Last login: Tue Dec 6 13:15:21 2005 from 10.76.248.213
```
Example: Enabling ChPass with a Blank Password Change

In the following example, the ChPass feature is enabled, and a blank password change is accomplished using the SSH Keyboard Interactive Authentication method. A TACACS+ access control server (ACS) is used as the back-end AAA server.

```
Device> enable
Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Old Password: cisco
New Password: cisco123
Re-enter New password: cisco123
Device2> exit
[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]
```

Example: Enabling ChPass and Changing the Password on First Login

In the following example, the ChPass feature is enabled and TACACS+ ACS is used as the back-end server. The password is changed on the first login using the SSH keyboard interactive authentication method.

```
Device1> enable
Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Your password has expired.
Enter a new one now.
New Password: cisco123
Re-enter New password: cisco123
```

Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Example: Enabling ChPass with a Blank Password Change
Device2> exit

[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Your password has expired.
Enter a new one now.
New Password: cisco
Re-enter New password: cisco12
The New and Re-entered passwords have to be the same.
Try again.
New Password: cisco
Re-enter New password: cisco

Device2>

Example: Enabling ChPass and Expiring the Password After Three Logins

In the following example, the ChPass feature is enabled and TACACS+ ACS is used as the back-end AAA server. The password expires after three logins using the SSH keyboard interactive authentication method.

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Device2>
exit

[Connection to 10.1.1.3 closed by foreign host]

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Device2>
exit

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Device2>
exit

Device1# ssh -l cisco 10.1.1.3
Password: cisco
Your password has expired.
Enter a new one now.
New Password: cisco123
Re-enter New password: cisco123

Device2>

Example: SNMP Debugging

The following is sample output from the debug snmp packet command. The output provides SNMP trap information for an SSH session.
Device1# debug snmp packet
SNMP packet debugging is on
Device1# ssh -l lab 10.0.0.2
Password:
Device2# exit
(Connection to 10.0.0.2 closed by foreign host)
Device1#

*Jul 18 10:18:42.619: SNMP: Queuing packet to 10.0.0.2
*Jul 18 10:18:42.619: SNMP: V1 Trap, ent cisco, addr 10.0.0.1, gentrap 6, spectrap 1
local.9.3.1.1.2.1 = 6
tcpConnEntry.1.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 4
tcpConnEntry.5.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 1015
tcpConnEntry.1.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 1056
tcpConnEntry.2.10.0.0.1.22.10.0.0.2.55246 = 1392
local.9.2.1.18.2 = lab
*Jul 18 10:18:42.879: SNMP: Packet sent via UDP to 10.0.0.2

Examples: SSH Debugging Enhancements

The following is sample output from the `debug ip ssh detail` command. The output provides debugging information about the SSH protocol and channel requests.

```
Device# debug ip ssh detail
00:04:22: SSH0: starting SSH control process
00:04:22: SSH0: sent protocol version id SSH-1.99=Cisco-1.25
00:04:22: SSH0: protocol version id is - SSH-1.99=Cisco-1.25
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT sent
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_KEXINIT received
00:04:22: SSH2 0: expecting SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_KEXDH_INIT received
00:04:22: SSH2: kex_derive_keys complete
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS sent
00:04:22: SSH2 0: SSH2_MSG_NEWKEYS received
00:04:22: SSH2 0: authentication successful for lab
00:04:22: SSH2 0: channel open request
00:04:22: SSH2 0: pty-req request
00:04:24: SSH2 0: setting TTY - requested: height 24, width 80; set: height 24, width 80
00:04:24: SSH2 0: shell request
00:04:24: SSH2 0: shell message received
00:04:24: SSH2 0: starting shell for vty
00:04:38: SSH0: Session terminated normally
```

The following is sample output from the `debug ip ssh packet` command. The output provides debugging information about the SSH packet.

```
Device# debug ip ssh packet
00:05:43: SSH2 0: send:packet of length 280 (length also includes padlen of 4)
00:05:43: SSH2 0: ssh_receive: 64 bytes received
00:05:43: SSH2 0: input: total packet length of 280 bytes
```
Additional References for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSH Version 1</td>
<td>Configuring Secure Shell chapter of the Security Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IETF Secure Shell Version 2 Draft Standards</td>
<td>Internet Engineering Task Force website</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for Secure Shell Version 2 Support

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.11.1</td>
<td>Secure Shell Version 2 Support</td>
<td>The Secure Shell Version 2 Support feature allows you to configure Secure Shell (SSH) Version 2 (SSH Version 1 support was implemented in an earlier Cisco IOS software release). SSH runs on top of a reliable transport layer and provides strong authentication and encryption capabilities. SSH version 2 also supports AES counter-based encryption mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
SSH Support Over IPv6

Secure Shell (SSH) provides support for IPv6 addresses that enable a Cisco device to accept and establish secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.

- Prerequisites for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 271
- Information About SSH Support over IPv6, on page 271
- How to Configure SSH Support over IPv6, on page 272
- Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 273
- Additional References for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 273
- Feature History for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 274

Prerequisites for SSH Support over IPv6

- An IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image is loaded on your device. IPv6 transport for the SSH server and SSH client requires an IPsec encryption software image.

- A hostname and host domain are configured for your device.

- A Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair, which automatically enables SSH, is generated for your device.

- A user authentication mechanism for local or remote access is configured on your device.

- To authenticate SSH clients, configure TACACS+ or RADIUS over an IPv4 transport and then connect to an SSH server over an IPv6 transport.

The basic restrictions for SSH over an IPv4 transport apply to SSH over an IPv6 transport. The use of locally stored usernames and passwords is the only user authentication mechanism supported by SSH over an IPv6 transport. TACACS+ and RADIUS user authentication mechanisms are not supported over an IPv6 transport.

Information About SSH Support over IPv6

SSH over an IPv6 Transport

Secure shell (SSH) SSH in IPv6 functions the same and offers the same benefits as SSH in IPv4. The SSH server feature enables an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco device, and the SSH
client feature enables a Cisco device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco device or to any other device running an SSH server. IPv6 enhancements to SSH consist of support for IPv6 addresses that enable a Cisco device to accept and establish secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.

## How to Configure SSH Support over IPv6

### Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device

This task is optional. If you do not configure SSH parameters, then the default values will be used.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  * Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Example:** | Device> enable |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:** | Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** | ip ssh [timeout seconds [authentication-retries integer]] | Configures SSH control variables on your device. |
| **Example:** | Device(config)# IP ssh timeout 100 authentication-retries 2 |
| **Step 4** | exit | Exits global configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** | Device(config)# exit |
| **Step 5** | ssh [-v {1 | 2} | c {3des | aes128-cbc | aes192-cbc | aes256-cbc} | -l userid | -l userid:vrfiname number ip-address ip-address | -l userid: rotary number ip-address | -m {hmac-md5 | hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1 | hmac-sha1-96} | -o numberofpasswordprompts n | -p port-num] {ip-addr | hostname} [command | -vrf] | Starts an encrypted session with a remote networking device. |
| **Example:** | |
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# ssh -l userid1 2001:db8:2222:1044::72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6

**Example: Enabling SSH on an IPv6 Device**

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh
Device(config)# exit
Device# ssh -l userid1 2001:db8:2222:1044::72

### Additional References for SSH Support over IPv6

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFCs for IPv6</td>
<td>IPv6 RFCs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature History for SSH Support over IPv6

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>SSH Support over IPv6</td>
<td>SSH provides support for IPv6 addresses that enable a Cisco device to accept and establish secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
CHAPTER 15

Configuring SSH File Transfer Protocol

Secure Shell (SSH) includes support for SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP), which is a new standard file transfer protocol introduced in SSHv2. This feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying device configuration or device image files.

- Prerequisites for SSH File Transfer Protocol, on page 275
- Restrictions for SSH File Transfer Protocol, on page 275
- Information About SSH Support over IPv6, on page 276
- How to Configure SSH File Transfer Protocol, on page 276
- Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6, on page 277
- Additional References for SSH File Transfer Protocol, on page 278
- Feature History for SSH File Transfer Protocol, on page 278

Prerequisites for SSH File Transfer Protocol

- SSH must be enabled.
- The ip ssh source-interface interface-type interface-number command must be configured.

Restrictions for SSH File Transfer Protocol

- The SFTP server is not supported.
- SFTP boot is not supported.
- The sftp option in the install add command is not supported.
Information About SSH Support over IPv6

SSH File Transfer Protocol Overview

The SFTP client functionality is provided as part of the SSH component and is always enabled on the corresponding device. Therefore, any SFTP server user with the appropriate permission can copy files to and from the device.

An SFTP client is VRF-aware; you can configure the secure FTP client to use the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) associated with a particular source interface during connection attempts.

How to Configure SSH File Transfer Protocol

The following sections provide information about the various tasks that comprise an SFTP configuration.

Configuring SFTP

Perform the following steps:

Before you begin

To configure a Cisco device for SFTP client-side functionality, the `ip ssh source-interface interface-type interface-number` command must be configured first.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip ssh source-interface interface-type interface-number</td>
<td>Defines the source IP for the SSH session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip ssh source-interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Performing an SFTP Copy Operation

SFTP copy takes the IP or hostname of the corresponding server if Domain Name System (DNS) is configured. To perform SFTP copy operations, use the following commands in privileged EXEC mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy ios-file-system:file sftp://user:pwd@server-ip//filepath</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy ios-file-system: sftp:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copies a file from the local Cisco IOS file system to the server.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify the username, password, IP address, and filepath of the server.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy sftp://user:pwd@server-ip //filepath ios-file-system:file</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# copy sftp: ios-file-system:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copies the file from the server to the local Cisco IOS file system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify the username, password, IP address, and filepath of the server.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration Examples for SSH Support over IPv6

Example: Configuring SSH File Transfer Protocol

The following example shows how to configure the client-side functionality of SFTP:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh source-interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config)# exit
Additional References for SSH File Transfer Protocol

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Shell Version 1 and 2 Support</td>
<td>Security Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for SSH File Transfer Protocol

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>SSH File Transfer Protocol</td>
<td>SSH includes support for SFTP, a new standard file transfer protocol introduced in SSHv2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature uses the X.509v3 digital certificates in server and user authentication at the secure shell (SSH) server side.

This module describes how to configure server and user certificate profiles for a digital certificate.

Prerequisites for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

- The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature introduces the `ip ssh server algorithm authentication` command to replace the `ip ssh server authenticate user` command. If you use the `ip ssh server authenticate user` command, the following deprecation message is displayed.

  Warning: SSH command accepted but this CLI will be deprecated soon. Please move to new CLI “ip ssh server algorithm authentication”. Please configure “default ip ssh server authenticate user” to make the CLI ineffective.

  - Use the `default ip ssh server authenticate user` command to remove the `ip ssh server authenticate user` command from effect. The IOS secure shell (SSH) server then starts using the `ip ssh server algorithm authentication` command.

Restrictions for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

- The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature implementation is applicable only on the Cisco IOS XE secure shell (SSH) server side.

- The SSH server supports only the x509v3-ssh-rsa algorithm-based certificate for server and user authentication.

Information About X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following section provides information about digital certificates, and server and user authentication.
Digital Certificates

The validity of the authentication depends upon the strength of the linkage between the public signing key and the identity of the signer. Digital certificates in the X.509v3 format (RFC5280) are used to provide identity management. A chain of signatures by a trusted root certification authority and its intermediate certificate authorities binds a given public signing key to a given digital identity.

Public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoint helps manage the digital certificates. The association between the certificate and the trustpoint helps track the certificate. The trustpoint contains information about the certificate authority (CA), different identity parameters, and the digital certificate. Multiple trustpoints can be created to associate with different certificates.

Server and User Authentication using X.509v3

For server authentication, the Cisco IOS XE secure shell (SSH) server sends its own certificate to the SSH client for verification. This server certificate is associated with the trustpoint configured in the server certificate profile (ssh-server-cert-profile-server configuration mode).

For user authentication, the SSH client sends the user's certificate to the SSH server for verification. The SSH server validates the incoming user certificate using public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoints configured in the server certificate profile (ssh-server-cert-profile-user configuration mode).

By default, certificate-based authentication is enabled for server and user at the SSH server end.

How to Configure X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following section provides information about how to configure X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication.

Configuring the SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication

To configure the SSH server to use digital certificates for server authentication, perform this procedure:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip ssh server algorithm hostkey {x509v3-ssh-rsa [ssh-rsa ]</td>
<td>ssh-rsa [x509v3-ssh-rsa]}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

```
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm
```

```
hostkey x509v3-ssh-rsa
```

### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>ip ssh server certificate profile</th>
<th>Configuration:</th>
<th>Configures server certificate profile and user certificate profile and enters SSH certificate profile configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>server</th>
<th>Configuration:</th>
<th>Configures server certificate profile and enters SSH server certificate profile server configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>trustpoint sign PKI-trustpoint-name</th>
<th>Configuration:</th>
<th>Attaches the public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoint to the server certificate profile. The SSH server uses the certificate associated with this PKI trustpoint for server authentication.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>ocsp-response include</th>
<th>Configuration:</th>
<th>(Optional) Sends the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) response or OCSP stapling along with the server certificate.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>Configuration:</th>
<th>Exits SSH server certificate profile server configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Configuring the SSH Server to Verify Digital Certificates for User Authentication

To configure the SSH Server to use digital certificates for user authentication, perform this procedure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>enable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example:</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Purpose

- Enables privileged EXEC mode.
  - Enter your password if prompted.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip ssh server algorithm authentication</td>
<td>Defines the order of user authentication algorithms. Only the configured algorithm is negotiated with the secure shell (SSH) client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{publickey</td>
<td>keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm authentication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publickey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>The SSH server must have at least one configured user authentication algorithm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To use the certificate method for user authentication, the <code>publickey</code> keyword must be configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <code>ip ssh server algorithm authentication</code> command replaces the <code>ip ssh server authenticate user</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip ssh server algorithm publickey</td>
<td>Defines the order of public key algorithms. Only the configured algorithm is accepted by the SSH client for user authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{x509v3-ssh-rsa</td>
<td>ssh-rsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm publickey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x509v3-ssh-rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>The SSH client must have at least one configured public key algorithm:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ssh-rsa – public-key-based authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• x509v3-ssh-rsa – certificate-based authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> ip ssh server certificate profile</td>
<td>Configures server certificate profile and user certificate profile and enters SSH certificate profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> user</td>
<td>Configures user certificate profile and enters SSH server certificate profile user configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ssh-server-cert-profile)# user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> trustpoint verify PKI-trustpoint-name</td>
<td>Configures the public key infrastructure (PKI) trustpoint that is used to verify the incoming user certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# trustpoint verify trustpoint verify trust2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

Configure multiple trustpoints by executing the same command multiple times. A maximum of 10 trustpoints can be configured.

**Note**

(Optional) Mandates the presence of the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) response with the incoming user certificate.

**Example:**

```
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# ocsp-response required
```

### Step 8

**Example:**

```
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# ocsp-response required
```

**Note**

By default the **no** form of this command is configured and the user certificate is accepted without an OCSP response.

### Step 9

**Example:**

```
Device(ssh-server-cert-profile-user)# end
```

Exits SSH server certificate profile user configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

## Verifying Configuration for Server and User Authentication Using Digital Certificates

To verify configuration for server and user Authentication using digital certificates, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 2

**Example:**

```
Device# show ip ssh
```

**SSH Enabled = version 1.99**

**Authentication methods:** publickey, keyboard-interactive, password

**Authentication Publickey**

**Algorithms:** x509v3-ssh-rsa, ssh-rsa

**Hostkey Algorithms:** x509v3-ssh-rsa, ssh-rsa

**Authentication timeout:** 120 secs;

**Authentication retries:** 3

**Minimum expected Diffie Hellman key size:** 1024 bits

Displays the currently configured authentication methods. To confirm the use of certificate-based authentication, ensure that the x509v3-ssh-rsa algorithm is the configured host key algorithm.
Configuration Examples for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

The following section provides examples for user and server authentication using digital certificates.

Example: Configuring the SSH Server to Use Digital Certificates for Server Authentication

This example shows how to configure the SSH Server to use digital certificates for server authentication.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm hostkey x509v3-ssh-rsa
Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile
Device(config)# ip ssh server-cert-profile server
Device(config)# ip ssh server-cert-profile-server trustpoint sign trust1
Device(config)# ip ssh server-cert-profile-server end

Example: Configuring the SSH Server to Verify Digital Certificates for User Authentication

This example shows how to configure the SSH server to verify user's digital certificate for user authentication.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm authentication publickey
Device(config)# ip ssh server algorithm publickey x509v3-ssh-rsa
Device(config)# ip ssh server certificate profile
Device(config)# ip ssh server-cert-profile user
Device(config)# ip ssh server-cert-profile-user trustpoint verify trust2
Device(config)# ip ssh server-cert-profile-user end

Feature History for X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication</td>
<td>The X.509v3 Certificates for SSH Authentication feature uses the X.509v3 digital certificates in server and user authentication at the SSH server side.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
CHAPTER 17

Configuring Secure Socket Layer HTTP

• Information About Secure Socket Layer HTTP, on page 285
• How to Configure Secure Socket Layer HTTP, on page 288
• Monitoring Secure HTTP Server and Client Status, on page 295
• Additional References for Secure Socket Layer HTTP, on page 295
• Feature History for Secure Socket Layer HTTP, on page 296

Information About Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Secure HTTP Servers and Clients Overview

On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet. HTTP with SSL encryption provides a secure connection to allow such functions as configuring a switch from a Web browser. Cisco's implementation of the secure HTTP server and secure HTTP client uses an implementation of SSL Version 3.0 with application-layer encryption. HTTP over SSL is abbreviated as HTTPS; the URL of a secure connection begins with https:// instead of http://.

The primary role of the HTTP secure server (the switch) is to listen for HTTPS requests on a designated port (the default HTTPS port is 443) and pass the request to the HTTP 1.1 Web server. The HTTP 1.1 server processes requests and passes responses (pages) back to the HTTP secure server, which, in turn, responds to the original request.

The primary role of the HTTP secure client (the web browser) is to respond to Cisco IOS application requests for HTTPS User Agent services, perform HTTPS User Agent services for the application, and pass the response back to the application.

Certificate Authority Trustpoints

Certificate authorities (CAs) manage certificate requests and issue certificates to participating network devices. These services provide centralized security key and certificate management for the participating devices. Specific CA servers are referred to as trustpoints.

When a connection attempt is made, the HTTPS server provides a secure connection by issuing a certified X.509v3 certificate, obtained from a specified CA trustpoint, to the client. The client (usually a Web browser), in turn, has a public key that allows it to authenticate the certificate.
For secure HTTP connections, we highly recommend that you configure a CA trustpoint. If a CA trustpoint is not configured for the device running the HTTPS server, the server certifies itself and generates the needed RSA key pair. Because a self-certified (self-signed) certificate does not provide adequate security, the connecting client generates a notification that the certificate is self-certified, and the user has the opportunity to accept or reject the connection. This option is useful for internal network topologies (such as testing).

If you do not configure a CA trustpoint, when you enable a secure HTTP connection, either a temporary or a persistent self-signed certificate for the secure HTTP server (or client) is automatically generated.

- If the switch is not configured with a hostname and a domain name, a temporary self-signed certificate is generated. If the switch reboots, any temporary self-signed certificate is lost, and a new temporary self-signed certificate is assigned.

- If the switch has been configured with a host and domain name, a persistent self-signed certificate is generated. This certificate remains active if you reboot the switch or if you disable the secure HTTP server so that it will be there the next time you re-enable a secure HTTP connection.

The certificate authorities and trustpoints must be configured on each device individually. Copying them from other devices makes them invalid on the switch.

When a new certificate is enrolled, the new configuration change is not applied to the HTTPS server until the server is restarted. You can restart the server using either the CLI or by physical reboot. On restarting the server, the switch starts using the new certificate.

If a self-signed certificate has been generated, this information is included in the output of the `show running-config` privileged EXEC command. This is a partial sample output from that command displaying a self-signed certificate.

```
Device# show running-config
Building configuration...

<output truncated>
crypto pki trustpoint TP-self-signed-3080755072
  enrollment selfsigned
  subject-name cn=IOS-Self-Signed-Certificate-3080755072
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair TP-self-signed-3080755072
!
! crypto ca certificate chain TP-self-signed-3080755072
  certificate self-signed 01
    3082029F 30820208 A0030201 02020101 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 04050030
    59312F30 2D060355 04031326 494F532D 53656C66 2D536967 6E65642D 43657274
    69666663 6174652D 33303830 37353530 756E662D 30303030 305A3059 312F302D
    <output truncated>
You can remove this self-signed certificate by disabling the secure HTTP server and entering the `no crypto pki trustpoint TP-self-signed-3080755072` global configuration command. If you later re-enable a secure HTTP server, a new self-signed certificate is generated.
The values that follow *TP self-signed* depend on the serial number of the device.

You can use an optional command (`ip http secure-client-auth`) to allow the HTTPS server to request an X.509v3 certificate from the client. Authenticating the client provides more security than server authentication by itself.

## CipherSuites

A CipherSuite specifies the encryption algorithm and the digest algorithm to use on a SSL connection. When connecting to the HTTPS server, the client Web browser offers a list of supported CipherSuites, and the client and server negotiate the best encryption algorithm to use from those on the list that are supported by both. For example, Netscape Communicator 4.76 supports U.S. security with RSA Public Key Cryptography, MD2, MD5, RC2-CBC, RC4, DES-CBC, and DES-EDE3-CBC.

For the best possible encryption, you should use a client browser that supports 128-bit encryption, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 5.5 (or later) or Netscape Communicator Version 4.76 (or later). The SSL_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA CipherSuite provides less security than the other CipherSuites, as it does not offer 128-bit encryption.

The more secure and more complex CipherSuites require slightly more processing time. This list defines the CipherSuites supported by the switch and ranks them from fastest to slowest in terms of router processing load (speed):

1. **SSL_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange (RSA Public Key Cryptography) with DES-CBC for message encryption and SHA for message digest
2. **SSL_RSA_WITH_NULL_SHA** key exchange with NULL for message encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
3. **SSL_RSA_WITH_NULL_MD5** key exchange with NULL for message encryption and MD5 for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
4. **SSL_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5**—RSA key exchange with RC4 128-bit encryption and MD5 for message digest
5. **SSL_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA**—RSA key exchange with RC4 128-bit encryption and SHA for message digest
6. **SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange with 3DES and DES-EDE3-CBC for message encryption and SHA for message digest
7. **SSL_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange with AES 128-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
8. **SSL_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange with AES 256-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
9. **SSL_RSA_WITH_DHE_AES_128_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange with AES 128-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
10. **SSL_RSA_WITH_DHE_AES_256_CBC_SHA**—RSA key exchange with AES 256-bit encryption and SHA for message digest (only for SSL 3.0).
The latest versions of Chrome do not support the four original cipher suites, thus disallowing access to both web GUI and guest portals.

RSA (in conjunction with the specified encryption and digest algorithm combinations) is used for both key generation and authentication on SSL connections. This usage is independent of whether or not a CA trust point is configured.

Default SSL Configuration

The following guidelines apply to the default SSL configuration:

• The standard HTTP server is enabled.
• SSL is enabled.
• No CA trust points are configured.
• No self-signed certificates are generated.

SSL Configuration Guidelines

When SSL is used in a switch cluster, the SSL session terminates at the cluster commander. Cluster member switches must run standard HTTP.

Before you configure a CA trustpoint, you should ensure that the system clock is set. If the clock is not set, the certificate is rejected due to an incorrect date.

In a switch stack, the SSL session terminates at the active switch.

How to Configure Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Configuring a CA Trustpoint

For secure HTTP connections, we recommend that you configure an official CA trustpoint. A CA trustpoint is more secure than a self-signed certificate.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a CA Trustpoint:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hostname hostname</td>
<td>Specifies the hostname of the switch (required only if you have not previously configured a hostname). The hostname is required for security keys and certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# hostname your_hostname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ip domain name domain-name</td>
<td>Specifies the IP domain name of the switch (required only if you have not previously configured an IP domain name). The domain name is required for security keys and certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# ip domain name your_domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td>(Optional) Generates an RSA key pair. RSA key pairs are required before you can obtain a certificate for the switch. RSA key pairs are generated automatically. You can use this command to regenerate the keys, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint name</td>
<td>Specifies a local configuration name for the CA trustpoint and enter CA trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto ca trustpoint your_trustpoint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enrollment url url</td>
<td>Specifies the URL to which the switch should send certificate requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://your_server:80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enrollment http-proxy host-name port-number</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the switch to obtain certificates from the CA through an HTTP proxy server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Example: | Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment http-proxy your_host 49 | • For host-name, specify the proxy server used to get the CA.

• For port-number, specify the port number used to access the CA.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><code>crl query url</code></td>
<td>Configures the switch to request a certificate revocation list (CRL) to ensure that the certificate of the peer has not been revoked. <strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# <code>crl query ldap://your_host:49</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>primary <code>name</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the trustpoint should be used as the primary (default) trustpoint for CA requests. <strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# <code>primary your_trustpoint</code> <strong>• For name, specify the trustpoint that you just configured.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exits CA trustpoint configuration mode and return to global configuration mode. <strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# <code>exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><code>crypto ca authentication name</code></td>
<td>Authenticates the CA by getting the public key of the CA. Use the same name used in Step 5. <strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>crypto ca authentication your_trustpoint</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td><code>crypto ca enroll name</code></td>
<td>Obtains the certificate from the specified CA trustpoint. This command requests a signed certificate for each RSA key pair. <strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>crypto ca enroll your_trustpoint</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. <strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# <code>end</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring the Secure HTTP Server**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a secure HTTP server:

**Before you begin**

If you are using a certificate authority for certification, you should use the previous procedure to configure the CA trustpoint on the switch before enabling the HTTP server. If you have not configured a CA trustpoint, a self-signed certificate is generated the first time that you enable the secure HTTP server. After you have configured the server, you can configure options (path, access list to apply, maximum number of connections, or timeout policy) that apply to both standard and secure HTTP servers.
To verify the secure HTTP connection by using a Web browser, enter https://URL, where the URL is the IP address or hostname of the server switch. If you configure a port other than the default port, you must also specify the port number after the URL. For example:

```
https://209.165.129:1026
```

or

```
https://host.domain.com:1026
```

The existing `ip http access-class access-list-number` command for specifying the access-list (Only IPv4 ACLs) is going to be deprecated. You can still use this command to specify an access list to allow access to the HTTP server. Two new commands have been introduced to enable support for specifying IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs. These are `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name | access-list-number` for specifying IPv4 ACLs and `ip http access-class ipv6 access-list-name` for specifying IPv6 ACLs. We recommend using the new CLI to avoid receiving warning messages.

Note the following considerations for specifying access-lists:

- If you specify an access-list that does not exist, the configuration takes place but you receive the below warning message:
  
  
  ACL being attached does not exist, please configure it

- If you use `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name | access-list-number` or `ip http access-class ipv6 access-list-name`, and an access-list was already configured using `ip http access-class`, the below warning message appears:

  Removing ip http access-class <access-list-number>

`ip http access-class access-list-number` and `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name | access-list-number` share the same functionality. Each command overrides the configuration of the previous command. The following combinations between the configuration of the two commands explain the effect on the running configuration:

- If `ip http access-class access-list-number` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` command, the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-number` will be removed and the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` will be added to the running configuration.

- If `ip http access-class access-list-number` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` command, the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-number` will be removed and the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` will be added to the running configuration.

- If `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class access-list-name`, the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-number` will be removed from configuration and the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-name` will be added to the running configuration.
• If `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` is already configured and you try to configure using `ip http access-class access-list-number`, the configuration of `ip http access-class ipv4 access-list-name` will be removed from the configuration and the configuration of `ip http access-class access-list-number` will be added to the running configuration.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
*Example:*  
Device> enable |
| **Step 2** | `show ip http server status` | (Optional) Displays the status of the HTTP server to determine if the secure HTTP server feature is supported in the software. You should see one of these lines in the output:  
HTTP secure server capability: Present  
or  
HTTP secure server capability: Not present |
| **Step 3** | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode.  
*Example:*  
Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 4** | `ip http secure-server` | Enables the HTTPS server if it has been disabled. The HTTPS server is enabled by default.  
*Example:*  
Device(config)# ip http secure-server |
| **Step 5** | `ip http secure-port port-number` | (Optional) Specifies the port number to be used for the HTTPS server. The default port number is 443. Valid options are 443 or any number in the range 1025 to 65535.  
*Example:*  
Device(config)# ip http secure-port 443 |
| **Step 6** | `ip http secure-ciphersuite {
[3des-ede-cbc-sha] [rc4-128-md5]
[rc4-128-sha] [des-cbc-sha]
}` | (Optional) Specifies the CipherSuites (encryption algorithms) to be used for encryption over the HTTPS connection. If you do not have a reason to specify a particularly |

---

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
### Configuring Secure Socket Layer HTTP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip http secure-ciphersuite rc4-128-md5</td>
<td>CipherSuite, you should allow the server and client to negotiate a CipherSuite that they both support. This is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> ip http secure-client-auth</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the HTTP server to request an X.509v3 certificate from the client for authentication during the connection process. The default is for the client to request a certificate from the server, but the server does not attempt to authenticate the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http secure-client-auth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> ip http secure-trustpoint name</td>
<td>Specifies the CA trustpoint to use to get an X.509v3 security certificate and to authenticate the client certificate connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http secure-trustpoint your_trustpoint</td>
<td>Note: Use of this command assumes you have already configured a CA trustpoint according to the previous procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> ip http path path-name</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets a base HTTP path for HTML files. The path specifies the location of the HTTP server files on the local system (usually located in system flash memory).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http path /your_server:80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> ip http access-class {ipv4 {access-list-number</td>
<td>access-list-name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http access-class ipv4 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> ip http max-connections value</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the maximum number of concurrent connections that are allowed to the HTTP server. We recommend that the value be at least 10 and not less. This is required for the UI to function as expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http max-connections 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong> ip http timeout-policy idle seconds life seconds requests value</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies how long a connection to the HTTP server can remain open under the defined circumstances:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http timeout-policy idle 120 life 240 requests 1</td>
<td>• <em>idle</em>: the maximum time period when no data is received or response data cannot be sent. The range is 1 to 600 seconds. The default is 180 seconds (3 minutes).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring the Secure HTTP Client

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a secure HTTP client:

**Before you begin**

The standard HTTP client and secure HTTP client are always enabled. A certificate authority is required for secure HTTP client certification. This procedure assumes that you have previously configured a CA trustpoint on the switch. If a CA trustpoint is not configured and the remote HTTPS server requires client authentication, connections to the secure HTTP client fail.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip http client secure-trustpoint name</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the CA trustpoint to be used if the remote HTTP server requests client authentication. Using this command assumes that you have already configured a CA trustpoint by using the previous procedure. The command is optional if client authentication is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip http client secure-trustpoint your_trustpoint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Step 13

Device(config)# end

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Purpose or Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>not needed or if a primary trustpoint has been configured.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ip http client secure-ciphersuite \{3des-ede-cbc-sha \[rc4-128-md5 \[rc4-128-sha \[des-cbc-sha \}
| (Optional) Specifies the CipherSuites (encryption algorithms) to be used for encryption over the HTTPS connection. If you do not have a reason to specify a particular CipherSuite, you should allow the server and client to negotiate a CipherSuite that they both support. This is the default. |
| end |
| Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

Step 4

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Step 5

Example:

Device(config)# ip http client secure-ciphersuite rc4-128-md5

Monitoring Secure HTTP Server and Client Status

To monitor the SSL secure server and client status, use the privileged EXEC commands in the following table.

Table 19: Commands for Displaying the SSL Secure Server and Client Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show ip http client secure status</td>
<td>Shows the HTTP secure client configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip http server secure status</td>
<td>Shows the HTTP secure server configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show running-config</td>
<td>Shows the generated self-signed certificate for secure HTTP connections.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional References for Secure Socket Layer HTTP

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certification Authority</td>
<td>Configuring Certification Authority Interoperability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Feature History for Secure Socket Layer HTTP

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Secure Socket Layer HTTP</td>
<td>Cisco's implementation of the secure HTTP server and secure HTTP client uses an implementation of SSL Version 3.0 with application-layer encryption. On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
IPv4 ACLs

Restrictions for IPv4 Access Control Lists

General Network Security

The following are restrictions for configuring network security with ACLs:

- Not all commands that accept a numbered ACL accept a named ACL. ACLs for packet filters and route filters on interfaces can use a name. VLAN maps also accept a name.

- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.

- Though visible in the command-line help strings, appletalk is not supported as a matching condition for the deny and permit MAC access-list configuration mode commands.

- ACL wildcard is not supported in downstream client policy.

- When you apply a scale ACL to an interface that does not program TCAM for a protocol and the ACLs that have been unloaded, it can impact the existing normal movement of traffic for other protocols. The restriction is applicable to IPv4, IPv6, and MAC address traffic.

IPv4 ACL Network Interfaces

The following restrictions apply to IPv4 ACLs to network interfaces:

- When controlling access to an interface, you can use a named or numbered ACL.

- If you apply an ACL to a Layer 2 interface that is a member of a VLAN, the Layer 2 (port) ACL takes precedence over an input Layer 3 ACL applied to the VLAN interface or a VLAN map applied to the VLAN.
• If you apply an ACL to a Layer 3 interface and routing is not enabled on the switch, the ACL only filters packets that are intended for the CPU, such as SNMP, Telnet, or web traffic.

• If the `preauth_ipv4_acl` ACL is configured to filter packets, the ACL is removed after authentication.

• You do not have to enable routing to apply ACLs to Layer 2 interfaces.

**MAC ACLs on a Layer 2 Interface**

After you create a MAC ACL, you can apply it to a Layer 2 interface to filter non-IP traffic coming in that interface. When you apply the MAC ACL, consider these guidelines:

• You can apply no more than one IP access list and one MAC access list to the same Layer 2 interface. The IP access list filters only IP packets, and the MAC access list filters non-IP packets.

• A Layer 2 interface can have only one MAC access list. If you apply a MAC access list to a Layer 2 interface that has a MAC ACL configured, the new ACL replaces the previously configured one.

**Note**
The `mac access-group` interface configuration command is only valid when applied to a physical Layer 2 interface. You cannot use the command on EtherChannel port channels.

**IP Access List Entry Sequence Numbering**

• This feature does not support dynamic, reflexive, or firewall access lists.

## Information About IPv4 Access Control Lists

### ACL Overview

Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through a device and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces. An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions that apply to packets. When a packet is received on an interface, the switch compares the fields in the packet against any applied ACLs to verify that the packet has the required permissions to be forwarded, based on the criteria specified in the access lists. One by one, it tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match decides whether the switch accepts or rejects the packets. Because the switch stops testing after the first match, the order of conditions in the list is critical. If no conditions match, the switch rejects the packet. If there are no restrictions, the switch forwards the packet; otherwise, the switch drops the packet. The switch can use ACLs on all packets it forwards.

You configure access lists on a device to provide basic security for your network. If you do not configure ACLs, all packets passing through the switch could be allowed onto all parts of the network. You can use ACLs to control which hosts can access different parts of a network or to decide which types of traffic are forwarded or blocked at device interfaces. For example, you can allow e-mail traffic to be forwarded but not Telnet traffic.
Access Control Entries

An ACL contains an ordered list of access control entries (ACEs). Each ACE specifies *permit* or *deny* and a set of conditions the packet must satisfy in order to match the ACE. The meaning of *permit* or *deny* depends on the context in which the ACL is used.

ACL Supported Types

The device supports IP ACLs and Ethernet (MAC) ACLs:

- IP ACLs filter IPv4 traffic, including TCP, User Datagram Protocol (UDP), Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), and Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP).
- Ethernet ACLs filter non-IP traffic.

This device also supports quality of service (QoS) classification ACLs.

Supported ACLs

The switch supports three types of ACLs to filter the traffic:

- Port ACLs access-control traffic entering a Layer 2 interface. You can apply port ACLs to a Layer 2 interface in each direction to each access list type—IPv4 and MAC.
- Router ACLs access-control traffic routed between VLANs and are applied to Layer 3 interfaces in a specific direction (inbound or outbound).

ACL Precedence

When VLAN maps, Port ACLs, and router ACLs are configured on the same switch, the filtering precedence, from greatest to least for ingress traffic is port ACL, VLAN map, and then router ACL. For egress traffic, the filtering precedence is router ACL, VLAN map, and then port ACL.

The following examples describe simple use cases:

- When both an input port ACL and a VLAN map are applied, incoming packets received on ports with a port ACL applied are filtered by the port ACL. Other packets are filtered by the VLAN map.
- When an input router ACL and input port ACL exist in a switch virtual interface (SVI), incoming packets received on ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.
- When an output router ACL and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.
- When a VLAN map, input router ACL, and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are only filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by both the VLAN map and the router ACL. Other packets are filtered only by the VLAN map.
- When a VLAN map, output router ACL, and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are only filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets...
are filtered by both the VLAN map and the router ACL. Other packets are filtered only by the VLAN map.

Port ACLs

Port ACLs are ACLs that are applied to Layer 2 interfaces on a switch. Port ACLs are supported on physical interfaces and on EtherChannel interfaces. Port ACLs can be applied to the interface in inbound direction. The following access lists are supported:

- Standard IP access lists using source addresses
- Extended IP access lists using source and destination addresses and optional protocol type information
- MAC extended access lists using source and destination MAC addresses and optional protocol type information

The switch examines ACLs on an interface and permits or denies packet forwarding based on how the packet matches the entries in the ACL. In this way, ACLs control access to a network or to part of a network.

Figure 15: Using ACLs to Control Traffic in a Network

This is an example of using port ACLs to control access to a network when all workstations are in the same VLAN. ACLs applied at the Layer 2 input would allow Host A to access the Human Resources network, but prevent Host B from accessing the same network. Port ACLs can only be applied to Layer 2 interfaces in the inbound direction.

When you apply a port ACL to a trunk port, the ACL filters traffic on all VLANs present on the trunk port. When you apply a port ACL to a port with voice VLAN, the ACL filters traffic on both data and voice VLANs.

With port ACLs, you can filter IP traffic by using IP access lists and non-IP traffic by using MAC addresses. You can filter both IP and non-IP traffic on the same Layer 2 interface by applying both an IP access list and a MAC access list to the interface.

Note

You cannot apply more than one IP access list and one MAC access list to a Layer 2 interface. If an IP access list or MAC access list is already configured on a Layer 2 interface and you apply a new IP access list or MAC access list to the interface, the new ACL replaces the previously configured one.
Router ACLs

You can apply router ACLs on switch virtual interfaces (SVIs), which are Layer 3 interfaces to VLANs; on physical Layer 3 interfaces; and on Layer 3 EtherChannel interfaces. You apply router ACLs on interfaces for specific directions (inbound or outbound). You can apply one router ACL in each direction on an interface.

The switch supports these access lists for IPv4 traffic:

- Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
- Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses and optional protocol type information for matching operations.

As with port ACLs, the switch examines ACLs associated with features configured on a given interface. As packets enter the switch on an interface, ACLs associated with all inbound features configured on that interface are examined. After packets are routed and before they are forwarded to the next hop, all ACLs associated with outbound features configured on the egress interface are examined.

ACLs permit or deny packet forwarding based on how the packet matches the entries in the ACL, and can be used to control access to a network or to part of a network.

VLAN Maps

VLAN ACLs or VLAN maps are used to control the network traffic within a VLAN. You can apply VLAN maps to all packets that are bridged within a VLAN in the switch or switch stack. VACLs are strictly for the security packet filtering and for redirecting traffic to specific physical interfaces. VACLs are not defined by direction (ingress or egress).

All non-IP protocols are access-controlled through MAC addresses and Ethertype using MAC VLAN maps. (IP traffic is not access-controlled by MAC VLAN maps.) You can enforce VLAN maps only on packets going through the switch; you cannot enforce VLAN maps on traffic between hosts on a hub or on another switch that is connected to this switch.

With VLAN maps, forwarding of packets is permitted or denied, based on the action specified in the map.

*Figure 16: Using VLAN Maps to Control Traffic*

This figure shows how a VLAN map is applied to prevent a specific type of traffic from Host A in VLAN 10 from being forwarded. You can apply only one VLAN map to a VLAN.

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic

IP packets can be fragmented as they cross the network. When this happens, only the fragment containing the beginning of the packet contains the Layer 4 information, such as TCP or UDP port numbers, ICMP type and code, and so on. All other fragments are missing this information.
Some access control entries (ACEs) do not check Layer 4 information and therefore can be applied to all packet fragments. ACEs that do test Layer 4 information cannot be applied in the standard manner to most of the fragments in a fragmented IP packet. When the fragment contains no Layer 4 information and the ACE tests some Layer 4 information, the matching rules are modified:

- Permit ACEs that check the Layer 3 information in the fragment (including protocol type, such as TCP, UDP, and so on) are considered to match the fragment regardless of what the missing Layer 4 information might have been.

### Note

For TCP ACEs with L4 Ops, the fragmented packets will be dropped per RFC 1858.

- Deny ACEs that check Layer 4 information never match a fragment unless the fragment contains Layer 4 information.

## Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs

An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions. One by one, the device tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match determines whether the device accepts or rejects the packet. Because the device stops testing after the first match, the order of the conditions is critical. If no conditions match, the device denies the packet.

The software supports these types of ACLs or access lists for IPv4:

- Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
- Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol-type information for finer granularity of control.

## IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features

The following ACL-related features are not supported:

- Non-IP protocol ACLs
- IP accounting
- Reflexive ACLs and dynamic ACLs are not supported.

## Access List Numbers

The number you use to denote your ACL shows the type of access list that you are creating.

This lists the access-list number and corresponding access list type and shows whether or not they are supported in the switch. The switch supports IPv4 standard and extended access lists, numbers 1 to 199 and 1300 to 2699.

### Table 20: Access List Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access List Number</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–99</td>
<td>IP standard access list</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs

When creating an ACL, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for all packets that it did not find a match for before reaching the end. With standard access lists, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address ACL specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

The device always rewrites the order of standard access lists so that entries with host matches and entries with matches having a don’t care mask of 0.0.0.0 are moved to the top of the list, above any entries with non-zero don’t care masks. Therefore, in show command output and in the configuration file, the ACEs do not necessarily appear in the order in which they were entered.

After creating a numbered standard IPv4 ACL, you can apply it to VLANs, to terminal lines, or to interfaces.

Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs

Although standard ACLs use only source addresses for matching, you can use extended ACL source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol type information for finer granularity of
control. When you are creating ACEs in numbered extended access lists, remember that after you create the ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot reorder the list or selectively add or remove ACEs from a numbered list.

The device does not support dynamic or reflexive access lists. It also does not support filtering based on the type of service (ToS) minimize-monetary-cost bit.

Some protocols also have specific parameters and keywords that apply to that protocol.

You can define an extended TCP, UDP, ICMP, IGMP, or other IP ACL. The device also supports these IP protocols:

---

**Note**

ICMP echo-reply cannot be filtered. All other ICMP codes or types can be filtered.

These IP protocols are supported:

- Authentication Header Protocol *(ahp)*
- Encapsulation Security Payload *(esp)*
- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol *(eigrp)*
- generic routing encapsulation *(gre)*
- Internet Control Message Protocol *(icmp)*
- Internet Group Management Protocol *(igmp)*
- any Interior Protocol *(ip)*
- IP in IP tunneling *(ipinip)*
- KA9Q NOS-compatible IP over IP tunneling *(nos)*
- Open Shortest Path First routing *(ospf)*
- Payload Compression Protocol *(pcp)*
- Protocol-Independent Multicast *(pim)*
- Transmission Control Protocol *(tcp)*
- User Datagram Protocol *(udp)*

---

**Named IPv4 ACLs**

You can identify IPv4 ACLs with an alphanumerical string (a name) rather than a number. You can use named ACLs to configure more IPv4 access lists in a device than if you were to use numbered access lists. If you identify your access list with a name rather than a number, the mode and command syntax are slightly different. However, not all commands that use IP access lists accept a named access list.

---

**Note**

The name you give to a standard or extended ACL can also be a number in the supported range of access list numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99. The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.
Consider these guidelines before configuring named ACLs:

- Numbered ACLs are also available.
- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.
- You can use standard or extended ACLs (named or numbered) in VLAN maps.

**ACL Logging**

The device software can provide logging messages about packets permitted or denied by a standard IP access list. That is, any packet that matches the ACL causes an informational logging message about the packet to be sent to the console. The level of messages logged to the console is controlled by the `logging console` commands controlling the syslog messages.

---

**Note**

ACL logging is only supported for RACL.

---

**Note**

Because routing is done in hardware and logging is done in software, if a large number of packets match a `permit` or `deny` ACE containing a `log` keyword, the software might not be able to match the hardware processing rate, and not all packets will be logged.

The first packet that triggers the ACL causes a logging message right away, and subsequent packets are collected over 5-minute intervals before they appear or logged. The logging message includes the access list number, whether the packet was permitted or denied, the source IP address of the packet, and the number of packets from that source permitted or denied in the prior 5-minute interval.

---

**Note**

The logging facility might drop some logging message packets if there are too many to be handled or if there is more than one logging message to be handled in 1 second. This behavior prevents the device from crashing due to too many logging packets. Therefore, the logging facility should not be used as a billing tool or an accurate source of the number of matches to an access list.

---

**Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs**

ACL processing is performed in hardware. If the hardware reaches its capacity to store ACL configurations, all packets on that interface are dropped.

---

**Note**

If an ACL configuration cannot be implemented in hardware due to an out-of-resource condition on a device or stack member, then only the traffic in that VLAN arriving on that device is affected.

For router ACLs, other factors can cause packets to be sent to the CPU:

- Using the `log` keyword
- Generating ICMP unreachable messages
When you enter the `show ip access-lists` privileged EXEC command, the match count displayed does not account for packets that are access controlled in hardware. Use the `show platform software fed switch { switch_num | active | standby } acl counters hardware` privileged EXEC command to obtain some basic hardware ACL statistics for switched and routed packets.

Router ACLs function as follows:

- The hardware controls permit and deny actions of standard and extended ACLs (input and output) for security access control.
- If `log` has not been specified, the flows that match a `deny` statement in a security ACL are dropped by the hardware if `ip unreachables` is disabled. The flows matching a `permit` statement are switched in hardware.
- Adding the `log` keyword to an ACE in a router ACL causes a copy of the packet to be sent to the CPU for logging only. If the ACE is a `permit` statement, the packet is still switched and routed in hardware.

### VLAN Map Configuration Guidelines

VLAN maps are the only way to control filtering within a VLAN. VLAN maps have no direction. To filter traffic in a specific direction by using a VLAN map, you need to include an ACL with specific source or destination addresses. If there is a match clause for that type of packet (IP or MAC) in the VLAN map, the default action is to drop the packet if the packet does not match any of the entries within the map. If there is no match clause for that type of packet, the default is to forward the packet.

The following are the VLAN map configuration guidelines:

- If there is no ACL configured to deny traffic on an interface and no VLAN map is configured, all traffic is permitted.
- Each VLAN map consists of a series of entries. The order of entries in an VLAN map is important. A packet that comes into the device is tested against the first entry in the VLAN map. If it matches, the action specified for that part of the VLAN map is taken. If there is no match, the packet is tested against the next entry in the map.
- If the VLAN map has at least one match clause for the type of packet (IP or MAC) and the packet does not match any of these match clauses, the default is to drop the packet. If there is no match clause for that type of packet in the VLAN map, the default is to forward the packet.
- Logging is not supported for VLAN maps.
- When a device has an IP access list or MAC access list applied to a Layer 2 interface, and you apply a VLAN map to a VLAN that the port belongs to, the port ACL takes precedence over the VLAN map.
- If a VLAN map configuration cannot be applied in hardware, all packets in that VLAN are dropped.

### VLAN Maps with Router ACLs

To access control both bridged and routed traffic, you can use VLAN maps only or a combination of router ACLs and VLAN maps. You can define router ACLs on both input and output routed VLAN interfaces, and you can define a VLAN map to access control the bridged traffic.

If a packet flow matches a VLAN-map deny clause in the ACL, regardless of the router ACL configuration, the packet flow is denied.
When you use router ACLs with VLAN maps, packets that require logging on the router ACLs are not logged if they are denied by a VLAN map.

If the VLAN map has a match clause for the type of packet (IP or MAC) and the packet does not match the type, the default is to drop the packet. If there is no match clause in the VLAN map, and no action specified, the packet is forwarded if it does not match any VLAN map entry.

**VLAN Maps and Router ACL Configuration Guidelines**

These guidelines are for configurations where you need to have an router ACL and a VLAN map on the same VLAN. These guidelines do not apply to configurations where you are mapping router ACLs and VLAN maps on different VLANs.

If you must configure a router ACL and a VLAN map on the same VLAN, use these guidelines for both router ACL and VLAN map configuration:

- You can configure only one VLAN map and one router ACL in each direction (input/output) on a VLAN interface.
- Whenever possible, try to write the ACL with all entries having a single action except for the final, default action of the other type. That is, write the ACL using one of these two forms:
  - permit... permit... permit... deny ip any any
  - or
  - deny... deny... deny... permit ip any any
- To define multiple actions in an ACL (permit, deny), group each action type together to reduce the number of entries.
- Avoid including Layer 4 information in an ACL; adding this information complicates the merging process. The best merge results are obtained if the ACLs are filtered based on IP addresses (source and destination) and not on the full flow (source IP address, destination IP address, protocol, and protocol ports). It is also helpful to use don’t care bits in the IP address, whenever possible.

If you need to specify the full-flow mode and the ACL contains both IP ACEs and TCP/UDP/ICMP ACEs with Layer 4 information, put the Layer 4 ACEs at the end of the list. This gives priority to the filtering of traffic based on IP addresses.

**Time Ranges for ACLs**

You can selectively apply extended ACLs based on the time of day and the week by using the `time-range` global configuration command. First, define a time-range name and set the times and the dates or the days of the week in the time range. Then enter the time-range name when applying an ACL to set restrictions to the access list. You can use the time range to define when the permit or deny statements in the ACL are in effect, for example, during a specified time period or on specified days of the week. The `time-range` keyword and argument are referenced in the named and numbered extended ACL task tables.

These are some benefits of using time ranges:
- You have more control over permitting or denying a user access to resources, such as an application (identified by an IP address/mask pair and a port number).
• You can control logging messages. ACL entries can be set to log traffic only at certain times of the day. Therefore, you can simply deny access without needing to analyze many logs generated during peak hours.

Time-based access lists trigger CPU activity because the new configuration of the access list must be merged with other features and the combined configuration loaded into the hardware memory. For this reason, you should be careful not to have several access lists configured to take affect in close succession (within a small number of minutes of each other.)

Note
The time range relies on the device system clock; therefore, you need a reliable clock source. We recommend that you use Network Time Protocol (NTP) to synchronize the device clock.

IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations

For inbound ACLs, after receiving a packet, the device checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the device continues to process the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the device discards the packet.

For outbound ACLs, after receiving and routing a packet to a controlled interface, the device checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the device sends the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the device discards the packet.

By default, the input interface sends ICMP Unreachable messages whenever a packet is discarded, regardless of whether the packet was discarded because of an ACL on the input interface or because of an ACL on the output interface. ICMP Unreachables are normally limited to no more than one every one-half second per input interface, but this can be changed by using the `ip icmp rate-limit unreachable` global configuration command.

When you apply an undefined ACL to an interface, the device acts as if the ACL has not been applied to the interface and permits all packets. Remember this behavior if you use undefined ACLs for network security.

How to Configure IPv4 Access Control Lists

Configuring IPv4 ACLs

These are the steps to use IP ACLs on the switch:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Create an ACL by specifying an access list number or name and the access conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Apply the ACL to interfaces or terminal lines. You can also apply standard and extended IP ACLs to VLAN maps.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating a Numbered Standard ACL

Follow these steps to create a numbered standard ACL:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>access-list access-list-number {deny</td>
<td>permit} source source-wildcard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# access-list 2 deny your_host</td>
<td>The <em>access-list-number</em> is a decimal number from 1 to 99 or 1300 to 1999. Enter <em>deny</em> or <em>permit</em> to specify whether to deny or permit access if conditions are matched. The <em>source</em> is the source address of the network or host from which the packet is being sent specified as:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- The keyword <em>any</em> as an abbreviation for <em>source</em> and <em>source-wildcard</em> of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source-wildcard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- The keyword <em>host</em> as an abbreviation for source and <em>source-wildcard</em> of source 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) The <em>source-wildcard</em> applies wildcard bits to the source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Logging is supported only on ACLs attached to Layer 3 interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
Creating a Numbered Extended ACL

Follow these steps to create a numbered extended ACL:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> access-list access-list-number {deny</td>
<td>permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit ip host 10.1.1.2 any precedence 0 tos 0 log</td>
<td>• The keyword any for 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 (any host).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The keyword host for a single host 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The other keywords are optional and have these meanings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• precedence—Enter to match packets with a precedence level specified as a number from 0 to 7 or by name: routine (0), priority (1), immediate (2), flash (3),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flash-override (4), critical (5), internet (6), network (7).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• fragments—Enter to check non-initial fragments.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• tos—Enter to match by type of service level, specified by a number from 0 to 15 or a name: normal (0), max-reliability (2), max-throughput (4), min-delay (8).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• time-range—Specify the time-range name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• dscp—Enter to match packets with the DSCP value specified by a number from 0 to 63, or use the question mark (?) to see a list of available values.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** If you enter a dscp value, you cannot enter tos or precedence. You can enter both a tos and a precedence value with no dscp.

---

**Step 4**

```bash
access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} tcp source source-wildcard [operator port] destination destination-wildcard [operator port] [established] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp] [flag]
```

Defines an extended TCP access list and the access conditions.

The parameters are the same as those described for an extended IPv4 ACL, with these exceptions:

(Optional) Enter an operator and port to compare source (if positioned after source wildcard or destination (if positioned after destination destination-wildcard) port. Possible operators include eq (equal), gt (greater than), lt (less than), neq (not equal), and range (inclusive range). Operators require a port number (range requires two port numbers separated by a space).

Enter the port number as a decimal number (from 0 to 65535) or the name of a TCP port. Use only TCP port numbers or names when filtering TCP.

The other optional keywords have these meanings:

• established—Enter to match an established connection. This has the same function as matching on the ack or rst flag.

Example:

```bash
Device(config)# access-list 101 permit tcp any any eq 500
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **flag**—Enter one of these flags to match by the specified TCP header bits: **ack** (acknowledge), **fin** (finish), **psh** (push), **rst** (reset), **syn** (synchronize), or **urg** (urgent). | **Step 5**

access-list access-list-number {deny | permit}
udp source source-wildcard [operator port]
destination destination-wildcard [operator port]
[precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments]
[time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]

**Example:**

Device(config)# access-list 101 permit udp any any eq 100

**(Optional) Defines an extended UDP access list and the access conditions.**

The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP except that the [operator [port]] port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the **flag** and **established** keywords are not valid for UDP.

| **Step 6**

access-list access-list-number {deny | permit}
icmp source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [icmp-type | [[icmp-type icmp-code]] | [icmp-message]] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]

**Example:**

Device(config)# access-list 101 permit icmp any any 200

**Defines an extended ICMP access list and the access conditions.**

The ICMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with the addition of the ICMP message type and code parameters. These optional keywords have these meanings:

- **icmp-type**—Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255.
- **icmp-code**—Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255.
- **icmp-message**—Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name.

| **Step 7**

access-list access-list-number {deny | permit}
igmp source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [igmp-type] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [fragments] [time-range time-range-name] [dscp dscp]

**Example:**

Device(config)# access-list 101 permit igmp any any 14

**(Optional) Defines an extended IGMP access list and the access conditions.**

The IGMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with this optional parameter.

- **igmp-type**—To match IGMP message type, enter a number from 0 to 15, or enter the message name: **dvmrp**, **host-query**, **host-report**, **pim**, or **trace**.

| **Step 8**

**end**

**Example:**

**Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.**
Creating Named Standard ACLs

Follow these steps to create a standard ACL using names:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> enable |
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device# configure terminal |
| Step 3 | ip access-list standard name | Defines a standard IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode.  
The name can be a number from 1 to 99.  
Example:  
Device(config)# ip access-list standard 20 |
| Step 4 | Use one of the following:  
- deny {source [source-wildcard] | host source | any} [log]  
- permit {source [source-wildcard] | host source | any} [log] | In access-list configuration mode, specify one or more conditions denied or permitted to decide if the packet is forwarded or dropped.  
Example:  
Device(config-std-nacl)# deny 192.168.0.0/16 0.0.255.255 255.255.0.0 0.0.255.255  
or  
Device(config-std-nacl)# permit 10.108.0.0 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 0.0.0.0 |
Creating Extended Named ACLs

Follow these steps to create an extended ACL using names:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip access-list extended name</td>
<td>Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode. The name can be a number from 100 to 199.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# ip access-list extended 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> {deny</td>
<td>permit} protocol {source [source-wildcard]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 0 any any</td>
<td>• host source—A source and source wildcard of source 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• host destination—A destination and destination wildcard of destination 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• any—A source and source wildcard or destination and destination wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When you are creating extended ACLs, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for everything if it did not find a match before reaching the end. For standard ACLs, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address access list specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

After you create an ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot selectively add ACL entries to a specific ACL. However, you can use `no permit` and `no deny` access-list configuration mode commands to remove entries from a named ACL.

Being able to selectively remove lines from a named ACL is one reason you might use named ACLs instead of numbered ACLs.

**What to do next**

After creating a named ACL, you can apply it to interfaces or to VLANs.

### Configuring Time Ranges for ACLs

Follow these steps to configure a time-range parameter for an ACL:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>time-range time-range-name</code></td>
<td>Assigns a meaningful name (for example, <code>workhours</code>) to the time range to be created, and enters time-range configuration mode. The name cannot contain a space or quotation mark and must begin with a letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# time-range workhours</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Use one of the following:</td>
<td>Specifies when the function it will be applied to is operational.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>absolute [start time date] [end time date]</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose

Command or Action

• **periodic** *day-of-the-week* *hh:mm* *to* *
  
  [day-of-the-week] *hh:mm*

• **periodic** *{weekdays | weekend | daily}*
  
  *hh:mm* *to* *hh:mm*

**Example:**

Device(config-time-range)# **absolute**

**start**

00:00 1 Jan 2006 **end**

23:59 1 Jan 2006

*or*

Device(config-time-range)# **periodic**

**weekdays** 8:00 **to** 12:00

**Step 5**

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config-time-range)# **end**

**Purpose**

• You can use only one **absolute** statement in the time range. If you configure more than one absolute statement, only the one configured last is executed.

• You can enter multiple **periodic** statements. For example, you could configure different hours for weekdays and weekends.

**What to do next**

Repeat the steps if you have multiple items that you want in effect at different times.

### Applying an IPv4 ACL to a Terminal Line

You can use numbered ACLs to control access to one or more terminal lines. You cannot apply named ACLs to lines. You must set identical restrictions on all the virtual terminal lines because a user can attempt to connect to any of them.

Follow these steps to restrict incoming and outgoing connections between a virtual terminal line and the addresses in an ACL:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; <strong>enable</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface

This section describes how to apply IPv4 ACLs to network interfaces. Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to control access to an interface:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> line [console</td>
<td>vty] line-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# line console 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> access-class access-list-number [in</td>
<td>out]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-line)# access-class 10 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits line configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-line)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
**Step 3** | interface interface-id
**Example:**
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Identifies a specific interface for configuration, and enters interface configuration mode.
The interface can be a Layer 2 interface (port ACL), or a Layer 3 interface (router ACL).

**Step 4** | ip access-group \{access-list-number \| name\} \{in \| out\}
**Example:**
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 2 in
Controls access to the specified interface.

**Step 5** | end
**Example:**
Device(config-if)# end
Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

### Creating Named MAC Extended ACLs

You can filter non-IPv4 traffic on a VLAN or on a Layer 2 interface by using MAC addresses and named MAC extended ACLs. The procedure is similar to that of configuring other extended named ACLs.

Follow these steps to create a named MAC extended ACL:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
**Step 1** | enable
**Example:**
Device> enable
Enables privileged EXEC mode.

  • Enter your password if prompted.

**Step 2** | configure terminal
**Example:**
Device# configure terminal
Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3** | mac access-list extended name
**Example:**
Device(config)# mac access-list extended mac1
Defines an extended MAC access list using a name.
### Applying a MAC ACL to a Layer 2 Interface

Follow these steps to apply a MAC access list to control access to a Layer 2 interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Enter your password if prompted.

---

### In extended MAC access-list configuration mode

In extended MAC access-list configuration mode, specifies to **permit** or **deny** any source MAC address, a source MAC address with a mask, or a specific **host** source MAC address and any destination MAC address, destination MAC address with a mask, or a specific destination MAC address.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ext-macl)# deny any any
```

or

```
Device(config-ext-macl)# permit any any
```

---

### Step 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| {deny | permit} {any | host source MAC address} {any | host destination MAC address} {any | destination MAC address mask} {type mask | lsap lsap mask | aarp | amber | dec-spanning | decnet-iv | diagnostic | dsm | etype-6000 | etype-8042 | lat | lavc-sca | mop-console | mop-dump | msdos | mumps | netbios | vines-echo | vines-ip | xns-idp | 0-65535} [cos cos]

(Optional) You can also enter these options:

- **type mask**—An arbitrary EtherType number of a packet with Ethernet II or SNAP encapsulation in decimal, hexadecimal, or octal with optional mask of don’t care bits applied to the EtherType before testing for a match.

  - Ex: `Deny any any etype-8042` to deny any source MAC address with mask and any destination MAC address with mask.

- **lsap lsap mask**—An LSAP number of a packet with IEEE 802.2 encapsulation in decimal, hexadecimal, or octal with optional mask of don’t care bits.

  - Ex: `Deny any any lsap 0-65535 lsap-mask` to deny any source MAC address with mask and any destination MAC address with mask.


  - Ex: `Deny any any decnet-iv` to deny any source MAC address with mask and any destination MAC address with mask.

- **cos cos**—An IEEE 802.1Q cost of service number from 0 to 7 used to set priority.

  - Ex: `Deny any any cos 0-7` to deny any source MAC address with mask and any destination MAC address with mask.

---

### Step 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exits extended MAC access-list configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Device(config-ext-macl)# end
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

**configure terminal**

*Example:*

Device# configure terminal

**Step 3**

**interface interface-id**

*Example:*

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2

**Step 4**

**mac access-group {name} {in | out}**

*Example:*

Device(config-if)# mac access-group mac1 in

**Step 5**

**end**

*Example:*

Device(config-if)# end

**Step 6**

**show mac access-group [interface interface-id]**

*Example:*

Device# show mac access-group interface gigabitethernet1/0/2

---

After receiving a packet, the device checks it against the inbound ACL. If the ACL permits it, the device continues to process the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the device discards it. When you apply an undefined ACL to an interface, the device acts as if the ACL has not been applied and permits all packets. Remember this behavior if you use undefined ACLs for network security.

### Configuring VLAN Maps

To create a VLAN map and apply it to one or more VLANs, perform these steps:
Before you begin

Create the standard or extended IPv4 ACLs or named MAC extended ACLs that you want to apply to the VLAN.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>vlan access-map name [number]</td>
<td>Creates a VLAN map, and give it a name and (optionally) a number. The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>number is the sequence number of the entry within the map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan access-map map1 20</td>
<td>When you create VLAN maps with the same name, numbers are assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sequentially in increments of 10. When modifying or deleting maps,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you can enter the number of the map entry that you want to modify or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>delete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VLAN maps do not use the specific permit or deny keywords. To deny a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>packet by using VLAN maps, create an ACL that would match the packet,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and set the action to drop. A permit in the ACL counts as a match. A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deny in the ACL means no match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Entering this command changes to access-map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>match {ip</td>
<td>mac} address {name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>more standard or extended access lists. Note that packets are only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip2</td>
<td>matched against access lists of the correct protocol type. IP packets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>are matched against standard or extended IP access lists. Non-IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>packets are only matched against named MAC extended access lists.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Applying a VLAN Map to a VLAN

To apply a VLAN map to one or more VLANs, perform these steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If the VLAN map is configured with a match clause for a type of packet (IP or MAC) and the map action is drop, all packets that match the type are dropped. If the VLAN map has no match clause, and the configured action is drop, all IP and Layer 2 packets are dropped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> Enter one of the following commands to specify an IP packet or a non-IP packet (with only a known MAC address) and to match the packet against one or more ACLs (standard or extended):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• action { forward}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-access-map)# action forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• action { drop}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-access-map)# action drop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the action for the map entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-access-map)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exits access-map configuration mode. and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> vlan filter mapname vlan-list list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan filter map vlan-list 20-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies the VLAN map to one or more VLAN IDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The list can be a single VLAN ID (22), a consecutive list (10-22), or a string of VLAN IDs (12, 22, 30). Spaces around the comma and hyphen are optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applying a VLAN Map to a VLAN

To apply a VLAN map to one or more VLANs, perform these steps.
### Monitoring IPv4 ACLs

You can monitor IPv4 ACLs by displaying the ACLs that are configured on the device, and displaying the ACLs that have been applied to interfaces and VLANs.

When you use the `ip access-group` interface configuration command to apply ACLs to a Layer 2 or 3 interface, you can display the access groups on the interface. You can also display the MAC ACLs applied to a Layer 2 interface. You can use the privileged EXEC commands as described in this table to display this information.

**Table 21: Commands for Displaying Access Lists and Access Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`show access-lists [number</td>
<td>name]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`show ip access-lists [number</td>
<td>name]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Displays detailed configuration and status of an interface. If IP is enabled on the interface and ACLs have been applied by using the <code>ip access-group</code> interface configuration command, the access groups are included in the display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Applies the VLAN map to one or more VLAN IDs. The list can be a single VLAN ID (22), a consecutive list (10-22), or a string of VLAN IDs (12, 22, 30). Spaces around the comma and hyphen are optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>vlan filter mapname vlan-list list</code></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command and Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show running-config [interface interface-id]</code></td>
<td>Displays the contents of the configuration file for the device or the specified interface, including all configured MAC and IP access lists and which access groups are applied to an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show mac access-group [interface interface-id]</code></td>
<td>Displays MAC access lists applied to all Layer 2 interfaces or the specified Layer 2 interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Configuration Examples for IPv4 Access Control Lists

### ACLs in a Small Networked Office

*Figure 17: Using Router ACLs to Control Traffic*

This shows a small networked office environment with routed Port 2 connected to Server A, containing benefits and other information that all employees can access, and routed Port 1 connected to Server B, containing confidential payroll data. All users can access Server A, but Server B has restricted access.

Use router ACLs to do this in one of two ways:

- Create a standard ACL, and filter traffic coming to the server from Port 1.
- Create an extended ACL, and filter traffic coming from the server into Port 1.
Examples: ACLs in a Small Networked Office

This example uses a standard ACL to filter traffic coming into Server B from a port, permitting traffic only from Accounting’s source addresses 172.20.128.64 to 172.20.128.95. The ACL is applied to traffic coming out of routed Port 1 from the specified source address.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 6 permit 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# exit
Device# show access-lists
Standard IP access list 6
   10 permit 172.20.128.64, wildcard bits 0.0.0.31

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 6 out
Device(config-if)# end
```

This example uses an extended ACL to filter traffic coming from Server B into a port, permitting traffic from any source address (in this case Server B) to only the Accounting destination addresses 172.20.128.64 to 172.20.128.95. The ACL is applied to traffic going into routed Port 1, permitting it to go only to the specified destination addresses. Note that with extended ACLs, you must enter the protocol (IP) before the source and destination information.

```
Device(config)# access-list 106 permit ip any 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# exit
Device# show access-lists
Extended IP access list 106
   10 permit ip any 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 106 in
Device(config-if)# end
```

Example: Numbered ACLs

In this example, network 10.0.0.0 is a Class A network whose second octet specifies a subnet; that is, its subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. The third and fourth octets of a network 10.0.0.0 address specify a particular host. Using access list 2, the switch accepts one address on subnet 48 and reject all others on that subnet. The last line of the list shows that the switch accepts addresses on all other network 10.0.0.0 subnets. The ACL is applied to packets entering a port.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 2 permit 10.48.0.3
Device(config)# access-list 2 deny 10.48.0.0 0.0.255.255
Device(config)# access-list 2 permit 10.0.0.0 0.0.255.255
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 2 in
```
Examples: Extended ACLs

In this example, the first line permits any incoming TCP connections with destination ports greater than 1023. The second line permits incoming TCP connections to the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) port of host 172.16.0.0. The third line permits incoming ICMP messages for error feedback.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 gt 1023
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 172.16.1.2 eq 25
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit icmp any any
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in
Device(config-if)# end
```

In this example, suppose that you have a network connected to the Internet, and you want any host on the network to be able to form TCP connections to any host on the Internet. However, you do not want IP hosts to be able to form TCP connections to hosts on your network, except to the mail (SMTP) port of a dedicated mail host.

SMTP uses TCP port 25 on one end of the connection and a random port number on the other end. The same port numbers are used throughout the life of the connection. Mail packets coming in from the Internet have a destination port of 25. Because the secure system of the network always accepts mail connections on port 25, the incoming services are separately controlled.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq 23
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq 25
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in
Device(config-if)# end
```

In this example, the network is a Class B network with the address 172.16.0.0, and the mail host address is 172.16.1.2. The `established` keyword is used only for the TCP to show an established connection. A match occurs if the TCP datagram has the ACK or RST bits set, which show that the packet belongs to an existing connection. Gigabit Ethernet interface 1 is the interface that connects the device to the Internet.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 established
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 172.16.1.2 eq 25
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in
Device(config-if)# end
```

Examples: Named ACLs

Creating named standard and extended ACLs

This example creates a standard ACL named `internet_filter` and an extended ACL named `marketing_group`. The `internet_filter` ACL allows all traffic from the source address 10.2.3.4.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
```
Device(config)# ip access-list standard Internet_filter
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 10.2.3.4
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end

The marketing_group ACL allows any TCP Telnet traffic to the destination address and wildcard 172.16.0.0 through 172.16.255.255 with a destination port less than 1024, denies any other IP traffic, and provides a log of the result.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended marketing_group
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq telnet
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit icmp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny udp any 172.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 lt 1024
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip any any log
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end

The Internet_filter ACL is applied to outgoing traffic and the marketing_group ACL is applied to incoming traffic on a Layer 3 port.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet3/0/2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.0.5.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip access-group Internet_filter out
Device(config-if)# ip access-group marketing_group in
Device(config-if)# end

Deleting Individual ACEs from Named ACLs

This example shows how to delete individual ACEs from the named access list border-list:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended border-list
Device(config-ext-nacl)# no permit ip host 10.1.1.3 any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end

Examples: ACL Logging

Two variations of logging are supported on router ACLs. The log keyword sends an informational logging message to the console about the packet that matches the entry; the log-input keyword includes the input interface in the log entry.

In this example, standard named access list stan1 denies traffic from 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255, allows traffic from all other sources, and includes the log keyword.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list standard stan1
Device(config-std-nacl)# deny 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 log
Device(config-std-nacl)# permit any log
Device(config-std-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group stan1 in
Device(config-if)# end
Device# show logging

Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 flushes, 0 overruns)
  Console logging: level debugging, 37 messages logged
  Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged
  Buffer logging: level debugging, 37 messages logged
  File logging: disabled
  Trap logging: level debugging, 39 message lines logged

Log Buffer (4096 bytes):
00:00:48: NTP: authentication delay calculation problems
<output truncated>
00:09:34:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGS:list stan1 permitted 0.0.0.0 1 packet
00:09:59:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGS:list stan1 denied 10.1.1.15 1 packet
00:10:11:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGS:list stan1 permitted 0.0.0.0 1 packet

This example is a named extended access list *ext1* that permits ICMP packets from any source to 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 and denies all UDP packets.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended ext1
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit icmp any 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 log
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny udp any any log
Device(config-std-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# ip access-group ext1 in
Device(config-if)# end

This is an example of a log for an extended ACL:

01:24:23:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 permitted icmp 10.1.1.15 -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 1 packet
01:25:14:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 permitted icmp 10.1.1.15 -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 7 packets
01:26:12:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 denied udp 0.0.0.0(0) -> 255.255.255.255(0), 1 packet
01:31:33:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list ext1 denied udp 0.0.0.0(0) -> 255.255.255.255(0), 8 packets

Note that all logging entries for IP ACLs start with %SEC-6-IPACCESSLOG with minor variations in format depending on the kind of ACL and the access entry that has been matched.

This is an example of an output message when the **log-input** keyword is entered:

00:04:21:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list inputlog permitted icmp 10.1.1.10 (Vlan1 0001.42ef.a400) -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 1 packet

A log message for the same sort of packet using the **log** keyword does not include the input interface information:

00:05:47:%SEC-6-IPACCESSLOGDP:list inputlog permitted icmp 10.1.1.10 -> 10.1.1.61 (0/0), 1 packet
Example: ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic

Consider access list 102, configured with these commands, applied to three fragmented packets:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.1 eq smtp
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any host 10.1.1.2 eq telnet
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.2
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any any
Device(config)# end

In the first and second ACEs in the examples, the eq keyword after the destination address means to test for the TCP-destination-port well-known numbers equaling Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and Telnet, respectively.

- Packet A is a TCP packet from host 10.2.2.2., port 65000, going to host 10.1.1.1 on the SMTP port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the first ACE (a permit) as if it were a complete packet because all Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments also match the first ACE, even though they do not contain the SMTP port information, because the first ACE only checks Layer 3 information when applied to fragments. The information in this example is that the packet is TCP and that the destination is 10.1.1.1.

- Packet B is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.2 on the Telnet port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the second ACE (a deny) because all Layer 3 and Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments in the packet do not match the second ACE because they are missing Layer 4 information. Instead, they match the third ACE (a permit). Because the first fragment was denied, host 10.1.1.2 cannot reassemble a complete packet, so packet B is effectively denied. However, the later fragments that are permitted will consume bandwidth on the network and resources of host 10.1.1.2 as it tries to reassemble the packet.

- Fragmented packet C is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.3, port ftp. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the fourth ACE (a deny). All other fragments also match the fourth ACE because that ACE does not check any Layer 4 information and because Layer 3 information in all fragments shows that they are being sent to host 10.1.1.3, and the earlier permit ACEs were checking different hosts.

Examples: Using Time Ranges with ACLs

This example shows how to verify after you configure time ranges for workhours and to configure January 1, 2006, as a company holiday.

Device# show time-range

time-range entry: new_year_day_2003 (inactive)
  absolute start 00:00 01 January 2006 end 23:59 01 January 2006

time-range entry: workhours (inactive)
  periodic weekdays 8:00 to 12:00
  periodic weekdays 13:00 to 17:00
To apply a time range, enter the time-range name in an extended ACL that can implement time ranges. This example shows how to create and verify extended access list 188 that denies TCP traffic from any source to any destination during the defined holiday times and permits all TCP traffic during work hours.

Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 188 deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006
Device(config)# access-list 188 permit tcp any any time-range workhours
Device(config)# exit
Device# show access-lists

Extended IP access list 188
  10 deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006 (inactive)
  20 permit tcp any any time-range workhours (inactive)

This example uses named ACLs to permit and deny the same traffic.

Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended deny_access
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# ip access-list extended may_access
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any time-range workhours
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end
Device# show ip access-lists

Extended IP access list lpip_default
  10 permit ip any any
Extended IP access list deny_access
  10 deny tcp any any time-range new_year_day_2006 (inactive)
Extended IP access list may_access
  10 permit tcp any any time-range workhours (inactive)

**Examples: Time Range Applied to an IP ACL**

This example denies HTTP traffic on IP on Monday through Friday between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m (18:00). The example allows UDP traffic only on Saturday and Sunday from noon to 8:00 p.m. (20:00).

Device# enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# time-range no-http
Device(config)# periodic weekdays 8:00 to 18:00
Device(config)# time-range udp-yes
Device(config)# periodic weekend 12:00 to 20:00
Device(config-ext-nacl)# ip access-list extended strict
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any eq www time-range no-http
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit udp any any time-range udp-yes
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group strict in
Device(config-if)# end
Examples: Including Comments in ACLs

You can use the `remark` keyword to include comments (remarks) about entries in any IP standard or extended ACL. The remarks make the ACL easier for you to understand and scan. Each remark line is limited to 100 characters.

The remark can go before or after a permit or deny statement. You should be consistent about where you put the remark so that it is clear which remark describes which permit or deny statement. For example, it would be confusing to have some remarks before the associated permit or deny statements and some remarks after the associated statements.

To include a comment for IP numbered standard or extended ACLs, use the `access-list` `access-list number` `remark` `remark` `global configuration` command. To remove the remark, use the `no` form of this command.

In this example, the workstation that belongs to user1 is allowed access, and the workstation that belongs to user2 is not allowed access:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Permit only user1 workstation through
Device(config)# access-list 1 permit 171.69.2.88
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Do not allow user2 through
Device(config)# access-list 1 deny 171.69.3.13
Device(config)# end
```

For an entry in a named IP ACL, use the `remark` access-list configuration command. To remove the remark, use the `no` form of this command.

In this example, the subnet1 subnet is not allowed to use outbound Telnet:

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended telnetting
Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark Do not allow subnet1 subnet to telnet out
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp host 171.69.2.88 any eq telnet
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end
```

Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Deny a Packet

This example shows how to create an ACL and a VLAN map to deny a packet. In the first map, any packets that match the `ip1` ACL (TCP packets) would be dropped. You first create the `ip1` ACL to permit any TCP packet and no other packets. Because there is a match clause for IP packets in the VLAN map, the default action is to drop any IP packet that does not match any of the match clauses.

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended ip1
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 10
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip1
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
Device(config-access-map)# end
```
Example: Creating an ACL and a VLAN Map to Permit a Packet

This example shows how to create a VLAN map to permit a packet. ACL ip2 permits UDP packets and any packets that match the ip2 ACL are forwarded. In this map, any IP packets that did not match any of the previous ACLs (that is, packets that are not TCP packets or UDP packets) would get dropped.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended ip2
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit udp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 20
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address ip2
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# exit

Example: Default Action of Dropping IP Packets and Forwarding MAC Packets

In this example, the VLAN map has a default action of drop for IP packets and a default action of forward for MAC packets. Used with standard ACL 101 and extended named access lists igmp-match and tcp-match, the map will have the following results:

- Forward all UDP packets
- Drop all IGMP packets
- Forward all TCP packets
- Drop all other IP packets
- Forward all non-IP packets

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# access-list 101 permit udp any any
Device(config)# ip access-list extended igmp-match
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit igmp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# action forward
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-ip-default 10
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address 101
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-ip-default 20
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address igmp-match
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-ip-default 30
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address tcp-match
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Example: Default Action of Dropping MAC Packets and Forwarding IP Packets

In this example, the VLAN map has a default action of drop for MAC packets and a default action of forward for IP packets. Used with MAC extended access lists **good-hosts** and **good-protocols**, the map will have the following results:

- Forward MAC packets from hosts 0000.0c00.0111 and 0000.0c00.0211
- Forward MAC packets with decnet-iv or vines-ip protocols
- Drop all other non-IP packets
- Forward all IP packets

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# mac access-list extended good-hosts
Device(config-ext-macl)# permit host 000.0c00.0111 any
Device(config-ext-macl)# permit host 000.0c00.0211 any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# action forward
Device(config-ext-macl)# mac access-list extended good-protocols
Device(config-ext-macl)# permit any any vines-ip
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-mac-default 10
Device(config-access-map)# match mac address good-hosts
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-mac-default 20
Device(config-access-map)# match mac address good-protocols
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# end
```

Example: Default Action of Dropping All Packets

In this example, the VLAN map has a default action of drop for all packets (IP and non-IP). Used with access lists **tcp-match** and **good-hosts** from Examples 2 and 3, the map will have the following results:

- Forward all TCP packets
- Forward MAC packets from hosts 0000.0c00.0111 and 0000.0c00.0211
- Drop all other IP packets
- Drop all other MAC packets

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-all-default 10
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address tcp-match
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Device(config)# vlan access-map drop-all-default 20
Device(config-access-map)# match mac address good-hosts
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# end
```
In a wiring closet configuration, routing might not be enabled on the switch. In this configuration, the switch can still support a VLAN map and a QoS classification ACL. Assume that Host X and Host Y are in different VLANs and are connected to wiring closet switches A and C. Traffic from Host X to Host Y is eventually being routed by Switch B, a Layer 3 switch with routing enabled. Traffic from Host X to Host Y can be access-controlled at the traffic entry point, Switch A.

If you do not want HTTP traffic switched from Host X to Host Y, you can configure a VLAN map on Switch A to drop all HTTP traffic from Host X (IP address 10.1.1.32) to Host Y (IP address 10.1.1.34) at Switch A and not bridge it to Switch B.

First, define the IP access list `http` that permits (matches) any TCP traffic on the HTTP port.

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended http
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp host 10.1.1.32 host 10.1.1.34 eq www
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end
```

Next, create VLAN access map `map2` so that traffic that matches the `http` access list is dropped and all other IP traffic is forwarded.

```plaintext
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# vlan access-map map2 10
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address http
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
Device(config-access-map)# exit
Device(config)# ip access-list extended match_all
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```
Device(config)# vlan access-map map2 20
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address match_all
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# end

Then, apply VLAN access map `map2` to VLAN 1.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# vlan filter map2 vlan 1
Device(config)# end

**Example: Restricting Access to a Server on Another VLAN**

*Figure 19: Restricting Access to a Server on Another VLAN*

You can restrict access to a server on another VLAN. For example, server 10.1.1.100 in VLAN 10 needs to have access denied to these hosts:

- Hosts in subnet 10.1.2.0/8 in VLAN 20 should not have access.
- Hosts 10.1.1.4 and 10.1.1.8 in VLAN 10 should not have access.

**Example: Denying Access to a Server on Another VLAN**

This example shows how to deny access to a server on another VLAN by creating the VLAN map `SERVER1` that denies access to hosts in subnet 10.1.2.0/8, host 10.1.1.4, and host 10.1.1.8 and permits other IP traffic. The final step is to apply the map `SERVER1` to VLAN 10.

Define the IP ACL that will match the correct packets.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended SERVER1_ACL
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip 10.1.2.0 0.0.0.255 host 10.1.1.100
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 10.1.1.4 host 10.1.1.100
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 10.1.1.8 host 10.1.1.100
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end
Define a VLAN map using this ACL that will drop IP packets that match SERVER1_ACL and forward IP packets that do not match the ACL.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# vlan access-map SERVER1_MAP
Device(config-access-map)# match ip address SERVER1_ACL
Device(config-access-map)# action drop
Device(config)# vlan access-map SERVER1_MAP 20
Device(config-access-map)# action forward
Device(config-access-map)# end
```

Apply the VLAN map to VLAN 10.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# vlan filter SERVER1_MAP vlan-list 10
Device(config)# end
```

### Additional References for IPv4 Access Control Lists

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 ACLs</td>
<td>IPv6 ACLs chapter of the Security Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Technical Assistance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feature History for IPv4 Access Control Lists

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.
This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using ACLs. Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through device and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IPv4 Access Control Lists</td>
<td>This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using ACLs. Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through device and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
IPv6 ACLs

- Restrictions for IPv6 ACLs, on page 339
- Information About IPv6 ACLs, on page 340
- How to Configure an IPv6 ACL, on page 342
- Monitoring IPv6 ACLs, on page 348
- Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL, on page 348
- Feature History for IPv6 ACLs, on page 350

Restrictions for IPv6 ACLs

IPv6 supports only named ACLs. With IPv4 ACLs, you can configure standard and extended numbered IP ACLs, named IP ACLs, and MAC ACLs.

The switch supports most Cisco IOS-supported IPv6 ACLs with some exceptions:

- The switch does not support matching on these keywords: flowlabel, routing header, and undetermined-transport.
- The switch does not support reflexive ACLs (the reflect keyword).
- The switch does not apply MAC-based ACLs on IPv6 frames.
- When configuring an ACL, there is no restriction on keywords that are entered in the ACL, regardless of whether they are supported or not on the platform. When you apply the ACL to an interface that requires hardware forwarding (physical ports or SVIs), the switch checks to determine whether ACL can be supported on the interface or not. If the ACL is not supported on the interface, the ACL is rejected.
- If an ACL is applied to an interface and you attempt to add an access control entry (ACE) with an unsupported keyword, the switch does not allow the ACE to be added to the ACL that is currently attached to the interface.
- When you apply a scale ACL to an interface that does not program TCAM for a protocol and the ACLs that have been unloaded, it can impact the existing normal movement of traffic for other protocols. The restriction is applicable to IPv4, IPv6, and MAC address traffic.
Information About IPv6 ACLs

The following sections provide information about IPv6 ACLs.

IPv6 ACL Overview

An access control list (ACL) is a set of rules that are used to limit access to a particular interface. ACLs are configured on the device and applied to the management interface and to any of the dynamic interfaces.

You can also create a preauthentication ACL for web authentication. Such an ACL is used to allow certain types of traffic before authentication is complete.

IPv6 ACLs support the same options as IPv4 ACLs including source, destination, source, and destination ports.

Supported ACLs

The switch supports three types of ACLs to filter the traffic:

- Port ACLs access-control traffic entering a Layer 2 interface. You can apply port ACLs to a Layer 2 interface in each direction to each access list type—IPv4 and MAC.
- Router ACLs access-control traffic routed between VLANs and are applied to Layer 3 interfaces in a specific direction (inbound or outbound).

Types of ACL

The following sections provide information on the types of ACL:

Per-User IPv6 ACL

For the per-user ACL, the full access control entries (ACE) as the text strings are configured on the Cisco Secure Access Control Server (Cisco Secure ACS).

Filter ID IPv6 ACL

For the filter-Id ACL, the full ACEs and the acl name(filter-id) is configured on the device and only the filter-id is configured on the Cisco Secure ACS.

ACL Precedence

When Port ACLs, and router ACLs are configured on the same switch, the filtering precedence, from greatest to least for ingress traffic is port ACL, and then router ACL. For egress traffic, the filtering precedence is router ACL, and then port ACL.

The following examples describe simple use cases:

- When an input router ACL and input port ACL exist in a switch virtual interface (SVI), incoming packets that are received on ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on other ports are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.
• When an output router ACL and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets that are received on
the ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are
filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.

VLAN Maps

VLAN ACLs or VLAN maps are used to control the network traffic within a VLAN. You can apply VLAN
maps to all packets that are bridged within a VLAN in the switch or switch stack. VACLs are strictly for the
security packet filtering and for redirecting traffic to specific physical interfaces. VACLs are not defined by
direction (ingress or egress).

All non-IP protocols are access-controlled through MAC addresses and Ethertype using MAC VLAN maps.
(IP traffic is not access-controlled by MAC VLAN maps.) You can enforce VLAN maps only on packets
going through the switch; you cannot enforce VLAN maps on traffic between hosts on a hub or on another
switch that is connected to this switch.

With VLAN maps, forwarding of packets is permitted or denied, based on the action specified in the map.

Figure 20: Using VLAN Maps to Control Traffic

This figure shows how a VLAN map is applied to prevent a specific type of traffic from Host A in VLAN 10
from being forwarded. You can apply only one VLAN map to a VLAN.

Interactions with Other Features and Switches

• If an IPv6 router ACL is configured to deny a packet, the packet is not routed. A copy of the packet is
sent to the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) queue to generate an ICMP unreachable message
for the frame.

• If a bridged frame is to be dropped due to a port ACL, the frame is not bridged.

• You can create both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs on a switch or switch stack, and you can apply both IPv4 and
IPv6 ACLs to the same interface. Each ACL must have a unique name; an error message appears if you
try to use a name that is already configured.

You use different commands to create IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs and to attach IPv4 or IPv6 ACLs to the same
Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface. If you use the wrong command to attach an ACL (for example, an IPv4
command to attach an IPv6 ACL), you receive an error message.

• You cannot use MAC ACLs to filter IPv6 frames. MAC ACLs can only filter non-IP frames.

• If the hardware memory is full, packets are dropped on the interface and an unload error message is
logged.
If the hardware memory is full, for any additional configured ACLs, packets are dropped to the CPU, and the ACLs are applied in software. When the hardware is full a message is printed to the console indicating the ACL has been unloaded and the packets will be dropped on the interface.

How to Configure an IPv6 ACL

The following sections display information on how to configure an IPv6 ACL.

Default Configuration for IPv6 ACLs

The default IPv6 ACL configuration is as follows:

```
Device# show access-lists preauth_ipv6_acl
IPv6 access list preauth_ipv6_acl (per-user)
permit udp any any eq domain sequence 10
permit tcp any any eq domain sequence 20
permit icmp any any nd-ns sequence 30
permit icmp any any nd-na sequence 40
permit icmp any any router-solicitation sequence 50
permit icmp any any router-advertisement sequence 60
permit icmp any any redirect sequence 70
permit udp any eq 547 any eq 546 sequence 80
permit udp any eq 546 any eq 547 sequence 90
deny ipv6 any any sequence 100
```

Configuring IPv6 ACLs

To filter IPv6 traffic, perform this procedure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>ipv6 access-list {list-name</td>
<td>log-update threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# ipv6 access-list example_acl_list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>{deny</td>
<td>permit} protocol {source-ipv6-prefix/ prefix-length</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IPv6 ACLs

#### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`source-ipv6-address{ [ operator [ port-number ]</td>
<td>host destination-ipv6-address{ [ operator [ port-number ] ] [ dscp value ] [ fragments ] [ log ] [ log-input ] [ sequence value ] [ time-range name ] ]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <code>source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</code> or <code>destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</code> is the source or destination IPv6 network or class of networks for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal and using 16-bit values between colons (see RFC 2373).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter <code>any</code> as an abbreviation for the IPv6 prefix <code>::/0</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For <code>host</code> <code>source-ipv6-address</code> or <code>destination-ipv6-address</code>, enter the source or destination IPv6 host address for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) For operator, specify an operand that compares the source or destination ports of the specified protocol. Operands are <code>lt</code> (less than), <code>gt</code> (greater than), <code>eq</code> (equal), <code>neq</code> (not equal), and <code>range</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the operator follows the <code>source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</code> argument, it must match the source port. If the operator follows the <code>destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</code> argument, it must match the destination port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) The <code>port-number</code> is a decimal number from 0 to 65535 or the name of a TCP or UDP port. You can use TCP port names only when filtering TCP. You can use UDP port names only when filtering UDP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Enter <code>dscp</code> value to match a differentiated services code point value against the traffic class value in the Traffic Class field of each IPv6 packet header. The acceptable range is from 0 to 63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Enter <code>fragments</code> to check noninitial fragments. This keyword is visible only if the protocol is <code>ipv6</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit tcp 2001:DB8:0300:0201::/32 eq telnet any

---

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches) 343
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <strong>log</strong> to cause an logging message to be sent to the console about the packet that matches the entry. Enter <strong>log-input</strong> to include the input interface in the log entry. Logging is supported only for router ACLs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <strong>sequence value</strong> to specify the sequence number for the access list statement. The acceptable range is from 1 to 4,294,967,295.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) Enter <strong>time-range name</strong> to specify the time range that applies to the deny or permit statement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Step 5

```
{deny | permit} tcp
{source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host source-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | any | host destination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] [ack] [dscp value] [established] [fin] [log] [log-input] [neq {port | protocol}] [psh] [range {port | protocol}] [rst] [sequence value] [syn] [time-range name] [urg]
```

**Example:**
```
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# deny tcp host 2001:DB8:1::1 any log-input
```

Specifies permit or deny conditions for an IPv6 ACL.

Enter `tcp` for Transmission Control Protocol. The parameters are the same as those described in Step 3a, with these additional optional parameters:

• **ack**: Acknowledgment bit set.

• **established**: An established connection. A match occurs if the TCP datagram has the ACK or RST bits set.

• **fin**: Finished bit set; no more data from sender.

• **neq**: Matches only packets that are not on a given port number.

• **psh**—Push function bit set.

• **range**: Matches only packets in the port number range.

• **rst**: Reset bit set.

• **syn**: Synchronize bit set.

• **urg**: Urgent pointer bit set.

#### Step 6

**Example:**
```
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# end
```

Exits IPv6 access list configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Attaching an IPv6 ACL to an Interface

You can apply an ACL to outbound or inbound traffic on Layer 3 interfaces, or to inbound traffic on Layer 2 interfaces. You can also apply ACLs only to inbound management traffic on Layer 3 interfaces.

Follow these steps to control access to an interface.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Identifies a Layer 2 interface (for port ACLs) or Layer 3 interface (for router ACLs) on which to apply an access list, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> no switchport</td>
<td>Returns the interface to the routed-interface status and erases all further Layer 2 configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# no switchport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> ipv6 address ipv6-address</td>
<td>Configures an IPv6 address on a Layer 3 interface (for router ACLs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8::1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> ipv6 traffic-filter access-list-name {in</td>
<td>out}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 traffic-filter acl1 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-ipv6-acl)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show ipv6 access-list</td>
<td>Verifies that IPv6 ACLs are configured correctly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show ipv6 access-list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring a VLAN Map

To create a VLAN map and apply it to one or more VLANs, perform these steps:

### Before you begin
Create the IPv6 ACL that you want to apply to the VLAN.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>vlan access-map name [number]</td>
<td>Creates a VLAN map, and enters VLAN access-map command mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan access-map map_1 20</td>
<td>VLAN map can have a name or (optionally) a number. The number is the sequence number of the entry within the map. When you create VLAN maps with the same name, numbers are assigned sequentially in increments of 10. When modifying or deleting maps, you can enter the number of the map entry that you want to modify or delete. VLAN maps do not use the specific permit or deny keywords. To deny a packet by using VLAN maps, create an ACL that would match the packet, and set the action to drop. A permit in the ACL counts as a match. A deny in the ACL means no match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>match {ip</td>
<td>ipv6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-access-map)# match ipv6 address ip_net</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Applying a VLAN Map to a VLAN

To apply a VLAN map to one or more VLANs, perform these steps.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example:

```
Device(config)# vlan filter map name VLAN1 vlan-list 1
Device(config)# end
```

Note: If the VLAN map is configured with a match clause for a type of packet (IP or MAC) and the map action is drop, all packets that match the type are dropped. If the VLAN map has no match clause, and the configured action is drop, all IP and Layer 2 packets are dropped.

Sets the action for the map entry.

Applies the VLAN map to one or more VLAN IDs.

The list can be a single VLAN ID (22), a consecutive list (10-22), or a string of VLAN IDs (12, 22, 30). Spaces around the comma and hyphen are optional.

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
### Purpose

#### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Step 3

**vlan filter mapname vlan-list list**

**Example:**

Device(config)# vlan filter map 1 vlan-list 20-22

Applies the VLAN map to one or more VLAN IDs.

The list can be a single VLAN ID (22), a consecutive list (10-22), or a string of VLAN IDs (12, 22, 30). Spaces around the comma and hyphen are optional.

#### Step 4

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config)# end

Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Monitoring IPv6 ACLs

You can display information about all configured access lists, all IPv6 access lists, or a specific access list by using one or more of the privileged EXEC commands shown in the table below:

**Table 22: show ACL commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show access-lists</td>
<td>Displays all access lists configured on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ipv6 access-list [access-list-name]</td>
<td>Displays all configured IPv6 access lists or the access list specified by name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show vlan access-map [map-name]</td>
<td>Displays VLAN access map configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show vlan filter [access-map access-map</td>
<td>vlan vlan-id]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL

This following sections display configuration examples for IPv6 ACL:

#### Example: Creating an IPv6 ACL

This example configures the IPv6 access list named IPv6-ACL. The first deny entry in the list denies all packets that have a destination TCP port number greater than 5000. The second deny entry denies packets that have a source UDP port number less than 5000. The second deny also logs all matches to the console. The first permit entry in the list permits all ICMP packets. The second permit entry in the list permits all other traffic. The second permit entry is necessary because an implicit deny -all condition is at the end of each IPv6 access list.
IPv6 ACLs

Logging is supported only on Layer 3 interfaces.

Note

Device> enable
Device(config)# ipv6 access-list IPv6_ACL
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# deny tcp any any gt 5000
Device (config-ipv6-acl)# deny ::/0 lt 5000 ::/0 log
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit icmp any any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit any any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# end

Example: Displaying IPv6 ACLs

This is an example of the output from the show access-lists privileged EXEC command. The output shows all access lists that are configured on the switch.

Device# show access-lists

Extended IP access list hello
10 permit ip any any
IPv6 access list ipv6
permit ipv6 any any sequence 10

This is an example of the output from the show ipv6 access-lists privileged EXEC command. The output shows only IPv6 access lists configured on the switch.

Device# show ipv6 access-list

IPv6 access list inbound
permit tcp any any eq bgp (8 matches) sequence 10
permit tcp any any eq telnet (15 matches) sequence 20
permit udp any any sequence 30
IPv6 access list outbound
deny udp any any sequence 10
deny tcp any any telnet sequence 20

Example: Displaying VLAN Access Map Configuration

This is an example of the output from the show vlan access-map privileged EXEC command.

Device# show vlan access-map

Vlan access-map "m1" 10
   Match clauses:
       ipv6 address: ip2
   Action: drop

This is an example of the output from the show ipv6 access-lists privileged EXEC command. The output shows only IPv6 access lists configured on the switch.

Device# show ipv6 access-list

IPv6 access list inbound
permit tcp any any eq bgp (8 matches) sequence 10
permit tcp any any eq telnet (15 matches) sequence 20
permit udp any any sequence 30
IPv6 access list outbound
deny udp any any sequence 10
deny tcp any any eq telnet sequence 20

Feature History for IPv6 ACLs

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IPv6 ACLs</td>
<td>You can filter IPv6 traffic by creating IPv6 ACLs and applying them to interfaces similar to how you create and apply IPv4 named ACLs. You can also create and apply input router ACLs to filter Layer 3 management traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IPv6 dACLs</td>
<td>IPv6 dACLs are supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
Object Groups for ACLs

The Object Groups for ACLs feature lets you classify users, devices, or protocols into groups and apply those groups to access control lists (ACLs) to create access control policies for those groups. This feature lets you use object groups instead of individual IP addresses, protocols, and ports, which are used in conventional ACLs. This feature allows multiple access control entries (ACEs), but now you can use each ACE to allow an entire group of users to access a group of servers or services or to deny them from doing so.

In large networks, the number of ACLs can be large (hundreds of lines) and difficult to configure and manage, especially if the ACLs frequently change. Object group-based ACLs are smaller, more readable, and easier to configure and manage than conventional ACLs, simplifying static and dynamic ACL deployments for large user access environments on Cisco IOS routers.

Cisco IOS Firewall benefits from object groups, because they simplify policy creation (for example, group A has access to group A services).

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Restrictions for Object Groups for ACLs

- You can use object groups only in extended named and numbered ACLs.
- Object group-based ACLs support only IPv4/IPv6 addresses.
- Object group-based ACLs support only Layer 3 interfaces (such as routed interfaces and VLAN interfaces) and sub-interfaces.
- Object group-based ACLs are not supported with IPsec.
• ACL statements using object groups will be ignored on packets that are sent to RP for processing.
• The number of object group-based ACEs supported in an ACL varies depending on platform, subject to TCAM availability.

Information About Object Groups for ACLs

You can configure conventional ACEs and ACEs that refer to object groups in the same ACL.

You can use object group-based ACLs with quality of service (QoS) match criteria, Cisco IOS Firewall, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), and any other features that use extended ACLs. In addition, you can use object group-based ACLs with multicast traffic.

When there are many inbound and outbound packets, using object group-based ACLs increases performance when compared to conventional ACLs. Also, in large configurations, this feature reduces the storage needed in NVRAM, because using object groups in ACEs means that you do not need to define an individual ACE for every address and protocol pairing.

Object Groups

An object group can contain a single object (such as a single IP address, network, or subnet) or multiple objects (such as a combination of multiple IP addresses, networks, or subnets).

A typical access control entry (ACE) allows a group of users to have access only to a specific group of servers. In an object group-based access control list (ACL), you can create a single ACE that uses an object group name instead of creating many ACEs (which requires each ACE to have a different IP address). A similar object group (such as a protocol port group) can be extended to provide access only to a set of applications for a user group. ACEs can have object groups for the source only, destination only, none, or both.

You can use object groups to separate the ownership of the components of an ACE. For example, each department in an organization controls its group membership, and the administrator owns the ACE itself to control which departments can contact one another.

You can use object groups in features that use Cisco Policy Language (CPL) class maps.

This feature supports two types of object groups for grouping ACL parameters: network object groups and service object groups. Use these object groups to group IP addresses, protocols, protocol services (ports), and Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) types.

Objects Allowed in Network Object Groups

A network object group is a group of any of the following objects:

• Any IP address—includes a range from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255 (This is specified using the any command.)
• Host IP addresses
• Hostnames
• Other network object groups
• Subnets
• Host IP addresses
• Network address of group members
Object Groups for ACLs

Objects Allowed in Service Object Groups

A service object group is a group of any of the following objects:

- Source and destination protocol ports (such as Telnet or Simple Network Management Protocol [SNMP])
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) types (such as echo, echo-reply, or host-unreachable)
- Top-level protocols (such as Encapsulating Security Payload [ESP], TCP, or UDP)
- Other service object groups

ACLs Based on Object Groups

All features that use or reference conventional access control lists (ACLs) are compatible with object-group-based ACLs, and the feature interactions for conventional ACLs are the same with object-group-based ACLs. This feature extends the conventional ACLs to support object-group-based ACLs and also adds new keywords and the source and destination addresses and ports.

You can add, delete, or change objects in an object group membership list dynamically (without deleting and redefining the object group). Also, you can add, delete, or change objects in an object group membership list without redefining the ACL access control entry (ACE) that uses the object group. You can add objects to groups, delete them from groups, and then ensure that changes are correctly functioning within the object-group-based ACL without reapplying the ACL to the interface.

You can configure an object-group-based ACL multiple times with a source group only, a destination group only, or both source and destination groups.

You cannot delete an object group that is used within an ACL or a class-based policy language (CPL) policy.

How to Configure Object Groups for ACLs

To configure object groups for ACLs, you first create one or more object groups. These can be any combination of network object groups (groups that contain objects such as, host addresses and network addresses) or service object groups (which use operators such as `lt`, `eq`, `gt`, `neq`, and `range` with port numbers). Then, you create access control entries (ACEs) that apply a policy (such as `permit` or `deny`) to those object groups.

Creating a Network Object Group

A network object group that contains a single object (such as a single IP address, a hostname, another network object group, or a subnet) or multiple objects with a network object-group-based ACL to create access control policies for the objects.

Perform this task to create a network object group.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>enable</em></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Example:</em></td>
<td><em>Enter your password if prompted.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Device</em> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>object-group network object-group-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# object-group network my-network-object-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Defines the object group name and enters network object-group configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>description description-text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-network-group)# description test engineers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies a description of the object group.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can use up to 200 characters.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>host {host-address</td>
<td>host-name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-network-group)# host 209.165.200.237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the IP address or name of a host.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you specify a host address, you must use an IPv4 address.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>network-address {/nn</td>
<td>network-mask}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Example:** | Device(config-network-group)#
| &nbsp;&n... | (Optional) Specifies a subnet object. |
| | • You must specify an IPv4 address for the network address. The default network mask is 255.255.255.255. |
| **Step 7** | group-object nested-object-group-name |
| **Example:** | Device(config-network-group)# group-object my-nested-object-group |
| | (Optional) Specifies a nested (child) object group to be included in the current (parent) object group. |
| | • The type of child object group must match that of the parent (for example, if you are creating a network object group, you must specify another network object group as the child). |
| | • You can use duplicated objects in an object group only via nesting of group objects. For example, if object 1 is in both group A and group B, you can define a group C that includes both A and B. However, you cannot include a group object that causes the group hierarchy to become circular (for example, you cannot include group A in group B and then also include group B in group A). |
### Creating a Service Object Group

Use a service object group to specify TCP and/or UDP ports or port ranges. When the service object group is associated with an access control list (ACL), this service object-group-based ACL can control access to ports.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> object-group service object-group-name</td>
<td>Defines an object group name and enters service object-group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# object-group service my-service-object-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> description description-text</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies a description of the object group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-service-group)# description test engineers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> protocol</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies an IP protocol number or name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-service-group)# ahp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Creating a Service Object Group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>`{tcp</td>
<td>udp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{eq</td>
<td>lt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>range port1 port2}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>range port1 port2]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-service-group)# tcp-udp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>range 2000 2005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>icmp</td>
<td>icmp-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-service-group)# icmp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conversion-error</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>group-object</td>
<td>nested-object-group-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-service-group)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>group-object my-nested-object-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The type of child object group must match that of the parent (for example, if you are creating a network object group, you must specify another network object group as the child).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can use duplicated objects in an object group only via nesting of group objects. For example, if object 1 is in both group A and group B, you can define a group C that includes both A and B. However, you cannot include a group object that causes the group hierarchy to become circular (for example, you cannot include group A in group B and then also include group B in group A).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can use an unlimited number of levels of nested object groups (however, a maximum of two levels is recommended).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>Repeat the steps to specify the objects on which you want to base your object group.</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10</td>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-service-group)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating an Object-Group-Based ACL

When creating an object-group-based access control list (ACL), configure an ACL that references one or more object groups. As with conventional ACLs, you can associate the same access policy with one or more interfaces.

You can define multiple access control entries (ACEs) that reference object groups within the same object-group-based ACL. You can also reuse a specific object group in multiple ACEs.

Perform this task to create an object-group-based ACL.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip access-list extended <em>access-list-name</em></td>
<td>Defines an extended IP access list using a name and enters extended access-list configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip access-list extended nomarketing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> remark <em>remark</em></td>
<td>(Optional) Adds a comment about the configured access list entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark protect server by denying access from the Marketing network</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> deny protocol source [source-wildcard] destination [destination-wildcard] [option option-name] [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [established] [log</td>
<td>log-input] [time-range time-range-name] [fragments]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 209.165.200.244 255.255.255.224 host 209.165.200.245 log</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Example based on object-group:**

```bash
Router(config)#object-group network my_network_object_group
Router(config-network-group)#209.165.200.224 255.255.255.224
Router(config-network-group)#exit
Router(config)#object-group network my_other_network_object_group
Router(config-network-group)#host 209.165.200.245
Router(config-network-group)#exit
Router(config)#ip access-list extended nomarketing
Router(config-ext-nacl)#deny ip object-group my_network_object_group
object-group my_other_network_object_group log
```

- Optionally use the `object-group destination-network-object-group-name` keyword and argument as a substitute for the `destination destination-wildcard` arguments

- If the `source-wildcard` or `destination-wildcards` omitted, a wildcard mask of 0.0.0.0 is assumed, which matches all bits of the source or destination address, respectively.

- Optionally use the `any` keyword as a substitute for the `source source-wildcard` or `destination destination-wildcard` to specify the address and wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255.

- Optionally use the `host source` keyword and argument to indicate a source and source wildcard of `source 0.0.0.0` or the `host destination` keyword and argument to indicate a destination and destination wildcard of `destination 0.0.0.0`.

- In this example, packets from all sources are denied access to the destination network 209.165.200.244. Logging messages about packets permitted or denied by the access list are sent to the facility configured by the `logging facility` command (for example, console, terminal, or syslog). That is, any packet that matches the access list will cause an informational logging message about the packet to be sent to the configured facility. The level of messages logged to the console is controlled by the `logging console` command.

- *(Optional)* Adds a comment about the configured access list entry.

  ```bash
  Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark allow TCP from any source to any destination
  ```

### Purpose

- A remark can precede or follow an access list entry.

### Step 6

**remark remark**

**Example:**

```bash
Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark allow TCP from any source to any destination
```

*(Optional) Adds a comment about the configured access list entry.*

### Step 7

**permit protocol source [source-wildcard] destination [destination-wildcard] [option option-name] [precedence precedence] [tos**

Permits any packet that matches all conditions specified in the statement.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>tos</code> [established] [log] log-input [time-range time-range-name] [fragments]</td>
<td>• Every access list needs at least one permit statement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• Optionally use the <code>object-group service-object-group-name</code> keyword and argument as a substitute for the <code>protocol</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• Optionally use the <code>object-group source-network-object-group-name</code> keyword and argument as a substitute for the <code>source source-wildcard</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• Optionally use the <code>object-group destination-network-object-group-name</code> keyword and argument as a substitute for the <code>destination destination-wildcard</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• If <code>source-wildcard</code> or <code>destination-wildcard</code> is omitted, a wildcard mask of 0.0.0.0 is assumed, which matches on all bits of the source or destination address, respectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• Optionally use the <code>any</code> keyword as a substitute for the <code>source source-wildcard</code> or <code>destination destination-wildcard</code> to specify the address and wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• In this example, TCP packets are allowed from any source to any destination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any</code></td>
<td>• Use the <code>log-input</code> keyword to include input interface, source MAC address, or virtual circuit in the logging output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 8**  
Repeat the steps to specify the fields and values on which you want to base your access list.  
Remember that all sources not specifically permitted are denied by an implicit `deny` statement at the end of the access list.

**Step 9**  
**Example:**  
`Device(config-ext-nacl)# end`  
Exits extended access-list configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

**Applying an Object Group-Based ACL to an Interface**

Use the `ip access-group` command to apply an object group-based ACL to an interface. An object group-based access control list (ACL) can be used to control traffic on the interface it is applied to.

Perform this task to apply an object group-based ACL to an interface.
### Verifying Object Groups for ACLs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>show object-group [object-group-name]</strong></td>
<td>Displays the configuration in the named or numbered object group (or in all object groups if no name is entered).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# show object-group my-object-group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>show ip access-list [access-list-name]</strong></td>
<td>Displays the contents of the named or numbered access list or object group-based ACL (or for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

```
Device# show ip access-list
my-ogacl-policy
```

### Purpose

all access lists and object group-based ACLs if no name is entered.

---

### Configuration Examples for Object Groups for ACLs

#### Example: Creating a Network Object Group

The following example shows how to create a network object group named `my-network-object-group`, which contains two hosts and a subnet as objects:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# object-group network my-network-object-group
Device(config-network-group)# description test engineers
Device(config-network-group)# host 209.165.200.237
Device(config-network-group)# host 209.165.200.238
Device(config-network-group)# 209.165.200.241 255.255.255.224
Device(config-network-group)# end
```

The following example shows how to create a network object group named `my-company-network`, which contains two hosts, a subnet, and an existing object group (child) named `my-nested-object-group` as objects:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# object-group network my-company-network
Device(config-network-group)# host host1
Device(config-network-group)# host 209.165.200.242
Device(config-network-group)# 209.165.200.225 255.255.255.224
Device(config-network-group)# group-object my-nested-object-group
Device(config-network-group)# end
```

#### Example: Creating a Service Object Group

The following example shows how to create a service object group named `my-service-object-group`, which contains several ICMP, TCP, UDP, and TCP-UDP protocols and an existing object group named `my-nested-object-group` as objects:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# object-group service my-service-object-group
Device(config-service-group)# icmp echo
Device(config-service-group)# tcp smtp
Device(config-service-group)# tcp telnet
Device(config-service-group)# tcp source range 1 65535 telnet
Device(config-service-group)# tcp source 2000 ftp
Device(config-service-group)# udp domain
Device(config-service-group)# tcp-udp range 2000 2005
Device(config-service-group)# group-object my-nested-object-group
Device(config-service-group)# end
```
Example: Creating an Object Group-Based ACL

The following example shows how to create an object-group-based ACL that permits packets from the users in my-network-object-group if the protocol ports match the ports specified in my-service-object-group:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip access-list extended my-ogacl-policy
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit object-group my-service-object-group object-group my-network-object-group any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# end
```

Applying an Object Group-Based ACL to an Interface

Use the `ip access-group` command to apply an object group-based ACL to an interface. An object group-based access control list (ACL) can be used to control traffic on the interface it is applied to.

Perform this task to apply an object group-based ACL to an interface.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface type number</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Applies the ACL to the interface and specifies whether to filter inbound or outbound packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`ip access-group {access-list-name</td>
<td>access-list-number} {in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# ip access-group my-ogacl-policy in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: Verifying Object Groups for ACLs

The following example shows how to display all object groups:

Device# show object-group

Network object group auth-proxy-acl-deny-dest
host 209.165.200.235

Service object group auth-proxy-acl-deny-services
tcp eq www
tcp eq 443

Network object group auth-proxy-acl-permit-dest
209.165.200.226 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.227 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.228 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.229 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.230 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.231 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.232 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.233 255.255.255.224
209.165.200.234 255.255.255.224

Service object group auth-proxy-acl-permit-services
tcp eq www
tcp eq 443

The following example shows how to display information about specific object-group-based ACLs:

Device# show ip access-list my-ogacl-policy

Extended IP access list my-ogacl-policy
10 permit object-group eng_service any any

Additional References for Object Groups for ACLs

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Security commands | • Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands A to C  
| | • Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands D to L  
| | • Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands M to R  
| | • Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands S to Z  
| ACL configuration guide | Security Configuration Guide: Access Control Lists |
Feature History for Object Groups for ACLs

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.1</td>
<td>Object Groups for ACLs</td>
<td>The Object Groups for ACLs feature lets you classify users, devices, or protocols into groups and apply them to access control lists (ACLs) to create access control policies for those groups. This feature lets you use object groups instead of individual IP addresses, protocols, and ports, which are used in conventional ACLs. This feature allows multiple access control entries (ACEs), but now you can use each ACE to allow an entire group of users to access a group of servers or services or to deny them from doing so.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
### Information About IP Source Guard

**IP Source Guard**

You can use IP source guard (IPSG) to prevent traffic attacks if a host tries to use the IP address of its neighbor and you can enable IP source guard when DHCP snooping is enabled on an untrusted interface.

After IPSG is enabled on an interface, the switch blocks all IP traffic received on the interface except for DHCP packets allowed by DHCP snooping.

The switch uses a source IP lookup table in hardware to bind IP addresses to ports. For IP and MAC filtering, a combination of source IP and source MAC lookups are used. IP traffic with a source IP address in the binding table is allowed, all other traffic is denied.

The IP source binding table has bindings that are learned by DHCP snooping or are manually configured (static IP source bindings). An entry in this table has an IP address, its associated MAC address, and its associated VLAN number. The switch uses the IP source binding table only when IP source guard is enabled.

IPSG is supported only on Layer 2 ports, including access and trunk ports. You can configure IPSG with source IP address filtering or with source IP and MAC address filtering.

#### IP Source Guard for Static Hosts

**Note**

Do not use IPSG for static hosts on uplink ports or trunk ports.

IPSG for static hosts extends the IPSG capability to non-DHCP and static environments. The previous IPSG used the entries created by DHCP snooping to validate the hosts connected to a switch. Any traffic received from a host without a valid DHCP binding entry is dropped. This security feature restricts IP traffic on nonrouted Layer 2 interfaces. It filters traffic based on the DHCP snooping binding database and on manually
configured IP source bindings. The previous version of IPSG required a DHCP environment for IPSG to work.

IPSG for static hosts allows IPSG to work without DHCP. IPSG for static hosts relies on IP device tracking-table entries to install port ACLs. The switch creates static entries based on ARP requests or other IP packets to maintain the list of valid hosts for a given port. You can also specify the number of hosts allowed to send traffic to a given port. This is equivalent to port security at Layer 3.

IPSG for static hosts also supports dynamic hosts. If a dynamic host receives a DHCP-assigned IP address that is available in the IP DHCP snooping table, the same entry is learned by the IP device tracking table. In a stacked environment, when the active switch failover occurs, the IP source guard entries for static hosts attached to member ports are retained. When you enter the `show device-tracking database EXEC command, the IP device tracking table displays the entries as ACTIVE.

---

**Note**

Some IP hosts with multiple network interfaces can inject some invalid packets into a network interface. The invalid packets contain the IP or MAC address for another network interface of the host as the source address. The invalid packets can cause IPSG for static hosts to connect to the host, to learn the invalid IP or MAC address bindings, and to reject the valid bindings. Consult the vendor of the corresponding operating system and the network interface to prevent the host from injecting invalid packets.

IPSG for static hosts initially learns IP or MAC bindings dynamically through an ACL-based snooping mechanism. IP or MAC bindings are learned from static hosts by ARP and IP packets. They are stored in the device tracking database. When the number of IP addresses that have been dynamically learned or statically configured on a given port reaches a maximum, the hardware drops any packet with a new IP address. To resolve hosts that have moved or gone away for any reason, IPSG for static hosts leverages IP device tracking to age out dynamically learned IP address bindings. This feature can be used with DHCP snooping. Multiple bindings are established on a port that is connected to both DHCP and static hosts. For example, bindings are stored in both the device tracking database as well as in the DHCP snooping binding database.

**IP Source Guard Configuration Guidelines**

- You can configure static IP bindings only on nonrouted ports. If you enter the `ip source binding mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id` global configuration command on a routed interface, this error message appears:

  Static IP source binding can only be configured on switch port.

- When IP source guard with source IP filtering is enabled on an interface, DHCP snooping must be enabled on the access VLAN for that interface.

- If you are enabling IP source guard on a trunk interface with multiple VLANs and DHCP snooping is enabled on all the VLANs, the source IP address filter is applied on all the VLANs.

---

**Note**

If IP source guard is enabled and you enable or disable DHCP snooping on a VLAN on the trunk interface, the switch might not properly filter traffic.

- You can enable this feature when 802.1x port-based authentication is enabled.
## How to Configure IP Source Guard

### Enabling IP Source Guard

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>ip verify source [mac-check]</td>
<td>Enables IP source guard with source IP address filtering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip verify source</td>
<td>(Optional) mac-check—Enables IP Source Guard with source IP address and MAC address filtering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>ip source binding mac-address vlan vlan-id ip-address interface interface-id</td>
<td>Adds a static IP source binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip source binding 0100.0230.0002 vlan 11 10.0.0.4 interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td>Enter this command for each static binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring IP Source Guard for Static Hosts on a Layer 2 Access Port

You must configure the `ip device tracking maximum limit-number` interface configuration command globally for IPSG for static hosts to work. If you only configure this command on a port without enabling IP device tracking globally or by setting an IP device tracking maximum on that interface, IPSG with static hosts rejects all the IP traffic from that interface.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>ip device tracking</td>
<td>Turns on the IP host table, and globally enables IP device tracking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip device tracking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>switchport mode access</td>
<td>Configures a port as access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>switchport access vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Configures the VLAN for this port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Command or Action** | **Purpose**
---|---
**Step 7** | Enables IP source guard with source IP address filtering.
Example: ip verify source [tracking] [mac-check ]
(config-if)# ip verify source tracking mac-check
(Optional) tracking—Enables IP source guard for static hosts.
(Optional) mac-check—Enables MAC address filtering.
The command `ip verify source tracking mac-check` enables IP source guard for static hosts with MAC address filtering.
**Step 8** | Establishes a maximum limit for the number of static IPs that the IP device tracking table allows on the port. The range is 1 to 10. The maximum number is 10.
Example: ip device tracking maximum number
Device(config-if)# ip device tracking maximum 8
Note You must configure the `ip device tracking maximum limit-number` interface configuration command.
**Step 9** | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Example: end
Device(config-if)# end

---

**Monitoring IP Source Guard**

**Table 23: Privileged EXEC show Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show ip verify source [interface interface-id ]</code></td>
<td>Displays the IP source guard configuration on the switch or on a specific interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`show ip device tracking { all</td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 24: Interface Configuration Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ip verify source tracking</code></td>
<td>Verifies the data source.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature History for IP Source Guard

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IP Source Guard</td>
<td>You can use IP source guard to prevent traffic attacks if a host tries to use the IP address of its neighbor and you can enable IP source guard when DHCP snooping is enabled on an untrusted interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Restrictions for Dynamic ARP Inspection

This section lists the restrictions and guidelines for configuring Dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) Inspection on the switch.

• Dynamic ARP inspection is an ingress security feature; it does not perform any egress checking.

• Dynamic ARP inspection is not effective for hosts connected to switches that do not support dynamic ARP inspection or that do not have this feature enabled. Because man-in-the-middle attacks are limited to a single Layer 2 broadcast domain, separate the domain with dynamic ARP inspection checks from the one with no checking. This action secures the ARP caches of hosts in the domain enabled for dynamic ARP inspection.

• Dynamic ARP inspection depends on the entries in the DHCP snooping binding database to verify IP-to-MAC address bindings in incoming ARP requests and ARP responses. Make sure to enable DHCP snooping to permit ARP packets that have dynamically assigned IP addresses.

When DHCP snooping is disabled or in non-DHCP environments, use ARP ACLs to permit or to deny packets.

• Dynamic ARP inspection is supported on access ports, trunk ports, and EtherChannel ports.

Note
Do not enable Dynamic ARP inspection on RSPAN VLANs. If Dynamic ARP inspection is enabled on RSPAN VLANs, Dynamic ARP inspection packets might not reach the RSPAN destination port.

• A physical port can join an EtherChannel port channel only when the trust state of the physical port and the channel port match. Otherwise, the physical port remains suspended in the port channel. A port...
channel inherits its trust state from the first physical port that joins the channel. Consequently, the trust state of the first physical port need not match the trust state of the channel.

Conversely, when you change the trust state on the port channel, the switch configures a new trust state on all the physical ports that comprise the channel.

• The rate limit is calculated separately on each switch in a switch stack. For a cross-stack EtherChannel, this means that the actual rate limit might be higher than the configured value. For example, if you set the rate limit to 30 pps on an EtherChannel that has one port on switch 1 and one port on switch 2, each port can receive packets at 29 pps without causing the EtherChannel to become error-disabled.

• The operating rate for the port channel is cumulative across all the physical ports within the channel. For example, if you configure the port channel with an ARP rate-limit of 400 pps, all the interfaces combined on the channel receive an aggregate 400 pps. The rate of incoming ARP packets on EtherChannel ports is equal to the sum of the incoming rate of packets from all the channel members. Configure the rate limit for EtherChannel ports only after examining the rate of incoming ARP packets on the channel-port members.

The rate of incoming packets on a physical port is checked against the port-channel configuration rather than the physical-ports configuration. The rate-limit configuration on a port channel is independent of the configuration on its physical ports.

If the EtherChannel receives more ARP packets than the configured rate, the channel (including all physical ports) is placed in the error-disabled state.

• Make sure to limit the rate of ARP packets on incoming trunk ports. Configure trunk ports with higher rates to reflect their aggregation and to handle packets across multiple dynamic ARP inspection-enabled VLANs. You also can use the `ip arp inspection limit none` interface configuration command to make the rate unlimited. A high rate-limit on one VLAN can cause a denial-of-service attack to other VLANs when the software places the port in the error-disabled state.

• When you enable dynamic ARP inspection on the switch, policers that were configured to police ARP traffic are no longer effective. The result is that all ARP traffic is sent to the CPU.

Information About Dynamic ARP Inspection

Understanding Dynamic ARP Inspection

ARP provides IP communication within a Layer 2 broadcast domain by mapping an IP address to a MAC address. For example, Host B wants to send information to Host A but does not have the MAC address of Host A in its ARP cache. Host B generates a broadcast message for all hosts within the broadcast domain to obtain the MAC address associated with the IP address of Host A. All hosts within the broadcast domain receive the ARP request, and Host A responds with its MAC address. However, because ARP allows a gratuitous reply from a host even if an ARP request was not received, an ARP spoofing attack and the poisoning of ARP caches can occur. After the attack, all traffic from the device under attack flows through the attacker’s computer and then to the router, switch, or host.

A malicious user can attack hosts, switches, and routers connected to your Layer 2 network by poisoning the ARP caches of systems connected to the subnet and by intercepting traffic intended for other hosts on the subnet. Figure 26-1 shows an example of ARP cache poisoning.
Hosts A, B, and C are connected to the switch on interfaces A, B and C, all of which are on the same subnet. Their IP and MAC addresses are shown in parentheses; for example, Host A uses IP address IA and MAC address MA. When Host A needs to communicate to Host B at the IP layer, it broadcasts an ARP request for the MAC address associated with IP address IB. When the switch and Host B receive the ARP request, they populate their ARP caches with an ARP binding for a host with the IP address IA and a MAC address MA; for example, IP address IA is bound to MAC address MA. When Host B responds, the switch and Host A populate their ARP caches with a binding for a host with the IP address IB and the MAC address MB.

Host C can poison the ARP caches of the switch, Host A, and Host B by broadcasting forged ARP responses with bindings for a host with an IP address of IA (or IB) and a MAC address of MC. Hosts with poisoned ARP caches use the MAC address MC as the destination MAC address for traffic intended for IA or IB. This means that Host C intercepts that traffic. Because Host C knows the true MAC addresses associated with IA and IB, it can forward the intercepted traffic to those hosts by using the correct MAC address as the destination. Host C has inserted itself into the traffic stream from Host A to Host B, the classic man-in-the-middle attack.

Dynamic ARP inspection is a security feature that validates ARP packets in a network. It intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. This capability protects the network from certain man-in-the-middle attacks.

Dynamic ARP inspection ensures that only valid ARP requests and responses are relayed. The switch performs these activities:

- Intercepts all ARP requests and responses on untrusted ports.
- Verifies that each of these intercepted packets has a valid IP-to-MAC address binding before updating the local ARP cache or before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination.
- Drops invalid ARP packets.

Dynamic ARP inspection determines the validity of an ARP packet based on valid IP-to-MAC address bindings stored in a trusted database, the DHCP snooping binding database. This database is built by DHCP snooping if DHCP snooping is enabled on the VLANs and on the switch. If the ARP packet is received on a trusted interface, the switch forwards the packet without any checks. On untrusted interfaces, the switch forwards the packet only if it is valid.

In non-DHCP environments, dynamic ARP inspection can validate ARP packets against user-configured ARP access control lists (ACLs) for hosts with statically configured IP addresses. You define an ARP ACL by using the `arp access-list acl-name` global configuration command.

You can configure dynamic ARP inspection to drop ARP packets when the IP addresses in the packets are invalid or when the MAC addresses in the body of the ARP packets do not match the addresses specified in the Ethernet header. Use the `ip arp inspection validate [[src-mac] [dst-mac] [ip]]` global configuration command.
Interface Trust States and Network Security

Dynamic ARP inspection associates a trust state with each interface on the switch. Packets arriving on trusted interfaces bypass all dynamic ARP inspection validation checks, and those arriving on untrusted interfaces undergo the dynamic ARP inspection validation process.

In a typical network configuration, you configure all switch ports connected to host ports as untrusted and configure all switch ports connected to switches as trusted. With this configuration, all ARP packets entering the network from a given switch bypass the security check. No other validation is needed at any other place in the VLAN or in the network. You configure the trust setting by using the `ip arp inspection trust interface` configuration command.

Use the trust state configuration carefully. Configuring interfaces as untrusted when they should be trusted can result in a loss of connectivity.

In the following figure, assume that both Switch A and Switch B are running dynamic ARP inspection on the VLAN that includes Host 1 and Host 2. If Host 1 and Host 2 acquire their IP addresses from the DHCP server connected to Switch A, only Switch A binds the IP-to-MAC address of Host 1. Therefore, if the interface between Switch A and Switch B is untrusted, the ARP packets from Host 1 are dropped by Switch B. Connectivity between Host 1 and Host 2 is lost.

Figure 22: ARP Packet Validation on a VLAN Enabled for Dynamic ARP Inspection

Configuring interfaces to be trusted when they are actually untrusted leaves a security hole in the network. If Switch A is not running dynamic ARP inspection, Host 1 can easily poison the ARP cache of Switch B (and Host 2, if the link between the switches is configured as trusted). This condition can occur even though Switch B is running dynamic ARP inspection.

Dynamic ARP inspection ensures that hosts (on untrusted interfaces) connected to a switch running dynamic ARP inspection do not poison the ARP caches of other hosts in the network. However, dynamic ARP inspection does not prevent hosts in other portions of the network from poisoning the caches of the hosts that are connected to a switch running dynamic ARP inspection.

In cases in which some switches in a VLAN run dynamic ARP inspection and other switches do not, configure the interfaces connecting such switches as untrusted. However, to validate the bindings of packets from nondynamic ARP inspection switches, configure the switch running dynamic ARP inspection with ARP ACLs. When you cannot determine such bindings, at Layer 3, isolate switches running dynamic ARP inspection from switches not running dynamic ARP inspection switches.
Depending on the setup of the DHCP server and the network, it might not be possible to validate a given ARP packet on all switches in the VLAN.

**Rate Limiting of ARP Packets**

The switch CPU performs dynamic ARP inspection validation checks; therefore, the number of incoming ARP packets is rate-limited to prevent a denial-of-service attack. By default, the rate for untrusted interfaces is 15 packets per second (pps). Trusted interfaces are not rate-limited. You can change this setting by using the `ip arp inspection limit` interface configuration command.

When the rate of incoming ARP packets exceeds the configured limit, the switch places the port in the error-disabled state. The port remains in that state until you intervene. You can use the `errdisable recovery` global configuration command to enable error disable recovery so that ports automatically emerge from this state after a specified timeout period.

The rate limit for an EtherChannel is applied separately to each switch in a stack. For example, if a limit of 20 pps is configured on the EtherChannel, each switch with ports in the EtherChannel can carry up to 20 pps. If any switch exceeds the limit, the entire EtherChannel is placed into the error-disabled state.

**Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries**

Dynamic ARP inspection uses the DHCP snooping binding database for the list of valid IP-to-MAC address bindings.

ARP ACLs take precedence over entries in the DHCP snooping binding database. The switch uses ACLs only if you configure them by using the `ip arp inspection filter vlan` global configuration command. The switch first compares ARP packets to user-configured ARP ACLs. If the ARP ACL denies the ARP packet, the switch also denies the packet even if a valid binding exists in the database populated by DHCP snooping.

**Logging of Dropped Packets**

When the switch drops a packet, it places an entry in the log buffer and then generates system messages on a rate-controlled basis. After the message is generated, the switch clears the entry from the log buffer. Each log entry contains flow information, such as the receiving VLAN, the port number, the source and destination IP addresses, and the source and destination MAC addresses.

You use the `ip arp inspection log-buffer` global configuration command to configure the number of entries in the buffer and the number of entries needed in the specified interval to generate system messages. You specify the type of packets that are logged by using the `ip arp inspection vlan logging` global configuration command.

**Default Dynamic ARP Inspection Configuration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic ARP inspection</td>
<td>Disabled on all VLANs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface trust state</td>
<td>All interfaces are untrusted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Relative Priority of ARP ACLs and DHCP Snooping Entries

Dynamic ARP inspection uses the DHCP snooping binding database for the list of valid IP-to-MAC address bindings.

ARP ACLs take precedence over entries in the DHCP snooping binding database. The switch uses ACLs only if you configure them by using the ip arp inspection filter Vlan global configuration command. The switch first compares ARP packets to user-configured ARP ACLs. If the ARP ACL denies the ARP packet, the switch also denies the packet even if a valid binding exists in the database populated by DHCP snooping.

How to Configure Dynamic ARP Inspection

Configuring ARP ACLs for Non-DHCP Environments

This procedure shows how to configure dynamic ARP inspection when Switch B shown in Figure 2 does not support dynamic ARP inspection or DHCP snooping.

If you configure port 1 on Switch A as trusted, a security hole is created because both Switch A and Host 1 could be attacked by either Switch B or Host 2. To prevent this possibility, you must configure port 1 on Switch A as untrusted. To permit ARP packets from Host 2, you must set up an ARP ACL and apply it to VLAN 1. If the IP address of Host 2 is not static (it is impossible to apply the ACL configuration on Switch A) you must separate Switch A from Switch B at Layer 3 and use a router to route packets between them.

Follow these steps to configure an ARP ACL on Switch A. This procedure is required in non-DHCP environments.
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  **Example:**  
  `Device> enable`  
  • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
  **Example:**  
  `Device# configure terminal` |
| **Step 3** arp access-list *acl-name* | Defines an ARP ACL, and enters ARP access-list configuration mode. By default, no ARP access lists are defined.  
  **Note** At the end of the ARP access list, there is an implicit `deny ip any mac any` command.  
  **Example:**  
  `Device(config)# arp access-list arpacl22` |
| **Step 4** `permit ip host `**sender-ip**` mac host `**sender-mac**` | Permits ARP packets from the specified host (Host 2).  
  **Example:**  
  `Device(config-arp-nacl)# permit ip host 10.2.2.2 mac host 0018.bad8.3fbd`  
  • For `sender-ip`, enter the IP address of Host 2.  
  • For `sender-mac`, enter the MAC address of Host 2. |
| **Step 5** `exit` | Exits ARP access-list configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.  
  **Example:**  
  `Device(config-arp-nacl)# exit` |
| **Step 6** `ip arp inspection filter `**arp-acl-name**` **vlan** **vlan-range** [static]` | Applies ARP ACL to the VLAN. By default, no defined ARP ACLs are applied to any VLAN.  
  **Example:**  
  `Device(config)# ip arp inspection filter arpacl22 vlan 1-2`  
  • For `arp-acl-name`, specify the name of the ACL created in Step 2.  
  • For `vlan-range`, specify the VLAN that the switches and hosts are in. You can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.  
  • (Optional) Specify `static` to treat implicit denies in the ARP ACL as explicit denies.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and to drop packets that do not match any previous clauses in the ACL. DHCP bindings are not used. If you do not specify this keyword, it means that there is no explicit deny in the ACL that denies the packet, and DHCP bindings determine whether a packet is permitted or denied if the packet does not match any clauses in the ACL. ARP packets containing only IP-to-MAC address bindings are compared against the ACL. Packets are permitted only if the access list permits them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>interface interface-type interface-number</th>
<th>Specifies Switch A interface that is connected to Switch B, and enters interface configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>no ip arp inspection trust</th>
<th>Configures Switch A interface that is connected to Switch B as untrusted. By default, all interfaces are untrusted. For untrusted interfaces, the switch intercepts all ARP requests and responses. It verifies that the intercepted packets have valid IP-to-MAC address bindings before updating the local cache and before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination. The switch drops invalid packets and logs them in the log buffer according to the logging configuration specified with the ip arp inspection vlan logging global configuration command.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# no ip arp inspection trust</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>end</th>
<th>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>show arp access-list acl-name</th>
<th>Displays information about the named ACLs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show arp access-list arpacl22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range</th>
<th>Displays the statistics for the selected range of VLANs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Dynamic ARP Inspection in DHCP Environments

**Before you begin**

This procedure shows how to configure dynamic ARP inspection when two switches support this feature. Host 1 is connected to Switch A, and Host 2 is connected to Switch B. Both switches are running dynamic ARP inspection on VLAN 1 where the hosts are located. A DHCP server is connected to Switch A. Both hosts acquire their IP addresses from the same DHCP server. Therefore, Switch A has the bindings for Host 1 and Host 2, and Switch B has the binding for Host 2.

**Note**

Dynamic ARP inspection depends on the entries in the DHCP snooping binding database to verify IP-to-MAC address bindings in incoming ARP requests and ARP responses. Make sure to enable DHCP snooping to permit ARP packets that have dynamically assigned IP addresses.

Follow these steps to configure dynamic ARP inspection. You must perform this procedure on both switches. This procedure is required.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>show cdp neighbors</code></td>
<td>Verify the connection between the switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device# show cdp neighbors</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 4    | `ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range`  
*Example:*  
`Device(config)# ip arp inspection vlan 1` | Enable dynamic ARP inspection on a per-VLAN basis. By default, dynamic ARP inspection is disabled on all VLANs. For `vlan-range`, specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094. Specify the same VLAN ID for both switches. |
| 5    | `Interface type number`  
*Example:*  
`Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1` | Specifies the interface connected to the other switch, and enter interface configuration mode. |
| 6    | `ip arp inspection trust`  
*Example:*  
`Device(config-if)# ip arp inspection trust` | Configures the connection between the switches as trusted. By default, all interfaces are untrusted.  
The switch does not check ARP packets that it receives from the other switch on the trusted interface. It simply forwards the packets.  
For untrusted interfaces, the switch intercepts all ARP requests and responses. It verifies that the intercepted packets have valid IP-to-MAC address bindings before updating the local cache and before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination. The switch drops invalid packets and logs them in the log buffer according to the logging configuration specified with the `ip arp inspection vlan logging` global configuration command. |
| 7    | `end`  
*Example:*  
`Device(config-if)# end` | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| 8    | `show ip arp inspection interfaces`  
*Example:*  
`Device# show ip arp inspection interfaces` | Verifies the dynamic ARP inspection configuration on interfaces. |
| 9    | `show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range`  
*Example:*  
`Device# show ip arp inspection vlan 1` | Verifies the dynamic ARP inspection configuration on VLAN. |
| 10   | `show ip dhcp snooping binding`  
*Example:*  
`Device# show ip dhcp snooping binding` | Verifies the DHCP bindings. |
### Limiting the Rate of Incoming ARP Packets

The switch CPU performs dynamic ARP inspection validation checks; therefore, the number of incoming ARP packets is rate-limited to prevent a denial-of-service attack.

When the rate of incoming ARP packets exceeds the configured limit, the switch places the port in the error-disabled state. The port remains in that state until you enable error-disabled recovery so that ports automatically emerge from this state after a specified timeout period.

---

**Note**

Unless you configure a rate limit on an interface, changing the trust state of the interface also changes its rate limit to the default value for that trust state. After you configure the rate limit, the interface retains the rate limit even when its trust state is changed. If you enter the `no ip arp inspection limit` interface configuration command, the interface reverts to its default rate limit.

Follow these steps to limit the rate of incoming ARP packets. This procedure is optional.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be rate-limited, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Limits the rate of incoming ARP requests and responses on the interface. The default rate is 15 pps on untrusted interfaces and unlimited on trusted interfaces. The burst interval is 1 second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface type number</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Performing Dynamic ARP Inspection Validation Checks

Dynamic ARP inspection intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. You can configure the switch to perform additional checks on the destination MAC address, the sender and target IP addresses, and the source MAC address.

Follow these steps to perform specific checks on incoming ARP packets. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip arp inspection validate {[src-mac] [dst-mac] [ip]}</td>
<td>Performs a specific check on incoming ARP packets. By default, no checks are performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip inspection validate ip</td>
<td>The keywords have these meanings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <strong>src-mac</strong>, check the source MAC address in the Ethernet header against the sender MAC address in the ARP body. This check is performed on both ARP requests and responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <strong>dst-mac</strong>, check the destination MAC address in the Ethernet header against the target MAC address in ARP body. This check is performed for ARP responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For <strong>ip</strong>, check the ARP body for invalid and unexpected IP addresses. Addresses include 0.0.0.0, 255.255.255.255, and all IP multicast addresses. Sender IP addresses are checked in all ARP requests and responses, and target IP addresses are checked only in ARP responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must specify at least one of the keywords. Each command overrides the configuration of the previous command; that is, if a command enables src and dst mac validations, and a second command enables IP validation only, the src and dst mac validations are disabled as a result of the second command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring DAI

To monitor DAI, use the following commands:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear ip arp inspection statistics</td>
<td>Clears dynamic ARP inspection statistics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip arp inspection statistics [vlan vlan-range]</td>
<td>Displays statistics for forwarded, dropped, MAC validation failure, IP validation failure, ACL permitted and denied, and DHCP permitted and denied packets for the specified VLAN. If no VLANs are specified or if a range is specified, displays information only for VLANs with dynamic ARP inspection enabled (active).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear ip arp inspection log</td>
<td>Clears the dynamic ARP inspection log buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip arp inspection log</td>
<td>Displays the configuration and contents of the dynamic ARP inspection log buffer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the `show ip arp inspection statistics` command, the switch increments the number of forwarded packets for each ARP request and response packet on a trusted dynamic ARP inspection port. The switch increments the number of ACL or DHCP permitted packets for each packet that is denied by source MAC, destination MAC, or IP validation checks, and the switch increments the appropriate.

### Verifying the DAI Configuration

To display and verify the DAI configuration, use the following commands:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show arp access-list [acl-name]</td>
<td>Displays detailed information about ARP ACLs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip arp inspection interfaces [interface-id]</td>
<td>Displays the trust state and the rate limit of ARP packets for the specified interface or all interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ip arp inspection vlan vlan-range</td>
<td>Displays the configuration and the operating state of dynamic ARP inspection for the specified VLAN. If no VLANs are specified or if a range is specified, displays information only for VLANs with dynamic ARP inspection enabled (active).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature History for Dynamic ARP Inspection

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar</td>
<td>Dynamic ARP Inspection</td>
<td>ARP provides IP communication within a Layer 2 broadcast domain by mapping an IP address to a MAC address. Dynamic ARP inspection is a security feature that validates ARP packets in a network. It intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. This capability protects the network from certain man-in-the-middle attacks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 23

Configuring IPv6 First Hop Security

• Prerequisites for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 387
• Restrictions for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 387
• Information About IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 388
• How to Configure IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 390
• Configuration Examples for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 416
• Additional References for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 417
• Feature History for IPv6 First Hop Security, on page 417

Prerequisites for IPv6 First Hop Security

You have configured the necessary IPv6 enabled SDM template.

Restrictions for IPv6 First Hop Security

• The following restrictions apply when applying FHS policies to EtherChannel interfaces (Port Channels):
  • A physical port with an FHS policy attached cannot join an EtherChannel group.
  • An FHS policy cannot be attached to an physical port when it is a member of an EtherChannel group.

• By default, a snooping policy has a security-level of guard. When such a snooping policy is configured on an access switch, external IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) or Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) server packets are blocked, even though the uplink port facing the device or DHCP server or relay is configured as a trusted port. To allow IPv6 RA or DHCPv6 server messages, do the following:
  • Apply an IPv6 RA-guard policy (for RA) or IPv6 DHCP-guard policy (for DHCP server messages) on the uplink port.
  • Configure a snooping policy with a lower security-level, for example g lean or inspect. However, configuring a lower security level is not recommended with such a snooping policy, because benefits of FHS features are not effective.
Information About IPv6 First Hop Security

IPv6 First Hop Security Overview

First Hop Security in IPv6 (FHS IPv6) is a set of IPv6 security features, whose policies can be attached to a physical interface, an EtherChannel interface, or a VLAN. An IPv6 software policy database service stores and accesses these policies. When a policy is configured or modified, the attributes of the policy are stored or updated in the software policy database, and applied as specified. The following IPv6 policies are currently supported:


  **Note**  
  The IPv6 Snooping Policy feature is deprecated and the Switch Integrated Security Feature (SISF)-based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. While the IPv6 Snooping Policy commands are still available on the CLI and the existing configuration continues to be supported, the commands will be removed from the CLI in a later release. For more information about the replacement feature, see the Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking chapter in this guide.

- IPv6 FHS Binding Table Content—A database table of IPv6 neighbors connected to the device is created from information sources such as Neighbor Discovery (ND) protocol snooping. This database, or binding table, is used by various IPv6 guard features (such as IPv6 ND Inspection) to validate the link-layer address (LLA), the IPv4 or IPv6 address, and prefix binding of the neighbors to prevent spoofing and redirect attacks.

  **Note**  
  The IPv6 FHS Binding Table Content feature is supported through SISF-based device tracking. For more information, see the Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking chapter in this guide.

- IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection—IPv6 ND inspection learns and secures bindings for stateless autoconfiguration addresses in Layer 2 neighbor tables. IPv6 ND inspection analyzes neighbor discovery messages in order to build a trusted binding table database and IPv6 neighbor discovery messages that do not conform are dropped. An ND message is considered trustworthy if its IPv6-to-Media Access Control (MAC) mapping is verifiable.

  This feature mitigates some of the inherent vulnerabilities of the ND mechanism, such as attacks on DAD, address resolution, router discovery, and the neighbor cache.
Starting with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 the IPv6 ND Inspection feature is deprecated and the SISF- based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. While the IPv6 ND Inspection commands are still available on the CLI and the existing configuration continues to be supported, the commands will be removed from the CLI in a later release. For more information about the replacement feature, see the Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking chapter in this guide.

**Note**

IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard—The IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) guard feature enables the network administrator to block or reject unwanted or rogue RA guard messages that arrive at the network device platform. RAs are used by devices to announce themselves on the link. The RA Guard feature analyzes the RAs and filters out bogus RAs sent by unauthorized devices. In host mode, all router advertisement and router redirect messages are disallowed on the port. The RA guard feature compares configuration information on the Layer 2 device with the information found in the received RA frame. Once the Layer 2 device has validated the content of the RA frame and router redirect frame against the configuration, it forwards the RA to its unicast or multicast destination. If the RA frame content is not validated, the RA is dropped.

IPv6 DHCP Guard—The IPv6 DHCP Guard feature blocks reply and advertisement messages that come from unauthorized DHCPv6 servers and relay agents. IPv6 DHCP guard can prevent forged messages from being entered in the binding table and block DHCPv6 server messages when they are received on ports that are not explicitly configured as facing a DHCPv6 server or DHCP relay. To use this feature, configure a policy and attach it to an interface or a VLAN. To debug DHCP guard packets, use the `debug ipv6 snooping dhcp-guard` privileged EXEC command.

IPv6 Source Guard—Like IPv4 Source Guard, IPv6 Source Guard validates the source address or prefix to prevent source address spoofing.

A source guard programs the hardware to allow or deny traffic based on source or destination addresses. It deals exclusively with data packet traffic.

The IPv6 source guard feature provides the ability to store entries in the hardware TCAM table to prevent a host from sending packets with an invalid IPv6 source address.

To debug source-guard packets, use the `debug ipv6 snooping source-guard` privileged EXEC command.

**Note**

The IPv6 Source Guard and Prefix Guard features are supported only in the ingress direction and not supported in the egress direction.

The following restrictions apply:

- An FHS policy cannot be attached to a physical port when it is a member of an EtherChannel group.
- When IPv6 source guard is enabled on a switch port, NDP or DHCP snooping must be enabled on the interface to which the switch port belongs. Otherwise, all data traffic from this port will be blocked.
- An IPv6 source guard policy cannot be attached to a VLAN. It is supported only at the interface level.
When you configure IPv4 and IPv6 source guard together on an interface, it is recommended to use `ip verify source mac-check` instead of `ip verify source`. IPv4 connectivity on a given port might break due to two different filtering rules set — one for IPv4 (IP-filter) and the other for IPv6 (IP-MAC filter).

You cannot use IPv6 Source Guard and Prefix Guard together. When you attach the policy to an interface, it should be "validate address" or "validate prefix" but not both.

PVLAN and Source or Prefix Guard cannot be applied together.

IPv6 Source Guard and Prefix Guard is supported on EtherChannels

IPv6 Prefix Guard—The IPv6 prefix guard feature works within the IPv6 source guard feature to enable the device to deny traffic originated from non-topologically correct addresses. IPv6 prefix guard is often used when IPv6 prefixes are delegated to devices (for example, home gateways) using DHCP prefix delegation. The feature discovers ranges of addresses assigned to the link and blocks any traffic sourced with an address outside this range.

IPv6 Destination Guard—The IPv6 destination guard feature works with IPv6 neighbor discovery to ensure that the device performs address resolution only for those addresses that are known to be active on the link. It relies on the address glean functionality to populate all destinations active on the link into the binding table and then blocks resolutions before they happen when the destination is not found in the binding table.

IPv6 Destination Guard is recommended to apply on Layer 2 VLAN with an SVI configured.

### How to Configure IPv6 First Hop Security

#### Configuring an IPv6 Snooping Policy

The IPv6 Snooping Policy feature has been deprecated. Although the commands are visible on the CLI and you can configure them, we recommend that you use the Switch Integrated Security Feature (SISF)-based Device Tracking feature instead.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure IPv6 Snooping Policy:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipv6 snooping policy policy-name</td>
<td>Creates a snooping policy and enters IPv6 snooping policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ipv6 snooping policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{[default ]</td>
<td>[device-role {node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-ipv6-snooping)# security-level inspect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-ipv6-snooping)# trusted-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attaching an IPv6 Snooping Policy to an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Snooping policy on an interface or VLAN:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>interface interface_type stack/module/port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifies an interface type and identifier and enters the interface configuration mode.

**Step 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>switchport</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enters the Switchport mode.

**Note**

To configure Layer 2 parameters, if the interface is in Layer 3 mode, you must enter the `switchport` interface configuration command without any parameters to change the interface into Layer 2 mode. This shuts down the interface and then re-enables it, which might generate messages on the device to which the interface is connected. When change the interface mode from Layer 3 to Layer 2 mode, the previous configuration information related to the affected interface might be lost, and the interface is returned to its default configuration. The command prompt displays as (config-if)# in Switchport configuration mode.

**Step 5**

| ipv6 snooping [attach-policy policy_name [vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids]] | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| **Example:** | Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping |
| | Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy |
| | Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping vlan 111,112 |
| | Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy vlan 111,112 |

Attaches a custom IPv6 snooping policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on the interface. To attach the default policy to the interface, use the `ipv6 snooping` command without the `attach-policy` keyword. To attach the default policy to VLANs on the interface, use the `ipv6 snooping vlan` command. The default policy is, security-level `guard`, device-role `node`, protocol `ndp` and `dhcp`.

**Step 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>end</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
### Attaching an IPv6 Snooping Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Snooping policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>interface range interface_name</td>
<td>Specifies the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters the interface range configuration mode. Tip Enter the show interfaces summary command for quick reference to interface names and types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ipv6 snooping [attach-policy policy_name [vlan {vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[vlan [ {vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attaching an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Snooping Policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Command or Action</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>vlan configuration <em>vlan_list</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# vlan configuration 333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>ipv6 snooping [attach-policy <em>policy_name</em>]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 snooping attach-policy example_policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-vlan-config)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring the IPv6 Binding Table Content

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure IPv6 Binding Table Content:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>`[no] ipv6 neighbor binding [vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Adds a static entry to the binding table database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{ipv6-address interface interface_type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stack/module/port hw_address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>infinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[tracking] [default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>disable] [</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reachable-lifetimevalue [seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>infinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[enable [reachable-lifetimevalue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>infinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[retry-interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[seconds] default [reachable-lifetimevalue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>infinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# ipv6 neighbor binding</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>`[no] ipv6 neighbor binding max-entries</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of entries that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>number number [mac-limit number]</td>
<td>are allowed to be inserted in the binding table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[port-limit number</td>
<td>cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mac-limit number]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vlan-limit number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[mac-limit number]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[port-limit number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mac-limit number]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# ipv6 neighbor binding max-entries 30000</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><code>ipv6 neighbor binding logging</code></td>
<td>Enables the logging of binding table main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# ipv6 neighbor binding logging</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 the IPv6 ND Inspection feature is deprecated and the SISF-based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. For the corresponding replacement task, see Creating a Custom Device Tracking Policy with Custom Settings under the Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking chapter in this document.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure an IPv6 ND Inspection Policy:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**  
**enable**  
**Example:** 
Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**  
**configure terminal**  
**Example:** 
Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**  
**ipv6 nd inspection policy** policy-name  
**Example:** 
Device(config)# ipv6 nd inspection policy example_policy | Specifies the ND inspection policy name and enters ND Inspection Policy configuration mode. |
| **Step 4**  
**device-role** {host | switch}  
**Example:** 
Device(config-nd-inspection)# device-role switch | Specifies the role of the device attached to the port. The default is host. |
| **Step 5**  
**limit address-count** value  
**Example:** 
Device(config-nd-inspection)# limit address-count 1000 | Limits the number of IPv6 addresses allowed to be used on the port. |
| **Step 6**  
**tracking** {enable [reachable-lifetime {value | infinite}] | disable [stale-lifetime {value | infinite}]}  
**Example:** | Overrides the default tracking policy on a port. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 7**  
**show ipv6 neighbor binding**  
**Example:** 
Device# show ipv6 neighbor binding | Displays contents of a binding table. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-nd-inspection)# tracking disable stale-lifetime infinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> trusted-port</td>
<td>Configures a port to become a trusted port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-nd-inspection)# trusted-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> validate source-mac</td>
<td>Checks the source media access control (MAC) address against the link-layer address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-nd-inspection)# validate source-mac</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> no {device-role</td>
<td>limit address-count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-nd-inspection)# no validate source-mac</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> default {device-role</td>
<td>limit address-count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-nd-inspection)# default limit address-count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits ND Inspection Policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-nd-inspection)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong> show ipv6 nd inspection policy policy_name</td>
<td>Verifies the ND inspection configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# show ipv6 nd inspection policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attaching an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to an Interface

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 the IPv6 ND Inspection feature is deprecated and the SISF-based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. For the corresponding replacement task, see *Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to an Interface* under the *Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking* chapter in this document.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 ND Inspection policy to an interface or VLANs on an interface:
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interface interface-type interface-number</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name</td>
<td>Attaches the Neighbor Discovery Inspection policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on that interface. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ vlan {vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
<td>except vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ] }</td>
<td>vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd inspection attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd inspection attach-policy example_policy vlan 222,223,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd inspection vlan 222, 223,224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attaching an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 the IPv6 ND Inspection feature is deprecated and the SISF-based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. For the corresponding replacement task, see *Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to an Interface* under the *Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking* chapter in this document.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2**        |         |
| configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| Device# configure terminal | |

| **Step 3**        |         |
| interface range   | Specifies the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters interface range configuration mode. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| Device(config)# interface range Port-channel 11 | |

**Tip:** Enter the `show interfaces summary` command for quick reference to interface names and types.

| **Step 4**        |         |
| ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name | Attaches the ND Inspection policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on that interface. The default policy is attached if the `attach-policy` option is not used. |
| [ vlan {vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none | remove vlan_ids | all } ] | |
| Example:          |         |
| Device(config-if-range)# ipv6 nd inspection attach-policy example_policy | |
| Device(config-if-range)#ipv6 nd inspection vlan 222, 223,224 | |
| Device(config-if-range)# ipv6 nd inspection attach-policy example_policy vlan 222,223,224 | |

| **Step 5**        |         |
| end               | Exits interface range configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:**      |         |
| Device(config-if-range)# end | |

---

### Attaching an IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection Policy to VLANs Globally

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 the IPv6 ND Inspection feature is deprecated and the SISF-based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. For the corresponding replacement task, see *Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to a VLAN* under the *Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking* chapter in this document.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 ND Inspection policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:
## Configuring IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure an IPv6 Router Advertisement policy:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> vlan configuration vlan_list</td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the IPv6 Snooping policy will be attached, and enters VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# vlan configuration 334</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ipv6 nd inspection [attach-policy policy_name]</td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery policy to the specified VLANs across all switch and stack interfaces. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used. The default policy is, device-role host, no drop-unsecure, limit address-count disabled, sec-level minimum is disabled, tracking is disabled, no trusted-port, no validate source-mac.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 nd inspection attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits VLAN interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-vlan-config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv6 nd raguard policy policy-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the RA guard policy name and enters RA guard policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`[no]device-role {host</td>
<td>monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`hop-limit {maximum</td>
<td>minimum} value`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`managed-config-flag {off</td>
<td>on}`</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

**Step 3**

Device(config)# ipv6 nd raguard policy example_policy

**Step 4**

Device(config-nd-raguard)# device-role switch

**Note** For a network with both host-facing ports and router-facing ports, along with a RA guard policy configured with `device-role host` on host-facing ports or vlan, it is mandatory to configure a RA guard policy with `device-role router` on router-facing ports to allow the RA Guard feature to work properly.

**Step 5**

Device(config-nd-raguard)# hop-limit maximum 33

(1–255) Range for Maximum and Minimum Hop Limit values.

If not configured, this filter is disabled.

Configure `minimum` to block RA messages with Hop Limit values lower than the value you specify. Configure `maximum` to block RA messages with Hop Limit values greater than the value you specify.

**Step 6**

Device(config-nd-raguard)# managed-config-flag on

On—Accepts and forwards RA messages with an M value of 1, blocks those with 0.

Off—Accepts and forwards RA messages with an M value of 0, blocks those with 1.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>match {ipv6 access-list list</td>
<td>ra prefix-list list}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-nd-raguard)# match ipv6 access-list example_list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>other-config-flag {on</td>
<td>off}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-nd-raguard)# other-config-flag on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>[no]router-preference maximum {high</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-nd-raguard)# router-preference maximum high</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10</td>
<td>trusted-port</td>
<td>When configured as a trusted port, all attached devices are trusted, and no further message verification is performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-nd-raguard)# trusted-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 11</td>
<td>default {device-role</td>
<td>hop-limit {maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-nd-raguard)# default hop-limit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits RA Guard policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-nd-raguard)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attaching an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement policy to an interface or to VLANs on the interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>interface type number</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>ipv6 nd raguard [attach-policy policy_name [vlan vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vlan vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy vlan 222, 223, 224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd raguard vlan 222, 223, 224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Attaching an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>interface range type number</td>
<td>Specifies the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters interface range configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# interface Port-channel 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tip</td>
<td>Enter the show interfaces summary command in privileged EXEC mode for quick reference to interface names and types.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ipv6 nd raguard [attach-policy policy_name [vlan vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if-range)# ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if-range)# ipv6 nd raguard attach-policy example_policy vlan 222,223,224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if-range)#ipv6 nd raguard vlan 222, 223,224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits interface range configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if-range)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Attaching an IPv6 Router Advertisement Guard Policy to VLANs Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 Router Advertisement policy to VLANs regardless of interface:
### Configuring an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure an IPv6 DHCP (DHCPv6) Guard policy:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name]</code></td>
<td>Specifies the DHCPv6 Guard policy name and enters DHCPv6 Guard Policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# <code>ipv6 dhcp guard example_policy</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits VLAN interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-vlan-config)# <code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 4    | device-role {client | server} | (Optional) Filters out DHCPv6 replies and DHCPv6 advertisements on the port that are not from a device of the specified role. Default is client.  
  - client—Default value, specifies that the attached device is a client. Server messages are dropped on this port.  
  - server—Specifies that the attached device is a DHCPv6 server. Server messages are allowed on this port.  
  
| 5    | match server access-list ipv6-access-list-name | (Optional). Enables verification that the advertised DHCPv6 server or relay address is from an authorized server access list (The destination address in the access list is 'any'). If not configured, this check will be bypassed.  
An empty access list is treated as a permit all.  
  
| 6    | match reply prefix-list ipv6-prefix-list-name | (Optional) Enables verification of the advertised prefixes in DHCPv6 reply messages from the configured authorized prefix list. If not configured, this check will be bypassed.  
An empty prefix list is treated as a permit.  
  
| 7    | preference { max limit | min limit } | Configure max and min when device-role is server to filter DHCPv6 server advertisements by the server preference value. The defaults permit all advertisements.  
  - max limit—(0 to 255) (Optional) Enables verification that the advertised preference (in preference option) is less than the specified limit. Default is 255. If not specified, this check will be bypassed.  
  - min limit—(0 to 255) (Optional) Enables verification that the advertised preference (in preference option) is greater than the specified limit. Default is 255.
### Attaching an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to an Interface or a VLAN on an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure IPv6 Binding Table Content:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface type number</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [vlan vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attaching an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard policy on an EtherChannel interface or VLAN:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface range Interface_name</td>
<td>Specify the port-channel interface name assigned when the EtherChannel was created. Enters interface range configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface Port-channel 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [vlan vlan_ids</td>
<td>add vlan_ids</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example:

```
Device(config)# interface Port-channel 11
Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name [vlan vlan_ids | add vlan_ids | except vlan_ids | none remove vlan_ids | all]]
```

### Example:

```
Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy
Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy vlan 222, 223, 224
Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp guard vlan 222, 223, 224
Device(config-if)# end
```

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
### Attaching an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy to VLANs Globally

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach an IPv6 DHCP Guard policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> vlan configuration vlan_list</td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the IPv6 Snooping policy will be attached, and enters VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# vlan configuration 334</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ipv6 dhcp guard [attach-policy policy_name]</td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery policy to the specified VLANs across all switch and stack interfaces. The default policy is attached if the <strong>attach-policy</strong> option is not used. The default policy is, device-role <strong>client</strong>, no trusted-port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-vlan-config)#ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits VLAN interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if-range)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring IPv6 Source Guard

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name</td>
<td>Specifies the IPv6 Source Guard policy name and enters IPv6 Source Guard policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ipv6 source-guard policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>[deny global-autoconf] [permit link-local] [default {...}] [exit] [no {...}]</td>
<td>(Optional) Defines the IPv6 Source Guard policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-sisf-sourceguard)# deny global-autoconf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits of IPv6 Source Guard policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-sisf-sourceguard)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name</td>
<td>Shows the policy configuration and all the interfaces where the policy is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show ipv6 source-guard policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What to do next
Apply the IPv6 Source Guard policy to an interface.

Attaching an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to an Interface

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enable privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier; enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default policy is attached if the attach-policy option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Shows the policy configuration and all the interfaces where the policy is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attaching an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enable privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring IPv6 Prefix Guard

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

To allow routing protocol control packets sourced by a link-local address when prefix guard is applied, enable the `permit link-local` command in the source-guard policy configuration mode.

---

### Purpose Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>interface port-channel</strong></td>
<td><code>port-channel-number</code></td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and port number and places the switch in the port channel configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface Port-channel 4</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ipv6 source-guard</strong></td>
<td><code>[attach-policy &lt;policy_name&gt;]</code></td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default policy is attached if the <code>attach-policy</code> option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy example_policy</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>end</strong></td>
<td><code>policy_name</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>show ipv6 source-guard</strong></td>
<td><code>policy_name</code></td>
<td>Shows the policy configuration and all the interfaces where the policy is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example:</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# show ipv6 source-guard policy example_policy</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attaching an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to an Interface

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>interface type number</td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and identifier, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attaching an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enters privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies an interface type and port number and places the switch in the port channel configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface port-channel port-channel-number</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default policy is attached if the <code>attach-policy</code> option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv6 source-guard attach-policy &lt;policy_name&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default policy is attached if the <code>attach-policy</code> option is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shows the policy configuration and all the interfaces where the policy is applied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Configuring IPv6 First Hop Security

---

**Step 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv6 source-guard attach-policy policy_name</code></td>
<td>Attaches the IPv6 Source Guard policy to the interface. The default policy is attached if the <code>attach-policy</code> option is not used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy example_policy
```

**Step 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

**Step 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show ipv6 source-guard policy policy_name</code></td>
<td>Shows the policy configuration and all the interfaces where the policy is applied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# show ipv6 source-guard policy example_policy
```
### Configuration Examples for IPv6 First Hop Security

#### Example: Configuring an IPv6 DHCP Guard Policy

**Example of DHCPv6 Guard Configuration**

```bash
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ipv6 access-list acl1
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit host 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0001 any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# exit
Device(config)# ipv6 prefix-list abc permit 2001:0DB8::/64 le 128
Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp guard policy pol1
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# device-role server
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# match server access-list acl1
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# match reply prefix-list abc
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# preference min 0
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# preference max 255
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# trusted-port
Device(config-dhcp-guard)# exit
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/2/0
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy POL
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config-if)# vlan 1
Device(config-vlan)# ipv6 dhcp guard attach-policy POL
Device(config-vlan)# end
```

### Examples: Attaching an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

The following example shows how to attach an IPv6 Source Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface:

```bash
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ipv6 source-guard policy POL
Device(config-source-guard)# validate address
Device(config-source-guard)# exit
Device(config)# interface Port-Channel 4
Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping
Device(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy POL
```
Examples: Attaching an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface

The following example shows how to attach an IPv6 Prefix Guard Policy to a Layer 2 EtherChannel Interface:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ipv6 source-guard policy POL
Device (config-sisf-sourceguard)# no validate address
Device(config-sisf-sourceguard)# validate prefix
Device(config-sisf-sourceguard)# exit
Device(config)# interface Po4
Device(config-if)# ipv6 snooping
Device(config-if)# ipv6 source-guard attach-policy POL
Device(config-if)# end
```

Additional References for IPv6 First Hop Security

### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SISF</td>
<td>Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking chapter of the Security Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID and password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link restless.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

http://www.cisco.com/support

Feature History for IPv6 First Hop Security

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.
These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IPv6 First Hop Security</td>
<td>First Hop Security in IPv6 is a set of IPv6 security features, the policies of which can be attached to a physical interface, an EtherChannel interface, or a VLAN. An IPv6 software policy database service stores and accesses these policies. When a policy is configured or modified, the attributes of the policy are stored or updated in the software policy database, then applied as was specified. The IPv6 Snooping Policy feature has been deprecated. Although the commands are visible on the CLI and you can configure them, we recommend that you use the Switch Integrated Security Feature (SISF)-based Device Tracking feature instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1</td>
<td>IPv6 ND Inspection</td>
<td>Starting with this release, the IPv6 ND Inspection feature is deprecated and the SISF-based device tracking feature replaces it and offers the same capabilities. While the IPv6 ND Inspection commands are still available on the CLI and the existing configuration continues to be supported, the commands will be removed from the CLI in a later release. For more information about the replacement feature, see the <em>Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking</em> chapter in this guide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 24

Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking

- Information About SISF-Based Device Tracking, on page 419
- How to Configure SISF-Based Device Tracking, on page 422
- Configuration Examples for SISF-Based Device Tracking, on page 432
- Feature History for SISF-Based Device Tracking, on page 436

Information About SISF-Based Device Tracking

Overview of SISF-Based Device Tracking

The Switch Integrated Security Features based (SISF-based) device tracking feature is part of the suite of first-hop security features.

The main role of the feature is to track the presence, location, and movement of end-nodes in the network. SISF snoops traffic received by the switch, extracts device identity (MAC and IP address), and stores them in a binding table. Many features, such as, Cisco TrustSec, IEEE 802.1X, LISP, and web authentication depend on the accuracy of this information to operate properly.

SISF-based device tracking supports both IPv4 and IPv6.

Even with the introduction of SISF-based device tracking, the legacy device tracking CLI (IP Device Tracking (IPDT) and IPv6 Snooping CLI) continues to be available. When you bootup the switch, the set of commands that is available depends on existing configuration, and only one of the following is available:

- SISF-based device tracking CLI, or
- IPDT and IPv6 Snooping CLI

Note

The IPDT and IPv6 Snooping commands are deprecated, but continue to be available. We recommend that you upgrade to SISF-based device tracking.

If you are using the IPDT and IPv6 Snooping CLI and want to migrate to SISF-based device tracking, see Migrating from legacy IPDT and IPv6 Snooping to SISF-Based Device Tracking, for more information.

SISF-based device tracking can be enabled manually (by using device-tracking commands), or programmatically (which is the case when providing device tracking services to other features).
Support for multiple IA_NA and IA_PD

In some cases, a network device can request and receive more than one IPv6 address from the DHCP server. This may be done to provide addresses to multiple clients of the device, such as when a residential gateway requests addresses to distribute to its LAN clients. When the device sends out a DHCPv6 packet, the packet includes all of the addresses that have been assigned to the device.

When SISF analyzes a DHCPv6 packet, it examines the IA_NA (Identity Association-Nontemporary Address) and IA_PD (Identity Association-Prefix Delegation) components of the packet, and extracts each IPv6 address contained in the packet. SISF adds each extracted address to the binding table.

Options to Enable SISF-Based Device Tracking

SISF-based device tracking is disabled by default.

You can enable it by defining a device tracking policy and attaching the policy to a specific target.

Note: The target could be an interface or a VLAN.

Manually Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking

- **Option 1**: Apply the *default* device tracking policy to a target.

  Enter the `device-tracking` command in the interface configuration mode or in the VLAN configuration mode. The system then attaches the *default* policy to the interface or VLAN.

  Note: The *default* policy is a built-in policy with default settings; you cannot change any of the attributes of the *default* policy. In order to be able to configure device tracking policy attributes you must create a custom policy. See **Option 2: Create a custom policy with custom settings**.

- **Option 2**: Create a custom policy with custom settings.

  Enter the `device-tracking` command in global configuration mode and enter a custom policy name. The system creates a policy with the name you specify. You can then configure the available settings, in the device tracking configuration mode (config-device-tracking), and attach the policy to a specified target.

Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking

Some features rely on device tracking and utilize the trusted database of binding entries that SISF-based device tracking builds and maintains. These features, also called device tracking clients, enable device tracking programmatically (create and attach the device tracking policy).

Note: The exceptions here are IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IP Source Guard (IPSG) - they also rely on device tracking, but they do not enable it. For these device tracking clients, you must enter the `ip dhcp snooping vlan vlan` command, to programmatically enable device tracking on a particular target.
Note the following about programmatically enabling SISF-based device tracking:

- A device tracking client requires device tracking to be enabled.

  There are several device tracking clients, therefore, multiple programmatic policies could be created. The settings of each policy differ depending on the device tracking client that creates the policy.

- The policy that is created, and its settings, are system-defined.

  Configurable policy attributes are available in the device tracking configuration mode (config-device-tracking) and vary from one release to another. If you try to modify an attribute that is not configurable, the configuration change is rejected and an error message is displayed.

For release-specific information about programmatically created policies, see *Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE <release name> <release number>* in the required version of the document.

**Migrating from Legacy IPDT and IPv6 Snooping to SISF-Based Device Tracking**

Based on the legacy configuration that exists on your device, the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command upgrades your CLI differently. Consider the following configuration scenarios and the corresponding migration results before you migrate your existing configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You cannot configure a mix of the old IPDT and IPv6 snooping CLI with the SISF-based device tracking CLI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Only IPDT Configuration Exists**

If your device has only IPDT configuration, running the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command converts the configuration to use the new SISF policy that is created and attached to the interface. You can then update this SISF policy.

If you continue to use the legacy commands, this restricts you to operate in a legacy mode where only the legacy IPDT and IPv6 snooping commands are available on the device.

**Only IPv6 Snooping Configuration Exists**

On a device with existing IPv6 snooping configuration, the old IPv6 Snooping commands are available for further configuration. The following options are available:

- (Recommended) Use the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command to convert all your legacy configuration to the new SISF-based device tracking commands. After conversion, only the new device tracking commands will work on your device.

- Use the legacy IPv6 Snooping commands for your future configuration and do not run the `device-tracking upgrade-cli` command. With this option, only the legacy IPv6 Snooping commands are available on your device, and you cannot use the new SISF-based device tracking CLI commands.
Both IPDT and IPv6 Snooping Configuration Exist

On a device that has both legacy IPDT configuration and IPv6 snooping configuration, you can convert legacy commands to the SISF-based device tracking CLI commands. However, note that only one snooping policy can be attached to an interface, and the IPv6 snooping policy parameters override the IPDT settings.

Note

If you do not migrate to the new SISF-based commands and continue to use the legacy IPv6 snooping or IPDT commands, your IPv4 device tracking configuration information may be displayed in the IPv6 snooping commands, as the SISF-based device tracking feature handles both IPv4 and IPv6 configuration. To avoid this, we recommend that you convert your legacy configuration to SISF-based device tracking commands.

No IPDT or IPv6 Snooping Configuration Exists

If your device has no legacy IP Device Tracking or IPv6 Snooping configurations, you can use only the new SISF-based device tracking commands for all your future configuration. The legacy IPDT commands and IPv6 snooping commands are not available.

How to Configure SISF-Based Device Tracking

Manually Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking

Applying the Default Device Tracking Policy to a Target

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to apply the default device tracking policy to an interface or VLAN:

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> enable |  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device# configure terminal | |
| Step 3 | Specify an interface or a VLAN  
• interface interface  
• vlan configuration vlan_list | interface type number—Specifies the interface and enters interface configuration mode. The device tracking policy will be attached to the specified interface.  
vlan configuration vlan_list—Specifies the VLANs and enters VLAN feature configuration mode. The device tracking policy will be attached to the specified VLAN.  
Example:  
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4 |
### Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR Device(config)# vlan configuration 333</td>
<td>Enables SISF-based device tracking and attaches the default policy it to the interface or VLAN. The default policy is a built-in policy with default settings; none of the attributes of the default policy can be changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 4**

`device-tracking`

**Example:**

Device(config-if)# device-tracking

OR

Device(config-vlan-config)# device-tracking

**Step 5**

`end`

**Example:**

Device(config-if)# end

OR

Device(config-vlan-config)# end

**Step 6**

`show device-tracking policy policy-name`

**Example:**

Device# show device-tracking policy default

### Creating a Custom Device Tracking Policy with Custom Settings

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to create and configure a device tracking policy:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. <em>Enter your password if prompted.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device> enable

| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |

**Example:**

Device# configure terminal

| **Step 3** [no] device-tracking policy policy-name | Creates the policy and enters device-tracking configuration mode. |

**Example:**

Device(config)# device-tracking policy example_policy

| **Step 4** [data-glean | default | destination-glean | device-role | distribution-switch | exit | limit | no | prefix-glean | protocol | security-level | tracking | trusted-port | vpc] | Enter the question mark (?) at the system prompt to obtain a list of available options in this mode. You can configure the following for both IPv4 and IPv6: *Optional data-glean—Enables learning of addresses from a data packet snooped |

**Example:**

Device(config)# device-tracking policy example_policy

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-device-tracking)# destination-glean log-only</code></td>
<td>from a source inside the network and populates the binding table with the data traffic source address. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• log-only—Generates a syslog message upon data packet notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• recovery—Uses a protocol to enable binding table recovery. Enter <strong>NDP</strong> or <strong>DHCP</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>default</strong>—Sets the policy attribute to its default value. You can set these policy attributes to their default values: <em>data-glean, destination-glean, device-role, limit, prefix-glean, protocol, security-level, tracking, trusted-port</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>destination-glean</strong>—Populates the binding table by gleaning data traffic destination address. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• log-only—Generates a syslog message upon data packet notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• recovery—Uses a protocol to enable binding table recovery. Enter <strong>DHCP</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>device-role</strong>—Sets the role of the device attached to the port. It can be a node or a switch. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• node—Configures the attached device as a node. This is the default option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• switch—Configures the attached device as a switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) <strong>distribution-switch</strong>—Although visible on the CLI, this option is not supported. Any configuration settings you make will not take effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• exit—Exits the device-tracking policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>limit address-count</strong>—Specifies an address count limit per port. The range is 1 to 32000.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• no—Negates the command or sets it to defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) <strong>prefix-glean</strong>—Enables learning of prefixes from either IPv6 Router Advertisements or from DHCP-PD. You have the following option:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) <strong>only</strong>—Gleans only prefixes and not host addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) <strong>protocol</strong>—Sets the protocol to glean; by default, all are gleaned. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>arp</strong> [prefix-list ( name )]—Gleans addresses in ARP packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dhcp4</strong> [prefix-list ( name )]—Glean addresses in DHCPv4 packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dhcp6</strong> [prefix-list ( name )]—Glean addresses in DHCPv6 packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ndp</strong> [prefix-list ( name )]—Glean addresses in NDP packets. Optionally, enter the name of prefix-list that is to be matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>udp</strong> [prefix-list ( name )]—Although visible on the CLI, this option is not supported. Any configuration settings you make will not take effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) <strong>security-level</strong>—Specifies the level of security enforced by the feature. Enter one of these options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>glean</strong>—Gleans addresses passively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>guard</strong>—Inspects and drops un-authorized messages. This is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inspect</strong>—Gleans and validates messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Configuring SISF-Based Device Tracking

## Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to an Interface

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach a device tracking policy to an interface:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ```
  • (Optional) **tracking**—Specifies a tracking option. Enter one of these options:
    • **disable** [stale-lifetime [1-86400-seconds | infinite]] —Turns off device-tracking.
    Optionally, you can enter the duration for which the entry is kept inactive before deletion, or keep it permanently inactive.
    • **enable** [reachable-lifetime [1-86400-seconds | infinite]] —Turns on device-tracking. 
    Optionally, you can enter the duration for which the entry is kept reachable, or keep it permanently reachable.
    • (Optional) **trusted-port**—Sets up a trusted port. Disables the guard on applicable targets. Bindings learned through a trusted port have preference over bindings learned through any other port. A trusted port is given preference in case of a collision while making an entry in the table.
    • (Optional) **vpc**—Although visible on the CLI, this option is not supported. Any configuration settings you make will not take effect.
``` |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>Exits device-tracking configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>show device-tracking policy <strong>policy-name</strong></th>
<th>Displays the device-tracking policy configuration.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### What to do next

Attach the policy to an interface or VLAN.
**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt;</code> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>interface interface</code></td>
<td>Specifies an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# interface</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>gigabitethernet 1/1/4</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>device-tracking attach-policy</code></td>
<td>Attaches the device tracking policy to the interface. Device tracking is also supported on EtherChannels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>policy name</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# device-tracking</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>attach-policy example_policy</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>SISF based device-tracking policies can be disabled only if they are custom policies. Programmatically created policies can be removed only if the corresponding device-tracking client feature configuration is removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><code>show device-tracking policies</code></td>
<td>Displays policies that match the specified interface type and number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>interface</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# show device-tracking policies</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>interface gigabitethernet 1/1/4</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to a VLAN**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to attach a device-tracking policy to VLANs across multiple interfaces:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attaching a Device Tracking Policy to a VLAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong>&lt;br&gt;configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong>&lt;br&gt;vlan configuration vlan_list</td>
<td>Specifies the VLANs to which the device tracking policy will be attached; enters the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# vlan configuration 333</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong>&lt;br&gt;device-tracking attach-policy policy_name</td>
<td>Attaches the device tracking policy to the specified VLANs across all switch interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong>&lt;br&gt;SISF based device-tracking policies can be disabled only if they are custom policies. Programmatically created policies can be removed only if the corresponding device-tracking client feature configuration is removed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-vlan-config)# device-tracking attach-policy example_policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong>&lt;br&gt;do show device-tracking policies vlan vlan-ID</td>
<td>Verifies that the policy is attached to the specified VLAN, without exiting the VLAN interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-vlan-config)# do show device-tracking policies vlan 333</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong>&lt;br&gt;end</td>
<td>Exits VLAN feature configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-vlan-config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and Later Releases

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and all later releases, you can programmatically enable SISF-based device tracking for these features:

- IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IPSG features: enter the `ip dhcp snooping vlan` command.
- Cisco Locator/ID Separation Protocol.
- EVPN on VLAN

**Note** If there is more than one programmatically created policy, the policy with the highest priority is effective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy Name</th>
<th>Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IPSG features use policy `DT-PROGRAMMATIC`.
| The LISP feature creates `LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN` or `LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN`.
| EVPN on VLAN feature creates `evpn-sisf-policy` |

The list of settings differ with each programmatic policy. See the examples for more information.
| User Options | • Policy priority is supported. Priority is determined by how the policy is created. A manually created policy has the highest priority. This enables you to apply policy settings that are different from policies that are generated programmatically.  
• Multiple policies can be attached to the same VLAN.  
• When multiple policies with different priorities are attached to the same VLAN, the settings of the policy with the highest priority are effective. The exceptions here are the limit address-count for IPv4 per mac and limit address-count for IPv6 per mac settings - the settings of the policy with the lowest priority are effective.  
• The policy cannot be removed unless the device tracking client feature configuration is removed.  
• The policy attributes cannot be changed.  
• You cannot change the address count limit per MAC. This refers to the limit address-count for IPv4 per mac and limit address-count for IPv6 per mac commands.  
• In order to change a policy setting on a VLAN, create a customized device-tracking policy and attach it to the VLAN  
• When a device-tracking policy is attached to an interface under a VLAN, the policy settings on the interface take precedence over those on its VLAN; exceptions here are the values for limit address-count for IPv4 per mac and limit address-count for IPv6 per mac, which are aggregated from the policy on both the interface and VLAN. |

---

**Configuring a Multi-Switch Network to Stop Creating Binding Entries from a Trunk Port**

In a multi-switch network, SISF-based device tracking provides the capability to distribute binding table entries between switches running the feature. Binding entries are only created on the switches where the host appears on an access port. No entry is created for a host that appears over a trunk port. This is achieved by configuring a policy with the **trusted-port** and **device-role switch** options, and attaching it to the trunk port.

Both, the **trusted-port**, and **device-role switch** options, must be configured in the policy.

Further, we recommended that you apply such a policy on a port facing a device, which also has SISF-based device tracking enabled.

Complete the following steps:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 3** device-tracking policy  
**policy-name** | Enters device-tracking policy configuration mode, for the specified policy. |
| **Example:** Device(config)# device-tracking policy example_trusted_policy | |
| **Step 4** device-role switch | Specifies the role of the device attached to the port. Default is node. Enter the **device-role switch** option to stop the creation of binding entries for the port. |
| **Example:** Device(config-device-tracking)# device-role switch | |
| **Step 5** trusted-port | Sets up a trusted port. Disables the guard on applicable targets. Bindings learned through a trusted port have preference over bindings learned through any other port. A trusted port is given preference in case of a collision while making an entry in the table. |
| **Example:** Device(config-device-tracking)# trusted-port | |
| **Step 6** exit | Exits device-tracking policy configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode |
| **Example:** Device(config-device-tracking)# exit | |
| **Step 7** interface  
**interface** | Specifies an interface and enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Example:** Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/25 | |
| **Step 8** device-tracking attach-policy  
**policy-name** | Attaches a device tracking policy to the interface or the specified VLANs on the interface. |
| **Example:** Device(config-if)# device-tracking attach-policy example_trusted_policy | |
| **Step 9** end | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| **Example:** Device(config-if)# end | |
Configuration Examples for SISF-Based Device Tracking

These examples show sample device-tracking configuration and other recommended or related configuration for certain situations.

Example: Programmatically Enabling SISF-Based Device Tracking in Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.9.x and Later Releases

The sample output in the examples show the different settings of programmatically created policies.

Device tracking client: LISP on VLAN

After you configure LISP, enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN policy that is created and the corresponding settings.

```
Device> enable
Device# show device-tracking policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN

Policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN configuration:
  security-level guard (*)
  device-role node
  gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
  gleaning from DHCP
  gleaning from ARP
  gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  limit address-count for IPv4 per mac 4 (*)
  limit address-count for IPv6 per mac 12 (*)
  tracking enable

Policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN is applied on the following targets:
  Target Type Policy Feature Target range
  vlan 10 VLAN LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN Device-tracking vlan all

note:
  Binding entry Down timer: 10 minutes (*)
  Binding entry Stale timer: 30 minutes (*)
```

Device tracking client: LISP on VLAN

After you configure LISP, enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN policy that is created and the corresponding settings:

```
Device# show device-tracking policy LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN

Policy LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN configuration:
  security-level glean (*)
  device-role node
  gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
  gleaning from DHCP
  gleaning from ARP
  gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  limit address-count for IPv4 per mac 4 (*)
  limit address-count for IPv6 per mac 12 (*)
  tracking enable

Policy LISP-DT-GUILD-VLAN is applied on the following targets:
  Target Type Policy Feature Target range
  vlan 10 VLAN LISP-DT-GUILD-VLAN Device-tracking vlan all

note:
  Binding entry Down timer: 10 minutes (*)
  Binding entry Stale timer: 30 minutes (*)
```
vlan 10  VLAN LISP-DT-GLEAN-VLAN  Device-tracking  vlan all

note:
Binding entry Down timer: 10 minutes (*)
Binding entry Stale timer:  30 minutes (*)

Device tracking client: EVPN on VLAN

After you configure EVPN, enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the `evpn-sisf-policy` policy that is created and the corresponding settings that are made:

Device# show device-tracking policy evpn-sisf-policy

Policy evpn-sisf-policy configuration:
  security-level glean (*)
  device-role node
  gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
  gleaning from DHCP
  gleaning from ARP
  gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  tracking enable
Policy evpn-sisf-policy is applied on the following targets:
Target  Type  Policy  Feature  Target range
vlan 10  VLAN  evpn-sisf-policy  Device-tracking  vlan all

note:
Binding entry Down timer: 24 hours (*)
Binding entry Stale timer:  24 hours (*)

Device tracking clients: IEEE 802.1X, Web Authentication, Cisco TrustSec, IPSG

Configure the `ip dhcp snooping vlan` command in global configuration mode to enable device-tracking for the IEEE 802.1X, web authentication, Cisco TrustSec, and IPSG features. Enter the `show device-tracking policy` command in privileged EXEC mode, to display the `DT-PROGRAMMATIC` policy that is created and the corresponding settings that are made:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp snooping vlan 10
Device(config)# end
Device# show device-tracking policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC

Policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC configuration:
  security-level glean (*)
  device-role node
  gleaning from Neighbor Discovery
  gleaning from DHCP
  gleaning from ARP
  gleaning from DHCP4
  NOT gleaning from protocol unkn
  limit address-count for IPv4 per mac 1 (*)
  tracking enable
Policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC is applied on the following targets:
Target  Type  Policy  Feature  Target range
vlan 10  VLAN  DT-PROGRAMMATIC  Device-tracking  vlan all

note:
Binding entry Down timer: 24 hours (*)
Binding entry Stale timer:  24 hours (*)
Identifying the Active Policy When Multiple Policies are Applied to a Target

This example shows you how to identify the active policy when multiple policies are attached to the same VLAN.

In this example, two policies are attached to VLAN 10; LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN is the active policy.

```
Device# show device-tracking policies
Target                      Type       Policy Feature     Target range
vlan 10                     VLAN       DT-PROGRAMMATIC Device-tracking vlan all
vlan 10                     VLAN       LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN Device-tracking vlan all
```

```
Device# show device-tracking capture-policy vlan 10
HW Target vlan 10 HW policy signature 0001DF9F policies#:2 rules 14 sig 0001DF9F
SW policy DT-PROGRAMMATIC feature Device-tracking -
SW policy LISP-DT-GUARD-VLAN feature Device-tracking - Active
```

Example: Disabling IPv6 Device Tracking on a Target

By default, SISF-based device tracking supports both IPv4 and IPv6. The following configuration examples show how you can disable IPv6 device tracking if you have to:

Disabling IPv6 device tracking when the target is attached to a custom policy:

```
Device(config)# device-tracking policy example-policy
Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol ndp
Device(config-device-tracking)# no protocol dhcp6
Device(config-device-tracking)# end
```

Disabling IPv6 device tracking when the target is attached to a programmatic policy:

Example: Enabling IPv6 for SVI on VLAN (To Mitigate the Duplicate Address Problem)

When IPv6 is enabled in the network and a switched virtual interface (SVI) is configured on a VLAN, we recommend that you add the following to the SVI configuration. This enables the SVI to acquire a link-local address automatically; this address is used as the source IP address of the SISF probe, thus preventing the duplicate IP address issue.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface vlan 10
Device(config-if)# ipv6 enable
Device(config-if)# end
```

Example: Mitigating the IPv4 Duplicate Address Problem

This example shows how you can tackle the Duplicate IP Address 0.0.0.0 error message problem encountered by clients that run Microsoft Windows:
Configure the `device-tracking tracking auto-source` command in global configuration mode. This command determines the source IP and MAC address used in the Address Resolution Packet (ARP) request sent by the switch to probe a client, in order to maintain its entry in the device-tracking table. The purpose, is to avoid using 0.0.0.0 as source IP address.

**Note**  
Configure the `device-tracking tracking auto-source` command when a switch virtual interface (SVI) is not configured. You do not have to configure it when a SVI is configured with an IPv4 address on the VLAN.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>device-tracking tracking auto-source</code></td>
<td>• Set source to VLAN SVI if present.</td>
<td>We recommend that you disable device-tracking on all trunk ports to avoid MAC flapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Look for IP and MAC binding in device-tracking table from same subnet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use 0.0.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>device-tracking tracking auto-source override</code></td>
<td>• Set source to VLAN SVI if present</td>
<td>Not recommended when there is no SVI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use 0.0.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ip device tracking probe auto-source fallback 0.0.0.X 255.255.255.0</code></td>
<td>• Set source to VLAN SVI if present.</td>
<td>We recommend that you disable device-tracking on all trunk ports to avoid MAC flapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Look for IP and MAC binding in device-tracking table from same subnet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Compute source IP from client IP using host bit and mask provided.</td>
<td>The computed IPv4 address must not be assigned to any client or network device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source MAC is taken from the MAC address of the switchport facing the client*.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>device-tracking tracking auto-source fallback 0.0.0.X 255.255.255.0 override</code></td>
<td>• Set source to VLAN SVI if present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compute source IP from client IP using host bit and mask provided*.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source MAC is taken from the MAC address of the switchport facing the client*.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* Depending on the client IP address, an IPv4 address has to be reserved for the source IP.

A reserved source IPv4 address = (host-ip and mask) | client-ip

- Client IP = 192.0.2.25
- Source IP = (192.0.2.25 and 255.255.255.0) | (0.0.0.1) = 192.0.2.1

IP address 192.0.2.1 should not be assigned to any client or network device.

Example: Avoiding a Short Device-Tracking Binding Reachable Time

When migrating from an older release, the following configuration may be present:

```
device-tracking binding reachable-time 10
```

Remove this by entering the `no` version of the command.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# no device-tracking binding reachable-time 10
Device(config)# end
```

Feature History for SISF-Based Device Tracking

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>SISF-Based Device Tracking</td>
<td>Tracks the presence, location, and movement of end-nodes in the network. The feature snoops traffic received by the switch, extracts device identity (MAC and IP address), and stores them in a binding table. Other features (device tracking clients) depend on the accuracy of this information to operate properly. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [https://cfmg.cisco.com](https://cfmg.cisco.com).
Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

This chapter describes how to configure IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication. IEEE 802.1x authentication prevents unauthorized devices (clients) from gaining access to the network. Unless otherwise noted, the term switch refers to a standalone switch or a switch stack.

- Restrictions for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 437
- Information About IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 437
- How to Configure IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 470
- Configuration Examples for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 514
- Monitoring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication Statistics and Status, on page 516
- Feature History for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication, on page 516

Restrictions for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

- Switchports are always unauthorized when used with private VLANs. Dynamic VLANs pushed from the Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) server is not supported on private VLAN ports. The data client session is expected to authorize on the secondary VLAN of the private VLAN dot1x port.

- Only interface-configured private VLAN-based authorization and dynamic VLAN on a normal access VLAN port is supported.

- If the dot1q tag vlan native command is configured globally, the dot1x reauthentication will fail on trunk ports.

- Do not configure the same VLAN ID for both voice VLAN and access VLAN at the same time, because it may cause authentication failures.

Information About IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

The 802.1x standard defines a client-server-based access control and authentication protocol that prevents unauthorized clients from connecting to a LAN through publicly accessible ports unless they are properly authenticated. The authentication server authenticates each client connected to a switch port before making available any services offered by the switch or the LAN.
Overview of IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

The 802.1x standard defines a client-server-based access control and authentication protocol that prevents unauthorized clients from connecting to a LAN through publicly accessible ports unless they are properly authenticated. The authentication server authenticates each client connected to a switch port before making available any services offered by the switch or the LAN.

Overview of IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

TACACS is not supported with 802.1x authentication.

Until the client is authenticated, 802.1x access control allows only Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL), Cisco Discovery Protocol, and Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) traffic through the port to which the client is connected. After authentication is successful, normal traffic can pass through the port.

Port-Based Authentication Process

To configure IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication, you must enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) and specify the authentication method list. A method list describes the sequence and authentication method to be queried to authenticate a user.

The AAA process begins with authentication. When 802.1x port-based authentication is enabled and the client supports 802.1x-compliant client software, these events occur:

- If the client identity is valid and the 802.1x authentication succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network.
- If 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL message exchange and MAC authentication bypass is enabled, the switch can use the client MAC address for authorization. If the client MAC address is valid and the authorization succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network. If the client MAC address is invalid and the authorization fails, the switch assigns the client to a guest VLAN that provides limited services if a guest VLAN is configured.
- If the switch gets an invalid identity from an 802.1x-capable client and a restricted VLAN is specified, the switch can assign the client to a restricted VLAN that provides limited services.
- If the RADIUS authentication server is unavailable (down) and inaccessible authentication bypass is enabled, the switch grants the client access to the network by putting the port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or the user-specified access VLAN.

Note

Inaccessible authentication bypass is also referred to as critical authentication or the AAA fail policy.
If Multi Domain Authentication (MDA) is enabled on a port, this flow can be used with some exceptions that are applicable to voice authorization.

Figure 23: Authentication Flowchart

This figure shows the authentication process.

The switch reauthenticates a client when one of these situations occurs:

- Periodic reauthentication is enabled, and the reauthentication timer expires.

You can configure the reauthentication timer to use a switch-specific value or to be based on values from the RADIUS server.

After 802.1x authentication using a RADIUS server is configured, the switch uses timers based on the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute [29]).

The Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) specifies the time after which reauthentication occurs. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds.

The Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]) specifies the action to take during reauthentication. The actions are Initialize and ReAuthenticate. When the Initialize action is set (the attribute value is DEFAULT), the 802.1x session ends, and connectivity is lost during reauthentication. When the ReAuthenticate action is set (the attribute value is RADIUS-Request), the session is not affected during reauthentication.

- You manually reauthenticate the client by entering the **dot1x re-authenticate interface interface-id** privileged EXEC command.
Port-Based Authentication Initiation and Message Exchange

During 802.1x authentication, the switch or the client can initiate authentication. If you enable authentication on a port by using the `authentication port-control auto` interface configuration command, the switch initiates authentication when the link state changes from down to up or periodically as long as the port remains up and unauthenticated. The switch sends an EAP-request/identity frame to the client to request its identity. Upon receipt of the frame, the client responds with an EAP-response/identity frame.

However, if during bootup, the client does not receive an EAP-request/identity frame from the switch, the client can initiate authentication by sending an EAPOL-start frame, which prompts the switch to request the client’s identity.

If 802.1x authentication is not enabled or supported on the network access device, any EAPOL frames from the client are dropped. If the client does not receive an EAP-request/identity frame after three attempts to start authentication, the client sends frames as if the port is in the authorized state. A port in the authorized state effectively means that the client has been successfully authenticated.

When the client supplies its identity, the switch begins its role as the intermediary, passing EAP frames between the client and the authentication server until authentication succeeds or fails. If the authentication succeeds, the switch port becomes authorized. If the authentication fails, authentication can be retried, the port might be assigned to a VLAN that provides limited services, or network access is not granted.

The specific exchange of EAP frames depends on the authentication method being used.

Figure 24: Message Exchange

This figure shows a message exchange initiated by the client when the client uses the One-Time-Password (OTP) authentication method with a RADIUS server.

If 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL message exchange and MAC authentication bypass is enabled, the switch can authorize the client when the switch detects an Ethernet packet from the
client. The switch uses the MAC address of the client as its identity and includes this information in the RADIUS-access/request frame that is sent to the RADIUS server. After the server sends the switch the RADIUS-access/accept frame (authorization is successful), the port becomes authorized. If authorization fails and a guest VLAN is specified, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN. If the switch detects an EAPOL packet while waiting for an Ethernet packet, the switch stops the MAC authentication bypass process and starts 802.1x authentication.

**Figure 25: Message Exchange During MAC Authentication Bypass**

This figure shows the message exchange during MAC authentication bypass.

![Message Exchange During MAC Authentication Bypass](image)

### Port-Based Authentication Methods

**Table 26: 802.1x Features**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authentication method</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Single host</th>
<th>Multiple host</th>
<th>MDA</th>
<th>Multiple Authentication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>802.1x</td>
<td></td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC authentication bypass</td>
<td></td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
<td>VLAN assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
<td>Per-user ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
<td>Filter-ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
<td>Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
<td>Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Per-User ACLs and Filter IDs

**Note**
Using role-based ACLs as Filter ID is not recommended.

More than one host can be authenticated on MDA-enabled and multiauth ports. The ACL policy applied for one host does not affect the traffic of another host. If only one host is authenticated on a multi-host port, and the other hosts gain network access without authentication, the ACL policy for the first host can be applied to the other connected hosts by specifying any in the source address.

### Ports in Authorized and Unauthorized States

During 802.1x authentication, depending on the switch port state, the switch can grant a client access to the network. The port starts in the unauthorized state. While in this state, the port that is not configured as a voice VLAN port disallows all ingress and egress traffic except for 802.1x authentication, Cisco Discovery Protocol, and STP packets. When a client is successfully authenticated, the port changes to the authorized state, allowing all traffic for the client to flow normally. If the port is configured as a voice VLAN port, the port allows VoIP traffic and 802.1x protocol packets before the client is successfully authenticated.

**Note**
Cisco Discovery Protocol bypass is not supported and may cause a port to go into err-disabled state.

If a client that does not support 802.1x authentication connects to an unauthorized 802.1x port, the switch requests the client’s identity. In this situation, the client does not respond to the request, the port remains in the unauthorized state, and the client is not granted access to the network.

In contrast, when an 802.1x-enabled client connects to a port that is not running the 802.1x standard, the client initiates the authentication process by sending the EAPOL-start frame. When no response is received, the

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authentication method</th>
<th>Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standalone web authentication</td>
<td>Proxy ACL, Filter-Id attribute, downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAC Layer 2 IP validation</td>
<td>Filter-Id attribute, Downloadable ACL, Redirect URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web authentication as fallback method</td>
<td>Proxy ACL, Filter-Id attribute, Downloadable ACL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

6 Supported in Cisco IOS Release 12.2(50)SE and later.

7 For clients that do not support 802.1x authentication.
client sends the request for a fixed number of times. Because no response is received, the client begins sending frames as if the port is in the authorized state.

You control the port authorization state by using the `authentication port-control` interface configuration command and these keywords:

- **force-authorized**: Disables 802.1x authentication and causes the port to change to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. The port sends and receives normal traffic without 802.1x-based authentication of the client. This is the default setting.

- **force-unauthorized**: Causes the port to remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the client to authenticate. The switch cannot provide authentication services to the client through the port.

- **auto**: Enables 802.1x authentication and causes the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port changes from down to up or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The switch requests the identity of the client and begins relaying authentication messages between the client and the authentication server. Each client attempting to access the network is uniquely identified by the switch by using the client MAC address.

If the client is successfully authenticated (receives an Accept frame from the authentication server), the port state changes to authorized, and all frames from the authenticated client are allowed through the port. If the authentication fails, the port remains in the unauthorized state, but authentication can be retried. If the authentication server cannot be reached, the switch can resend the request. If no response is received from the server after the specified number of attempts, authentication fails, and network access is not granted.

When a client logs off, it sends an EAPOL-logoff message, causing the switch port to change to the unauthorized state.

If the link state of a port changes from up to down, or if an EAPOL-logoff frame is received, the port returns to the unauthorized state.

### 802.1x Host Mode

You can configure an 802.1x port for single-host or for multiple-hosts mode. In single-host mode, only one client can be connected to the 802.1x-enabled switch port. The switch detects the client by sending an EAPOL frame when the port link state changes to the up state. If a client leaves or is replaced with another client, the switch changes the port link state to down, and the port returns to the unauthorized state.

In multiple-hosts mode, you can attach multiple hosts to a single 802.1x-enabled port. In this mode, only one of the attached clients must be authorized for all clients to be granted network access. If the port becomes unauthorized (reauthentication fails or an EAPOL-logoff message is received), the switch denies network access to all of the attached clients.

In this topology, the wireless access point is responsible for authenticating the clients attached to it, and it also acts as a client to the switch.

*Figure 26: Multiple Host Mode Example*
For all host modes, the line protocol stays up before authorization when port-based authentication is configured.

The switch supports multidomain authentication (MDA), which allows both a data device and a voice device, such as an IP Phone, to connect to the same switch port.

**Access Session Limit Profile**

An access session limit profile will allow you to limit the number of voice and data hosts connecting to a port. An access session limit profile will have higher priority compared to any host mode configuration. When an access session limit profile is configured the host mode configuration will be ignored.

You can create an access session limit profile by using the `access-session limit profile` command in the global configuration mode. You can configure the profile to limit the number of data and voice sessions allowed per interface. The profile can be configured to allow multiple hosts and to bypass authentication based on CDP packets if CDP bypass is supported.

The access session limit profile needs to be applied at an interface level.

You can also attach the access session limit profile to an interface template.

**MAC Move**

When a MAC address is authenticated on one switch port, that address is not allowed on another authentication manager-enabled port of the switch. If the switch detects that same MAC address on another authentication manager-enabled port, the address is not allowed.

There are situations where a MAC address might need to move from one port to another on the same switch. For example, when there is another device (for example a hub or an IP phone) between an authenticated host and a switch port, you might want to disconnect the host from the device and connect it directly to another port on the same switch.

You can globally enable MAC move so the device is reauthenticated on the new port. When a host moves to a second port, the session on the first port is deleted, and the host is reauthenticated on the new port. MAC move is supported on all host modes. (The authenticated host can move to any port on the switch, no matter which host mode is enabled on that port.) When a MAC address moves from one port to another, the switch terminates the authenticated session on the original port and initiates a new authentication sequence on the new port. The MAC move feature applies to both voice and data hosts.

In open authentication mode, a MAC address is immediately moved from the original port to the new port, with no requirement for authorization on the new port.

MAC move with port security is not supported.

MAC move from an authentication manager-enabled port to an authentication manager-disabled port on a device is enabled by default. For this to work, MAC move must be enabled globally, that is, the `authentication mac-move permit` command must be configured in legacy mode, or, the `no access-session mac-move deny` command must be configured in IBNS 2.0. When MAC move is disabled globally, MAC move is denied. To disable MAC move from an authentication manager-enabled port to an authentication manager-disabled port on a device, use the `authentication mac-move deny-uncontrolled` command.
MAC Replace

The MAC Replace feature can be configured to address the violation that occurs when a host attempts to connect to a port where another host was previously authenticated.

Note
This feature does not apply to ports in multi-auth mode, because violations are not triggered in that mode. It does not apply to ports in multiple host mode, because in that mode, only the first host requires authentication.

If you configure the `authentication violation` interface configuration command with the `replace` keyword, the authentication process on a port in multidomain mode is:

- A new MAC address is received on a port with an existing authenticated MAC address.
- The authentication manager replaces the MAC address of the current data host on the port with the new MAC address.
- The authentication manager initiates the authentication process for the new MAC address.
- If the authentication manager determines that the new host is a voice host, the original voice host is removed.

If a port is in open authentication mode, any new MAC address is immediately added to the MAC address table.

802.1x Accounting

The 802.1x standard defines how users are authorized and authenticated for network access but does not keep track of network usage. 802.1x accounting is disabled by default. You can enable 802.1x accounting to monitor this activity on 802.1x-enabled ports:

- User successfully authenticates.
- User logs off.
- Link-down occurs.
- Reauthentication successfully occurs.
- Reauthentication fails.

The switch does not log 802.1x accounting information. Instead, it sends this information to the RADIUS server, which must be configured to log accounting messages.

802.1x Accounting Attribute-Value Pairs

The information sent to the RADIUS server is represented in the form of Attribute-Value (AV) pairs. These AV pairs provide data for different applications. (For example, a billing application might require information that is in the Acct-Input-Octets or the Acct-Output-Octets attributes of a RADIUS packet.)

AV pairs are automatically sent by a switch that is configured for 802.1x accounting. Three types of RADIUS accounting packets are sent by a switch:

- START: Sent when a new user session starts
**802.1x Readiness Check**

The 802.1x readiness check monitors 802.1x activity on all the switch ports and displays information about the devices connected to the ports that support 802.1x. You can use this feature to determine if the devices connected to the switch ports are 802.1x-capable. You use an alternate authentication such as MAC authentication bypass or web authentication for the devices that do not support 802.1x functionality.

### Table 27: Accounting AV Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Number</th>
<th>AV Pair Name</th>
<th>START</th>
<th>INTERIM</th>
<th>STOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[1]</td>
<td>User-Name</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[4]</td>
<td>NAS-IP-Address</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[5]</td>
<td>NAS-Port</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[8]</td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Sometimes</td>
<td>Sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[30]</td>
<td>Called-Station-ID</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[31]</td>
<td>Calling-Station-ID</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[40]</td>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[41]</td>
<td>Acct-Delay-Time</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[42]</td>
<td>Acct-Input-Octets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[43]</td>
<td>Acct-Output-Octets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[47]</td>
<td>Acct-Input-Packets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[48]</td>
<td>Acct-Output-Packets</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[44]</td>
<td>Acct-Session-ID</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[45]</td>
<td>Acct-Authentic</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[46]</td>
<td>Acct-Session-Time</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[49]</td>
<td>Acct-Terminate-Cause</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute[61]</td>
<td>NAS-Port-Type</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 The Framed-IP-Address AV pair is sent when a valid static IP address is configured or when a Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) binding exists for the host in the DHCP snooping bindings table.
Switch-to-RADIUS Server Communication

RADIUS security servers are identified by their hostname or IP address, hostname and specific UDP port numbers, or IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and UDP port number creates a unique identifier, which enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service, for example, authentication, the second host entry configured acts as the fail-over backup to the first one. The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order that they were configured.

IEEE 802.1x Authentication

The following sections provide information about IEEE 802.1x authentication.

802.1x Authentication

These are the 802.1x authentication configuration guidelines:

- You must enable SISF-Based device tracking to use 802.1x authentication. By default, SISF-Based device tracking is disabled on a switch.

- When 802.1x authentication is enabled, ports are authenticated before any other Layer 2 or Layer 3 features are enabled.

- If the VLAN to which an 802.1x-enabled port is assigned changes, this change is transparent and does not affect the switch. For example, this change occurs if a port is assigned to a RADIUS server-assigned VLAN and is then assigned to a different VLAN after reauthentication.

If the VLAN to which an 802.1x port is assigned to shut down, disabled, or removed, the port becomes unauthorized. For example, the port is unauthorized after the access VLAN to which a port is assigned shuts down or is removed.

- The 802.1x protocol is supported on Layer 2 static-access ports, voice VLAN ports, and Layer 3 routed ports, but it is not supported on these port types:
  - Dynamic ports: A port in dynamic mode can negotiate with its neighbor to become a trunk port. If you try to enable 802.1x authentication on a dynamic port, an error message appears, and 802.1x authentication is not enabled. If you try to change the mode of an 802.1x-enabled port to dynamic, an error message appears, and the port mode is not changed.
  - EtherChannel port: Do not configure a port that is an active or a not-yet-active member of an EtherChannel as an 802.1x port. If you try to enable 802.1x authentication on an EtherChannel port, an error message appears, and 802.1x authentication is not enabled.
  - Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) and Remote SPAN (RSPAN) destination ports: You can enable 802.1x authentication on a port that is a SPAN or RSPAN destination port. However, 802.1x authentication is disabled until the port is removed as a SPAN or RSPAN destination port. You can enable 802.1x authentication on a SPAN or RSPAN source port.
• Before globally enabling 802.1x authentication on a switch by entering the `dot1x system-auth-control` global configuration command, remove the EtherChannel configuration from the interfaces on which 802.1x authentication and EtherChannel are configured.

• Filtering of system messages related to 802.1x authentication is supported.

Note
We recommend that you configure all the dependent 802.1x CLIs under the same interface or on the same template.

Port-Based Authentication Manager CLI Commands

The authentication-manager interface-configuration commands control all the authentication methods, such as 802.1x, MAC authentication bypass, and web authentication. The authentication manager commands determine the priority and order of authentication methods applied to a connected host.

The authentication manager commands control generic authentication features, such as host-mode, violation mode, and the authentication timer. Generic authentication commands include the `authentication host-mode`, `authentication violation`, and `authentication timer` interface configuration commands.

802.1x-specific commands begin with the `dot1x` keyword. For example, the `authentication port-control auto` interface configuration command enables authentication on an interface.

To disable dot1x on a switch, remove the configuration globally by using the `no dot1x system-auth-control`, and also remove it from all configured interfaces.

Note
If 802.1x authentication is globally disabled, other authentication methods are still enabled on that port, such as web authentication.

The `authentication manager` commands provide the same functionality as earlier 802.1x commands.

When filtering out verbose system messages generated by the authentication manager, the filtered content typically relates to authentication success. You can also filter verbose messages for 802.1x authentication and MAB authentication. There is a separate command for each authentication method:

• The `no authentication logging verbose` global configuration command filters verbose messages from the authentication manager.

• The `no dot1x logging verbose` global configuration command filters 802.1x authentication verbose messages.

• The `no mab logging verbose` global configuration command filters MAC authentication bypass (MAB) verbose messages.

Default 802.1x Authentication Configuration

Table 28: Default 802.1x Authentication Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch 802.1x enable state</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Default Setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-port 802.1x enable state</td>
<td>Disabled (force-authorized). The port sends and receives normal traffic without 802.1x-based authentication of the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS server</td>
<td>• None specified. • 1645. • 1646. • None specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host mode</td>
<td>Single-host mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control direction</td>
<td>Bidirectional control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic reauthentication</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of seconds between reauthentication attempts</td>
<td>3600 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-authentication number</td>
<td>Twice (number of times that the switch restarts the authentication process before the port changes to the unauthorized state).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quiet period</td>
<td>60 seconds (number of seconds that the switch remains in the quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with the client).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retransmission time</td>
<td>30 seconds (number of seconds that the switch should wait for a response to an EAP request/identity frame from the client before resending the request).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum retransmission number</td>
<td>2 times (number of times that the switch will send an EAP-request/identity frame before restarting the authentication process).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client timeout period</td>
<td>30 seconds (when relaying a request from the authentication server to the client, the amount of time the switch waits for a response before resending the request to the client.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication server timeout period</td>
<td>30 seconds (when relaying a response from the client to the authentication server, the amount of time the switch waits for a reply before resending the response to the server.) You can change this timeout period by using the dot1x timeout server-timeout interface configuration command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Port-Based Authentication and Switch Stacks**

If a switch is added to or removed from a switch stack, 802.1x authentication is not affected as long as the IP connectivity between the RADIUS server and the stack remains intact. This statement also applies if the stack’s active switch is removed from the switch stack. Note that if the active switch fails, a member switch in the stack becomes the new active switch by using the election process, and the 802.1x authentication process continues as usual.

If IP connectivity to the RADIUS server is interrupted because the switch that was connected to the server is removed or fails, these events occur:

- Ports that are already authenticated and that do not have periodic reauthentication enabled remain in the authenticated state. Communication with the RADIUS server is not required.
- Ports that are already authenticated and that have periodic reauthentication enabled (with the `dot1x re-authentication` global configuration command) fail the authentication process when the reauthentication occurs. Ports return to the unauthenticated state during the reauthentication process. Communication with the RADIUS server is required.

  For an ongoing authentication, the authentication fails immediately because there is no server connectivity.

If the switch that failed comes up and rejoins the switch stack, the authentications might or might not fail depending on the boot-up time and whether the connectivity to the RADIUS server is re-established by the time the authentication is attempted.

To avoid loss of connectivity to the RADIUS server, you should ensure that there is a redundant connection to it. For example, you can have a redundant connection to the active switch and another to a member switch, and if the active switch fails, the switch stack still has connectivity to the RADIUS server.

**802.1x Authentication with VLAN Assignment**

The switch supports 802.1x authentication with VLAN assignment. After successful 802.1x authentication of a port, the RADIUS server sends the VLAN assignment to configure the switch port. The RADIUS server database maintains the username-to-VLAN mappings, assigning the VLAN based on the username of the client connected to the switch port. You can use this feature to limit network access for certain users.

When a voice device is authorized and the RADIUS server returned an authorized VLAN, the voice VLAN on the port is configured to send and receive packets on the assigned voice VLAN. Voice VLAN assignment behaves the same as data VLAN assignment on multidomain authentication (MDA)-enabled ports.
When configured on the switch and the RADIUS server, 802.1x authentication with VLAN assignment has these characteristics:

- If no VLAN is supplied by the RADIUS server or if 802.1x authentication is disabled, the port is configured in its access VLAN after successful authentication. Recall that an access VLAN is a VLAN assigned to an access port. All packets sent from or received on this port belong to this VLAN.

- If 802.1x authentication is enabled but the VLAN information from the RADIUS server is not valid, authorization fails and configured VLAN remains in use. This prevents ports from appearing unexpectedly in an inappropriate VLAN because of a configuration error.

Configuration errors could include specifying a VLAN for a routed port, a malformed VLAN ID, a nonexistent or internal (routed port) VLAN ID, an RSPAN VLAN, a shut down or suspended VLAN. In the case of a multidomain host port, configuration errors can also be due to an attempted assignment of a data VLAN that matches the configured or assigned voice VLAN ID (or the reverse).

- If 802.1x authentication is enabled and all information from the RADIUS server is valid, the authorized device is placed in the specified VLAN after authentication.

- If the multiple-hosts mode is enabled on an 802.1x port, all hosts are placed in the same VLAN (specified by the RADIUS server) as the first authenticated host.

- Enabling port security does not impact the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN behavior.

- If 802.1x authentication is disabled on the port, it is returned to the configured access VLAN and configured voice VLAN.

- If an 802.1x port is authenticated and put in the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN, any change to the port access VLAN configuration does not take effect. In the case of a multidomain host, the same applies to voice devices when the port is fully authorized with these exceptions:

  - If the VLAN configuration change of one device results in matching the other device configured or assigned VLAN, then authorization of all devices on the port is terminated and multidomain host mode is disabled until a valid configuration is restored where data and voice device configured VLANs no longer match.

  - If a voice device is authorized and is using a downloaded voice VLAN, the removal of the voice VLAN configuration, or modifying the configuration value to dot1p or untagged results in voice device un-authorization and the disablement of multi-domain host mode.

When the port is in the force authorized, force unauthorized, unauthorized, or shutdown state, it is put into the configured access VLAN.

If an 802.1x port is authenticated and put in the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN, any change to the port access VLAN configuration does not take effect. In the case of a multidomain host, the same applies to voice devices when the port is fully authorized with these exceptions:

- If the VLAN configuration change of one device results in matching the other device configured or assigned VLAN, authorization of all devices on the port is terminated and multidomain host mode is disabled until a valid configuration is restored where data and voice device configured VLANs no longer match.

- If a voice device is authorized and is using a downloaded voice VLAN, the removal of the voice VLAN configuration, or modifying the configuration value to dot1p or untagged results in voice device un-authorization and the disablement of multi-domain host mode.
When the port is in the force authorized, force unauthorized, unauthorized, or shutdown state, it is put into the configured access VLAN.

To configure VLAN assignment you need to perform these tasks:

- Enable AAA authorization by using the `network` keyword to allow interface configuration from the RADIUS server.
- Enable 802.1x authentication. (The VLAN assignment feature is automatically enabled when you configure 802.1x authentication on an access port).
- Assign vendor-specific tunnel attributes in the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server must return these attributes to the switch:
  
  - [64] Tunnel-Type = VLAN
  - [65] Tunnel-Medium-Type = 802
  - [81] Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN name or VLAN ID
  - [83] Tunnel-Preference

Attribute [64] must contain the value VLAN (type 13). Attribute [65] must contain the value 802 (type 6). Attribute [81] specifies the VLAN name or VLAN ID assigned to the IEEE 802.1x-authenticated user.

### 802.1x Authentication with Per-User ACLs

You can enable per-user access control lists (ACLs) to provide different levels of network access and service to an 802.1x-authenticated user. When the RADIUS server authenticates a user connected to an 802.1x port, it retrieves the ACL attributes based on the user identity and sends them to the switch. The switch applies the attributes to the 802.1x port for the duration of the user session. The switch removes the per-user ACL configuration when the session is over, if authentication fails, or if a link-down condition occurs. The switch does not save RADIUS-specified ACLs in the running configuration. When the port is unauthorized, the switch removes the ACL from the port.

You can configure router ACLs and input port ACLs on the same switch. However, a port ACL takes precedence over a router ACL. If you apply input port ACL to an interface that belongs to a VLAN, the port ACL takes precedence over an input router ACL applied to the VLAN interface. Incoming packets received on the port, to which a port ACL is applied, are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed packets received on other ports are filtered by the router ACL. Outgoing routed packets are filtered by the router ACL. To avoid configuration conflicts, you should carefully plan the user profiles stored on the RADIUS server.

RADIUS supports per-user attributes, including vendor-specific attributes. These vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) are in octet-string format and are passed to the switch during the authentication process. The VSAs used for per-user ACLs are `inac<lb><n>` for the ingress direction and `outac<lb><n>` for the egress direction. MAC ACLs are supported only in the ingress direction. The switch supports VSAs only in the ingress direction. It does not support port ACLs in the egress direction on Layer 2 ports.

Use only the extended ACL syntax style to define the per-user configuration stored on the RADIUS server. When the definitions are passed from the RADIUS server, they are created by using the extended naming convention. However, if you use the Filter-Id attribute, it can point to a standard ACL.

You can use the Filter-Id attribute to specify an inbound or outbound ACL that is already configured on the switch. The attribute contains the ACL number followed by `.in` for ingress filtering or `.out` for egress filtering. If the RADIUS server does not allow the `.in` or `.out` syntax, the access list is applied to the outbound ACL by default. The user is marked unauthorized if the Filter-Id sent from the RADIUS server is not configured on
the device. The Filter-Id attribute is supported only for IP ACLs numbered in the range of 1 to 199 (IP standard ACLs) and 1300 to 2699 (IP extended ACLs).

The maximum size of the per-user ACL is 4000 ASCII characters but is limited by the maximum size of RADIUS-server per-user ACLs.

You must meet the following prerequisites to configure per-user ACLs:

- Enable AAA authentication.
- Enable AAA authorization by using the `network` keyword to allow interface configuration from the RADIUS server.
- Enable 802.1x authentication.
- Configure the user profile and VSAs on the RADIUS server.
- Configure the 802.1x port for single-host mode.

**Note** Per-user ACLs are supported only in single-host mode.

### 802.1x Authentication with Downloadable ACLs and Redirect URLs

You can download ACLs and redirect URLs from a RADIUS server to the switch during 802.1x authentication or MAC authentication bypass of the host. You can also download ACLs during web authentication. A downloadable ACL is also referred to as a dACL.

If more than one host is authenticated and the host is in single-host, MDA, or multiple-authentication mode, the switch changes the source address of the ACL to the host IP address.

You can apply the ACLs and redirect URLs to all the devices connected to the 802.1x-enabled port.

If no ACLs are downloaded during 802.1x authentication, the switch applies the static default ACL on the port to the host. On a voice VLAN port configured in multi-auth or MDA mode, the switch applies the ACL only to the phone as part of the authorization policies.

The limit for dACL with stacking is 64 ACEs per dACL per port. The limit without stacking is the number of available TCAM entries which varies based on the other ACL features that are active.

The 802.1x and MAB authentication methods support two authentication modes, open and closed. If there is no static ACL on a port in closed authentication mode:

- When the first host authenticates, the authorization policy is applied without IP address insertion.
- When a second host is detected, the policies for the first host are refreshed, and policies for the first and subsequent sessions are enforced with IP address insertion.

If there is no static ACL on a port in open authentication mode:

- Policies are enforced with IP address insertion to prevent security breaches.

To control access for hosts with no authorization policy, you can configure a directive. The supported values for the directive are open and default. When you configure the open directive, all traffic is allowed. The default directive subjects traffic to the access provided by the port. You can configure the directive either in the user profile on the AAA server or on the switch. To configure the directive on the AAA server, use the
**VLAN ID-Based MAC Authentication**

You can use VLAN ID-based MAC authentication if you wish to authenticate hosts based on a static VLAN ID instead of a downloadable VLAN. When you have a static VLAN policy configured on your switch, VLAN information is sent to an IAS (Microsoft) RADIUS server along with the MAC address of each host for authentication. The VLAN ID configured on the connected port is used for MAC authentication. By using VLAN ID-based MAC authentication with an IAS server, you can have a fixed number of VLANs in the network.

The feature also limits the number of VLANs monitored and handled by STP. The network can be managed as a fixed VLAN.

**IEEE 802.1x Authentication with MAC Authentication Bypass**

You can configure the switch to authorize clients based on the client MAC address by using the MAC authentication bypass feature. For example, you can enable this feature on IEEE 802.1x ports connected to devices such as printers.

If IEEE 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL response from the client, the switch tries to authorize the client by using MAC authentication bypass.

When the MAC authentication bypass feature is enabled on an IEEE 802.1x port, the switch uses the MAC address as the client identity. The authentication server has a database of client MAC addresses that are allowed network access. After detecting a client on an IEEE 802.1x port, the switch waits for an Ethernet packet from the client. The switch sends the authentication server a RADIUS-access/request frame with a username and password based on the MAC address. If authorization succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network. If authorization fails, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN if one is configured. This process works for most client devices; however, it does not work for clients that use an alternate MAC address format.

You can configure how MAB authentication is performed for clients with MAC addresses that deviate from the standard format or where the RADIUS configuration requires the user name and password to differ.

If an EAPOL packet is detected on the interface during the lifetime of the link, the switch determines that the device connected to that interface is an 802.1x-capable supplicant and uses 802.1x authentication (not MAC authentication bypass) to authorize the interface. EAPOL history is cleared if the interface link status goes down.

If the switch already authorized a port by using MAC authentication bypass and detects an IEEE 802.1x supplicant, the switch does not unauthorize the client connected to the port. When reauthentication occurs,
the switch uses the authentication or reauthentication methods configured on the port, if the previous session ended because the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute value is DEFAULT.

Clients that were authorized with MAC authentication bypass can be reauthenticated. The reauthentication process is the same as that for clients that were authenticated with IEEE 802.1x. During reauthentication, the port remains in the previously assigned VLAN. If reauthentication is successful, the switch keeps the port in the same VLAN. If reauthentication fails, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN, if one is configured.

If reauthentication is based on the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]) and if the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]) action is Initialize (the attribute value is DEFAULT), the MAC authentication bypass session ends, and connectivity is lost during reauthorization. If MAC authentication bypass is enabled and the IEEE 802.1x authentication times out, the switch uses the MAC authentication bypass feature to initiate re-authorization. For more information about these AV pairs, see RFC 3580, “IEEE 802.1X Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) Usage Guidelines.”

MAC authentication bypass interacts with the features:

• IEEE 802.1x authentication: You can enable MAC authentication bypass only if 802.1x authentication is enabled on the port .
• Guest VLAN: If a client has an invalid MAC address identity, the switch assigns the client to a guest VLAN if one is configured.
• Restricted VLAN: This feature is not supported when the client connected to an IEEE 802.1x port is authenticated with MAC authentication bypass.
• Port security
• Voice VLAN
• Private VLAN: You can assign a client to a private VLAN.
• Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT): MAB and NEAT are mutually exclusive. You cannot enable MAB when NEAT is enabled on an interface, and you should not enable NEAT when MAB is enabled on an interface.

MAC Authentication Bypass Configuration Guidelines

These are the MAC authentication bypass configuration guidelines:

• Unless otherwise stated, the MAC authentication bypass guidelines are the same as the 802.1x authentication guidelines.
• If you disable MAC authentication bypass from a port after the port has been authorized with its MAC address, the port state is not affected.
• If the port is in the unauthorized state and the client MAC address is not the authentication-server database, the port remains in the unauthorized state. However, if the client MAC address is added to the database, the switch can use MAC authentication bypass to re-authorize the port.
• If the port is in the authorized state, the port remains in this state until re-authorization occurs.
• You can configure a timeout period for hosts that are connected by MAC authentication bypass but are inactive. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds.
802.1x Multiple Authentication Mode

Multiple-authentication (multiauth) mode allows multiple authenticated clients on the data VLAN and voice VLAN. Each host is individually authenticated. There is no limit to the number of data or voice device that can be authenticated on a multiauthport.

If a hub or access point is connected to an 802.1x-enabled port, each connected client must be authenticated. For non-802.1x devices, you can use MAC authentication bypass or web authentication as the per-host authentication fallback method to authenticate different hosts with different methods on a single port.

Note
When a port is in multiple-authentication mode, the authentication-failed VLAN features do not activate.

You can assign a RADIUS-server-supplied VLAN in multi-auth mode, under the following conditions:

- The host is the first host authorized on the port, and the RADIUS server supplies VLAN information
- Subsequent hosts are authorized with a VLAN that matches the operational VLAN.
- A host is authorized on the port with no VLAN assignment, and subsequent hosts either have no VLAN assignment, or their VLAN information matches the operational VLAN.
- The first host authorized on the port has a group VLAN assignment, and subsequent hosts either have no VLAN assignment, or their group VLAN matches the group VLAN on the port. Subsequent hosts must use the same VLAN from the VLAN group as the first host. If a VLAN list is used, all hosts are subject to the conditions specified in the VLAN list.
- After a VLAN is assigned to a host on the port, subsequent hosts must have matching VLAN information or be denied access to the port.
- You cannot configure a guest VLAN or an auth-fail VLAN in multi-auth mode.
- The behavior of the critical-auth VLAN is not changed for multi-auth mode. When a host tries to authenticate and the server is not reachable, all authorized hosts are reinitialized in the configured VLAN.

Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment

The Multi-auth Per User VLAN assignment feature allows you to create multiple operational access VLANs based on VLANs assigned to the clients on the port that has a single configured access VLAN. The port configured as an access port where the traffic for all the VLANs associated with data domain is not dot1q tagged, and these VLANs are treated as native VLANs.

The number of hosts per multi-auth port is 8, however there can be more hosts.

The following scenarios are associated with the multi-auth Per User VLAN assignments:

Scenario One

When a hub is connected to an access port, and the port is configured with an access VLAN (V0). The host (H1) is assigned to VLAN (V1) through the hub. The operational VLAN of the port is changed to V1. This behaviour is similar on a single-host or multi-domain-auth port.

When a second host (H2) is connected and gets assigned to VLAN (V2), the port will have two operational VLANs (V1 and V2). If H1 and H2 sends untagged ingress traffic, H1 traffic is mapped to VLAN (V1) and H2 traffic to VLAN (V2), all egress traffic going out of the port on VLAN (V1) and VLAN (V2) are untagged.
If both the hosts, H1 and H2 are logged out or the sessions are removed due to some reason then VLAN (V1) and VLAN (V2) are removed from the port, and the configured VLAN (V0) is restored on the port.

**Scenario Two**

When a hub is connected to an access port, and the port is configured with an access VLAN (V0). The host (H1) is assigned to VLAN (V1) through the hub. The operational VLAN of the port is changed to V1.

When a second host (H2) is connected and gets authorized without explicit vlan policy, H2 is expected to use the configured VLAN (V0) that is restored on the port. All egress traffic going out of two operational VLANs, VLAN (V0) and VLAN (V1) are untagged.

If host (H2) is logged out or the session is removed due to some reason then the configured VLAN (V0) is removed from the port, and VLAN (V1) becomes the only operational VLAN on the port.

**Scenario Three**

When a hub is connected to an access port in open mode, and the port is configured with an access VLAN (V0).

The host (H1) is assigned to VLAN (V1) through the hub. The operational VLAN of the port is changed to V1. When a second host (H2) is connected and remains unauthorized, it still has access to operational VLAN (V1) due to open mode.

If host H1 is logged out or the session is removed due to some reason, VLAN (V1) is removed from the port and host (H2) gets assigned to VLAN (V0).

---

**Note**

The combination of Open mode and VLAN assignment has an adverse affect on host (H2) because it has an IP address in the subnet that corresponds to VLAN (V1).

---

**Limitation in Multi-Auth Per User VLAN assignment**

In the Multi-Auth Per User VLAN Assignment feature, egress traffic from multiple VLANs are untagged on a port where the hosts receive traffic that is not meant for them. This can be a problem with broadcast and multicast traffic.

- **IPv4 ARPs**: Hosts receive ARP packets from other subnets. This is a problem if two subnets in different Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) tables with overlapping IP address range are active on the port. The host ARP cache may get invalid entries.

- **IPv6 Control Packets**: In IPv6 deployments, Router Advertisements (RA) are processed by hosts that are not supposed to receive them. When a host from one VLAN receives RA from a different VLAN, the host assign incorrect IPv6 address to itself. Such a host is unable to get access to the network.

  The workaround is to enable the IPv6 first hop security so that the broadcast ICMPv6 packets are converted to unicast and sent out from multi-auth enabled ports. The packet is replicated for each client in multi-auth port belonging to the VLAN and the destination MAC is set to an individual client. Ports having one VLAN, ICMPv6 packets broadcast normally.

- **IP Multicast**: Multicast traffic destined to a multicast group gets replicated for different VLANs if the hosts on those VLANs join the multicast group. When two hosts in different VLANs join a multicast group (on the same multi-auth port), two copies of each multicast packet are sent out from that port.
802.1x Authentication with Guest VLAN

You can configure a guest VLAN for each 802.1x port on the switch to provide limited services to clients, such as downloading the 802.1x client. These clients might be upgrading their system for 802.1x authentication, and some hosts, such as Windows 98 systems, might not be IEEE 802.1x-capable.

When you enable a guest VLAN on an 802.1x port, the switch assigns clients to a guest VLAN when the switch does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame or when EAPOL packets are not sent by the client.

The switch maintains the EAPOL packet history. If an EAPOL packet is detected on the interface during the lifetime of the link, the switch determines that the device connected to that interface is an IEEE 802.1x-capable supplicant, and the interface does not change to the guest VLAN state. EAPOL history is cleared if the interface link status goes down. If no EAPOL packet is detected on the interface, the interface changes to the guest VLAN state.

If the switch is trying to authorize an 802.1x-capable voice device and the AAA server is unavailable, the authorization attempt fails, but the detection of the EAPOL packet is saved in the EAPOL history. When the AAA server becomes available, the switch authorizes the voice device. However, the switch no longer allows other devices access to the guest VLAN. To prevent this situation, use one of these command sequences:

- Enter the `authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id` interface configuration command to allow access to the guest VLAN.
- Enter the `shutdown` interface configuration command followed by the `no shutdown` interface configuration command to restart the port.

If devices send EAPOL packets to the switch during the lifetime of the link, the switch no longer allows clients that fail authentication access to the guest VLAN.

**Note**

If an EAPOL packet is detected after the interface has changed to the guest VLAN, the interface reverts to an unauthorized state, and 802.1x authentication restarts.

Any number of 802.1x-incapable clients are allowed access when the switch port is moved to the guest VLAN. If an 802.1x-capable client joins the same port on which the guest VLAN is configured, the port is put into the unauthorized state in the user-configured access VLAN, and authentication is restarted.

Guest VLANs are supported on 802.1x ports in single host, multiple host, multi-auth and multi-domain modes. You can configure any active VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN, a private VLAN, or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The guest VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.

The switch supports *MAC authentication bypass*. When MAC authentication bypass is enabled on an 802.1x port, the switch can authorize clients based on the client MAC address when IEEE 802.1x authentication times out while waiting for an EAPOL message exchange. After detecting a client on an 802.1x port, the switch waits for an Ethernet packet from the client. The switch sends the authentication server a RADIUS-access/request frame with a username and password based on the MAC address. If authorization succeeds, the switch grants the client access to the network. If authorization fails, the switch assigns the port to the guest VLAN if one is specified.
802.1x Authentication with Restricted VLAN

You can configure a restricted VLAN (also referred to as an *authentication failed VLAN*) for each IEEE 802.1x port on a switch stack or a switch to provide limited services to clients that cannot access the guest VLAN. These clients are 802.1x-compliant and cannot access another VLAN because they fail the authentication process. A restricted VLAN allows users without valid credentials in an authentication server (typically, visitors to an enterprise) to access a limited set of services. The administrator can control the services available to the restricted VLAN.

You can configure a VLAN to be both the guest VLAN and the restricted VLAN if you want to provide the same services to both types of users.

Without this feature, the client attempts and fails authentication indefinitely, and the switch port remains in the spanning-tree blocking state. With this feature, you can configure the switch port to be in the restricted VLAN after a specified number of authentication attempts (the default value is 3 attempts).

The authenticator counts the failed authentication attempts for the client. When this count exceeds the configured maximum number of authentication attempts, the port moves to the restricted VLAN. The failed attempt count increments when the RADIUS server replies with either an *EAP failure* or an empty response without an EAP packet. When the port moves into the restricted VLAN, the failed attempt counter resets.

Users who fail authentication remain in the restricted VLAN until the next reauthentication attempt. A port in the restricted VLAN tries to reauthenticate at configured intervals (the default is 60 seconds). If reauthentication fails, the port remains in the restricted VLAN. If reauthentication is successful, the port moves either to the configured VLAN or to a VLAN sent by the RADIUS server. You can disable reauthentication. If you do this, the only way to restart the authentication process is for the port to receive a *link down* or *EAP logoff* event. We recommend that you keep reauthentication enabled if a client might connect through a hub. When a client disconnects from the hub, the port might not receive the *link down* or *EAP logoff* event.

After a port moves to the restricted VLAN, a simulated EAP success message is sent to the client. This prevents clients from indefinitely attempting authentication. Some clients (for example, devices running Windows XP) cannot implement DHCP without EAP success.

Restricted VLANs are supported on 802.1x ports in all host modes and on Layer 2 ports.

You can configure any active VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN, a primary private VLAN, or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN. The restricted VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.

Other security port features such as dynamic ARP Inspection, DHCP snooping, and IP source guard can be configured independently on a restricted VLAN.

802.1x Authentication with Inaccessible Authentication Bypass

Use the inaccessible authentication bypass feature, also referred to as *critical authentication* or the *AAA fail policy*, when the switch cannot reach the configured RADIUS servers and new hosts cannot be authenticated. You can configure the switch to connect those hosts to *critical ports*.

When a new host tries to connect to the critical port, that host is moved to a user-specified access VLAN, the *critical VLAN*. The administrator gives limited authentication to the hosts.

When the switch tries to authenticate a host connected to a critical port, the switch checks the status of the configured RADIUS server. If a server is available, the switch can authenticate the host. However, if all the
RADIUS servers are unavailable, the switch grants network access to the host and puts the port in the `critical-authentication` state, which is a special case of the authentication state.

**Note**

If `critical authentication` is configured on interface, then vlan used for critical authorization (`critical vlan`) should be active on the switch. If the `critical vlan` is inactive (or) down, `critical authentication` session will keep trying to enable inactive vlan and fail repeatedly. This can lead to large amount of memory holding.

### Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Support on Multiple-Authentication Ports

When a port is configured on any host mode and the AAA server is unavailable, the port is then configured to multi-host mode and moved to the critical VLAN. To support this inaccessible bypass on multiple-authentication (multiauth) ports, use the `authentication event server dead action reinitialize vlan vlan-id` command. When a new host tries to connect to the critical port, that port is reinitialized and all the connected hosts are moved to the user-specified access VLAN.

This command is supported on all host modes.

### Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Authentication Results

The behavior of the inaccessible authentication bypass feature depends on the authorization state of the port:

- If the port is unauthorized when a host connected to a critical port tries to authenticate and all servers are unavailable, the switch puts the port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN.

- If the port is already authorized and reauthentication occurs, the switch puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state in the current VLAN, which might be the one previously assigned by the RADIUS server.

- If the RADIUS server becomes unavailable during an authentication exchange, the current exchange times out, and the switch puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state during the next authentication attempt.

You can configure the critical port to reinitialize hosts and move them out of the critical VLAN when the RADIUS server is again available. When this is configured, all critical ports in the critical-authentication state are automatically reauthenticated.

### Inaccessible Authentication Bypass Feature Interactions

Inaccessible authentication bypass interacts with these features:

- **Guest VLAN**: Inaccessible authentication bypass is compatible with guest VLAN. When a guest VLAN is enabled on 8021.x port, the features interact as follows:
  - If at least one RADIUS server is available, the switch assigns a client to a guest VLAN when the switch does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame or when EAPOL packets are not sent by the client.
  - If all the RADIUS servers are not available and the client is connected to a critical port, the switch authenticates the client and puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN.
  - If all the RADIUS servers are not available and the client is not connected to a critical port, the switch might not assign clients to the guest VLAN if one is configured.
- If all the RADIUS servers are not available and if a client is connected to a critical port and was previously assigned to a guest VLAN, the switch keeps the port in the guest VLAN.

- Restricted VLAN: If the port is already authorized in a restricted VLAN and the RADIUS servers are unavailable, the switch puts the critical port in the critical-authentication state in the restricted VLAN.

- 802.1x accounting: Accounting is not affected if the RADIUS servers are unavailable.

- Private VLAN: You can configure inaccessible authentication bypass on a private VLAN host port. The access VLAN must be a secondary private VLAN.

- Voice VLAN: Inaccessible authentication bypass is compatible with voice VLAN, but the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN and the voice VLAN must be different.

- Remote Switched Port Analyzer (RSPAN): Do not configure an RSPAN VLAN as the RADIUS-configured or user-specified access VLAN for inaccessible authentication bypass.

In a switch stack:
When a member switch is added to the stack, the active switch sends the member switch the server status.

**VLAN Assignment, Guest VLAN, Restricted VLAN, and Inaccessible Authentication Bypass**

These are the configuration guidelines for VLAN assignment, guest VLAN, restricted VLAN, and inaccessible authentication bypass:

- When 802.1x authentication is enabled on a port, you cannot configure a port VLAN that is equal to a voice VLAN.

- You can configure any VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The guest VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.

- After you configure a guest VLAN for an 802.1x port to which a DHCP client is connected, you might need to get a host IP address from a DHCP server. You can change the settings for restarting the 802.1x authentication process on the switch before the DHCP process on the client times out and tries to get a host IP address from the DHCP server. Decrease the settings for the 802.1x authentication process (authentication timer inactivity and authentication timer reauthentication interface configuration commands). The amount to decrease the settings depends on the connected 802.1x client type.

- When configuring the inaccessible authentication bypass feature, follow these guidelines:

  - The feature is supported on 802.1x port in single-host mode and multihosts mode.

  - If the client is running Windows XP and the port to which the client is connected is in the critical-authentication state, Windows XP might report that the interface is not authenticated.

  - If the Windows XP client is configured for DHCP and has an IP address from the DHCP server, receiving an EAP-Success message on a critical port might not re-initiate the DHCP configuration process.

  - You can configure the inaccessible authentication bypass feature and the restricted VLAN on an 802.1x port. If the switch tries to reauthenticate a critical port in a restricted VLAN and all the RADIUS servers are unavailable, switch changes the port state to the critical authentication state and remains in the restricted VLAN.
• You can configure any VLAN except an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN. The restricted VLAN feature is not supported on internal VLANs (routed ports) or trunk ports; it is supported only on access ports.

### 802.1x Critical Voice VLAN

When an IP phone connected to a port is authenticated by the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE), the phone is put into the voice domain. If the ISE is not reachable, the switch cannot determine if the device is a voice device. If the server is unavailable, the phone cannot access the voice network and therefore cannot operate.

For data traffic, you can configure inaccessible authentication bypass, or critical authentication, to allow traffic to pass through on the native VLAN when the server is not available. If the RADIUS authentication server is unavailable (down) and inaccessible authentication bypass is enabled, the switch grants the client access to the network and puts the port in the critical-authentication state in the RADIUS-configured or the user-specified access VLAN. When the switch cannot reach the configured RADIUS servers and new hosts cannot be authenticated, the switch connects those hosts to critical ports. A new host trying to connect to the critical port is moved to a user-specified access VLAN, the critical VLAN, and granted limited authentication.

Note

Dynamic assignment of critical voice VLAN is not supported with nested service templates. It causes the device to switch between VLANs continuously in a loop.

You can enter the `authentication event server dead action authorize voice` interface configuration command to configure the critical voice VLAN feature. When the ISE does not respond, the port goes into critical authentication mode. When traffic coming from the host is tagged with the voice VLAN, the connected device (the phone) is put in the configured voice VLAN for the port. The IP phones learn the voice VLAN identification through Cisco Discovery Protocol (Cisco devices) or through LLDP or DHCP.

You can configure the voice VLAN for a port by entering the `switchport voice vlan vlan-id` interface configuration command.

This feature is supported in multidomain and multi-auth host modes. Although you can enter the command when the switch in single-host or multi-host mode, the command has no effect unless the device changes to multidomain or multi-auth host mode.

### IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Voice VLAN Ports

A voice VLAN port is a special access port associated with two VLAN identifiers:

- **VVID** to carry voice traffic to and from the IP phone. The VVID is used to configure the IP phone connected to the port.

- **PVID** to carry the data traffic to and from the workstation connected to the switch through the IP phone. The PVID is the native VLAN of the port.

The IP phone uses the VVID for its voice traffic, regardless of the authorization state of the port. This allows the phone to work independently of IEEE 802.1x authentication.

In single-host mode, only the IP phone is allowed on the voice VLAN. In multiple-hosts mode, additional clients can send traffic on the voice VLAN after a supplicant is authenticated on the PVID. When multiple-hosts mode is enabled, the supplicant authentication affects both the PVID and the VVID.

A voice VLAN port becomes active when there is a link, and the device MAC address appears after the first Cisco Discovery Protocol message from the IP phone. Cisco IP phones do not relay Cisco Discovery Protocol
messages from other devices. As a result, if several IP phones are connected in series, the switch recognizes only the one directly connected to it. When IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled on a voice VLAN port, the switch drops packets from unrecognized IP phones more than one hop away.

When IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled on a switch port, you can configure an access port VLAN that is also a voice VLAN.

When IP phones are connected to an 802.1x-enabled switch port that is in single host mode, the switch grants the phones network access without authenticating them. We recommend that you use multidomain authentication (MDA) on the port to authenticate both a data device and a voice device, such as an IP phone.

---

**Note**

If you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on an access port on which a voice VLAN is configured and to which a Cisco IP Phone is connected, the Cisco IP phone loses connectivity to the switch for up to 30 seconds.

---

**IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Port Security**

In general, Cisco does not recommend enabling port security when IEEE 802.1x is enabled. Since IEEE 802.1x enforces a single MAC address per port (or per VLAN when MDA is configured for IP telephony), port security is redundant and in some cases may interfere with expected IEEE 802.1x operations.

---

**IEEE 802.1x Authentication with Wake-on-LAN**

The IEEE 802.1x authentication with wake-on-LAN (WoL) feature allows dormant PCs to be powered when the switch receives a specific Ethernet frame, known as the magic packet. You can use this feature in environments where administrators need to connect to systems that have been powered down.

When a host that uses WoL is attached through an IEEE 802.1x port and the host powers off, the IEEE 802.1x port becomes unauthorized. The port can only receive and send EAPOL packets, and WoL magic packets cannot reach the host. When the PC is powered off, it is not authorized, and the switch port is not opened.

When the switch uses IEEE 802.1x authentication with WoL, the switch forwards traffic to unauthorized IEEE 802.1x ports, including magic packets. While the port is unauthorized, the switch continues to block ingress traffic other than EAPOL packets. The host can receive packets but cannot send packets to other devices in the network.

---

**Note**

If PortFast is not enabled on the port, the port is forced to the bidirectional state.

---

When you configure a port as unidirectional by using the `authentication control-direction in` interface configuration command, the port changes to the spanning-tree forwarding state. The port can send packets to the host but cannot receive packets from the host.

When you configure a port as bidirectional by using the `authentication control-direction both` interface configuration command, the port is access-controlled in both directions. The port does not receive packets from or send packets to the host.

---

**Flexible Authentication Ordering**

You can use flexible authentication ordering to configure the order of methods that a port uses to authenticate a new host. The IEEE 802.1X Flexible Authentication feature supports three authentication methods:

- `dot1X`: IEEE 802.1X authentication is a Layer 2 authentication method.
• mab: MAC-Authentication Bypass is a Layer 2 authentication method.
• webauth: Web authentication is a Layer 3 authentication method.

Using this feature, you can control which ports use which authentication methods, and you can control the failover sequencing of methods on those ports. For example, MAC authentication bypass and 802.1x can be the primary or secondary authentication methods, and web authentication can be the fallback method if either or both of those authentication attempts fail.

The IEEE 802.1X Flexible Authentication feature supports the following host modes:
• multi-auth: Multiauthentication allows one authentication on a voice VLAN and multiple authentications on the data VLAN.
• multi-domain: Multidomain authentication allows two authentications: one on the voice VLAN and one on the data VLAN.

Open1x Authentication

Open1x authentication allows a device access to a port before that device is authenticated. When open authentication is configured, a new host can pass traffic according to the access control list (ACL) defined on the port. After the host is authenticated, the policies configured on the RADIUS server are applied to that host.

You can configure open authentication with these scenarios:
• Single-host mode with open authentication–Only one user is allowed network access before and after authentication.
• MDA mode with open authentication–Only one user in the voice domain and one user in the data domain are allowed.
• Multiple-hosts mode with open authentication–Any host can access the network.
• Multiple-authentication mode with open authentication–Similar to MDA, except multiple hosts can be authenticated.

Note: If open authentication is configured, it takes precedence over other authentication controls. This means that if you use the authentication open interface configuration command, the port will grant access to the host irrespective of the authentication port-control interface configuration command.

Multidomain Authentication

The switch supports multidomain authentication (MDA), which allows both a data device and voice device, such as an IP phone, to authenticate on the same switch port. The port is divided into a data domain and a voice domain.

Note: For all host modes, the line protocol stays up before authorization when port-based authentication is configured.
MDA does not enforce the order of device authentication. However, for best results, we recommend that a voice device is authenticated before a data device on an MDA-enabled port.

Follow these guidelines for configuring MDA:

- You must configure a switch port for MDA.
- You must configure the voice VLAN for the IP phone when the host mode is set to multidomain.
- Voice VLAN assignment on an MDA-enabled port is supported.
- To authorize a voice device, the AAA server must be configured to send a Cisco Attribute-Value (AV) pair attribute with a value of `device-traffic-class=voice`. Without this value, the switch treats the voice device as a data device.

  **Note** When `traffic-class=voice` is downloaded from AAA servers as a service-template, a session will be created in DATA domain instead of VOICE domain.

- The guest VLAN and restricted VLAN features only apply to the data devices on an MDA-enabled port. The switch treats a voice device that fails authorization as a data device.
- If more than one device attempts authorization on either the voice or the data domain of a port, it is error disabled.
- Until a device is authorized, the port drops its traffic. Non-Cisco IP phones or voice devices are allowed into both the data and voice VLANs. The data VLAN allows the voice device to contact a DHCP server to obtain an IP address and acquire the voice VLAN information. After the voice device starts sending on the voice VLAN, its access to the data VLAN is blocked.
- A voice device MAC address that is binding on the data VLAN is not counted towards the port security MAC address limit.
- MDA can use MAC authentication bypass as a fallback mechanism to allow the switch port to connect to devices that do not support IEEE 802.1x authentication.
- When a data or a voice device is detected on a port, its MAC address is blocked until authorization succeeds. If the authorization fails, the MAC address remains blocked for 5 minutes.
- If more than five devices are detected on the data VLAN or more than one voice device is detected on the voice VLAN while a port is unauthorized, the port is error disabled.
- When a port host mode is changed from single- or multihost to multidomain mode, an authorized data device remains authorized on the port. However, a Cisco IP phone that has been allowed on the port voice VLAN is automatically removed and must be reauthenticated on that port.
- Active fallback mechanisms such as guest VLAN and restricted VLAN remain configured after a port changes from single- or multihost mode to multidomain mode.
- Switching a port host mode from multidomain to single- or multihost mode removes all authorized devices from the port.
- If a data domain is authorized first and placed in the guest VLAN, non-IEEE 802.1x-capable voice devices need to tag their packets on the voice VLAN to trigger authentication.
• We do not recommend per-user ACLs with an MDA-enabled port. An authorized device with a per-user ACL policy might impact traffic on both the voice and data VLANs of the port. If used, only one device on the port should enforce per-user ACLs.

802.1x Supplicant and Authenticator Switches with Network Edge Access Topology

The Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) feature extends identity to areas outside the wiring closet (such as conference rooms). This allows any type of device to authenticate on the port.

• 802.1x switch supplicant: You can configure a switch to act as a supplicant to another switch by using the 802.1x supplicant feature. This configuration is helpful in a scenario, where, for example, a switch is outside a wiring closet and is connected to an upstream switch through a trunk port. A switch configured with the 802.1x switch supplicant feature authenticates with the upstream switch for secure connectivity. Once the supplicant switch authenticates successfully the port mode changes from access to trunk in an authenticator switch. In a supplicant switch you must manually configure trunk when enabling CISP.

• If the access VLAN is configured on the authenticator switch, it becomes the native VLAN for the trunk port after successful authentication.

In the default state, when you connect a supplicant switch to an authenticator switch that has BPDU guard enabled, the authenticator port could be error-disabled if it receives a Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) packets before the supplicant switch has authenticated. You can control traffic exiting the supplicant port during the authentication period. Entering the `dot1x supplicant controlled transient` global configuration command temporarily blocks the supplicant port during authentication to ensure that the authenticator port does not shut down before authentication completes. If authentication fails, the supplicant port opens. Entering the `no dot1x supplicant controlled transient` global configuration command opens the supplicant port during the authentication period. This is the default behavior.

We strongly recommend using the `dot1x supplicant controlled transient` command on a supplicant switch when BPDU guard is enabled on the authenticator switch port with the `spanning-tree bpduguard enable` interface configuration command.

Note

If you globally enable BPDU guard on the authenticator switch by using the `spanning-tree portfast bpduguard default` global configuration command, entering the `dot1x supplicant controlled transient` command does not prevent the BPDU violation.

You can enable MDA or multiauth mode on the authenticator switch interface that connects to one more supplicant switches. Multihost mode is not supported on the authenticator switch interface.

When you reboot an authenticator switch with single-host mode enabled on the interface, the interface may move to err-disabled state before authentication. To recover from err-disabled state, flap the authenticator port to activate the interface again and initiate authentication.

Use the `dot1x supplicant force-multicast` global configuration command on the supplicant switch for Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) to work in all host modes.

• Host Authorization: Ensures that only traffic from authorized hosts (connecting to the switch with supplicant) is allowed on the network. The switches use Client Information Signalling Protocol (CISP) to send the MAC addresses connecting to the supplicant switch to the authenticator switch.
- Auto enablement: Automatically enables trunk configuration on the authenticator switch, allowing user traffic from multiple VLANs coming from supplicant switches. Configure the cisco-av-pair as device-traffic-class=switch at the ISE. (You can configure this under the group or the user settings.)

![Figure 27: Authenticator and Supplicant Switch using CISP]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Workstations (clients)</th>
<th></th>
<th>Supplicant switch (outside wiring closet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Authenticator switch</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cisco ISE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Trunk port</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
The switchport nonegotiate command is not supported on supplicant and authenticator switches with NEAT. This command should not be configured at the supplicant side of the topology. If configured on the authenticator side, the internal macros will automatically remove this command from the port.

### 802.1x User Distribution

You can configure 802.1x user distribution to load-balance users with the same group name across multiple different VLANs.

The VLANs are either supplied by the RADIUS server or configured through the switch CLI under a VLAN group name.

- Configure the RADIUS server to send more than one VLAN name for a user. The multiple VLAN names can be sent as part of the response to the user. The 802.1x user distribution tracks all the users in a particular VLAN and achieves load balancing by moving the authorized user to the least populated VLAN.

- Configure the RADIUS server to send a VLAN group name for a user. The VLAN group name can be sent as part of the response to the user. You can search for the selected VLAN group name among the VLAN group names that you configured by using the switch CLI. If the VLAN group name is found, the corresponding VLANs under this VLAN group name are searched to find the least populated VLAN. Load balancing is achieved by moving the corresponding authorized user to that VLAN.
The RADIUS server can send the VLAN information in any combination of VLAN-IDs, VLAN names, or VLAN groups.

802.1x User Distribution Configuration Guidelines

- Confirm that at least one VLAN is mapped to the VLAN group.
- You can map more than one VLAN to a VLAN group.
- You can modify the VLAN group by adding or deleting a VLAN.
- When you clear an existing VLAN from the VLAN group name, none of the authenticated ports in the VLAN are cleared, but the mappings are removed from the existing VLAN group.
- If you clear the last VLAN from the VLAN group name, the VLAN group is cleared.
- You can clear a VLAN group even when the active VLANS are mapped to the group. When you clear a VLAN group, none of the ports or users that are in the authenticated state in any VLAN within the group are cleared, but the VLAN mappings to the VLAN group are cleared.

Network Admission Control Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x Validation

The switch supports the Network Admission Control (NAC) Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x validation, which checks the antivirus condition or posture of endpoint systems or clients before granting the devices network access. With NAC Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x validation, you can do these tasks:

- Download the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]) from the authentication server.
- Set the number of seconds between reauthentication attempts as the value of the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute (Attribute[27]) and get an access policy against the client from the RADIUS server.
- Set the action to be taken when the switch tries to reauthenticate the client by using the Termination-Action RADIUS attribute (Attribute[29]). If the value is the DEFAULT or is not set, the session ends. If the value is RADIUS-Request, the reauthentication process starts.
- Set the list of VLAN number or name or VLAN group name as the value of the Tunnel Group Private ID (Attribute[81]) and the preference for the VLAN number or name or VLAN group name as the value of the Tunnel Preference (Attribute[83]). If you do not configure the Tunnel Preference, the first Tunnel Group Private ID (Attribute[81]) attribute is picked up from the list.
- View the NAC posture token, which shows the posture of the client, by using the show authentication privileged EXEC command.
- Configure secondary private VLANS as guest VLANS.

Configuring NAC Layer 2 IEEE 802.1x validation is similar to configuring IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication except that you must configure a posture token on the RADIUS server.
Voice Aware 802.1x Security

To use voice aware IEEE 802.1x authentication, the switch must be running the LAN base image.

You use the voice aware 802.1x security feature to configure the switch to disable only the VLAN on which a security violation occurs, whether it is a data or voice VLAN. In previous releases, when an attempt to authenticate the data client caused a security violation, the entire port shut down, resulting in a complete loss of connectivity.

You can use this feature in IP phone deployments where a PC is connected to the IP phone. A security violation found on the data VLAN results in the shutdown of only the data VLAN. The traffic on the voice VLAN flows through the switch without interruption.

Common Session ID

Authentication manager uses a single session ID (referred to as a common session ID) for a client no matter which authentication method is used. This ID is used for all reporting purposes, such as the show commands and MIBs. The session ID appears with all per-session syslog messages.

The session ID includes:

- The IP address of the Network Access Device (NAD)
- A monotonically increasing unique 32 bit integer
- The session start time stamp (a 32 bit integer)

This example shows how the session ID appears in the output of the show authentication command. The session ID in this example is 160000050000000B288508E5:

```
Device# show authentication sessions
Interface  MAC Address  Method  Domain  Status  Session ID
Fa4/0/4    0000.0000.0203  mab  DATA  Authz Success  160000050000000B288508E5
```

This is an example of how the session ID appears in the syslog output. The session ID in this example is also 160000050000000B288508E5:

```
1w0d: %AUTHMGR-5-START: Starting 'mab' for client (0000.0000.0203) on Interface Fa4/0/4 AuditSessionID 160000050000000B288508E5
1w0d: %MAB-5-SUCCESS: Authentication successful for client (0000.0000.0203) on Interface Fa4/0/4 AuditSessionID 160000050000000B288508E5
1w0d: %AUTHMGR-7-RESULT: Authentication result 'success' from 'mab' for client (0000.0000.0203) on Interface Fa4/0/4 AuditSessionID 160000050000000B288508E5
```

The session ID is used by the NAD, the AAA server, and other report-analyzing applications to identify the client. The ID appears automatically. No configuration is required.

Maximum Number of Allowed Devices Per Port

This is the maximum number of devices allowed on an 802.1x-enabled port:
• In single-host mode, only one device is allowed on the access VLAN. If the port is also configured with a voice VLAN, an unlimited number of Cisco IP phones can send and receive traffic through the voice VLAN.

• In multidomain authentication (MDA) mode, one device is allowed for the access VLAN, and one IP phone is allowed for the voice VLAN.

• In multihost mode, only one 802.1x supplicant is allowed on the port, but an unlimited number of non-802.1x hosts are allowed on the access VLAN. An unlimited number of devices are allowed on the voice VLAN.

How to Configure IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

Configuring 802.1x Authentication

To allow per-user ACLs or VLAN assignment, you must enable AAA authorization to configure the switch for all network-related service requests.

This is the 802.1x AAA process:

Before you begin

To configure 802.1x port-based authentication, you must enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) and specify the authentication method list. A method list describes the sequence and authentication method to be queried to authenticate a user.

Procedure

| Step 1 | A user connects to a port on the switch. |
| Step 2 | Authentication is performed. |
| Step 3 | VLAN assignment is enabled, as appropriate, based on the RADIUS server configuration. |
| Step 4 | The switch sends a start message to an accounting server. |
| Step 5 | Re-authentication is performed, as necessary. |
| Step 6 | The switch sends an interim accounting update to the accounting server that is based on the result of reauthentication. |
| Step 7 | The user disconnects from the port. |
| Step 8 | The switch sends a stop message to the accounting server. |

Configuring 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

Perform these steps to configure 802.1x port-based authentication:
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  *Example:*  
  Device> `enable` |
|  | - Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | Enters global configuration mode.  
  *Example:*  
  Device# `configure terminal` |
| **Step 3** | Enables AAA.  
  *Example:*  
  Device(config)# `aaa new-model` |
| **Step 4** | Creates an 802.1x authentication method list.  
  *Example:*  
  Device(config)# `aaa authentication dot1x {default} method1`  
  Default group radius  
  For `method1`, enter the `group radius` keywords to use the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.  
  **Note** Though other keywords are visible in the command-line help string, only the `group radius` keywords are supported. |
| **Step 5** | Enables 802.1x authentication globally on the switch.  
  *Example:*  
  Device(config)# `dot1x system-auth-control` |
| **Step 6** | (Optional) Configures the switch to use user-RADIUS authorization for all network-related service requests, such as per-user ACLs or VLAN assignment.  
  *Example:*  
  Device(config)# `aaa authorization network {default} group radius` |
### Configuring 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>network default group radius</code></td>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong> Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 7**  
`radius server server name`  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# radius server rsim  
address ipv4 124.2.2.12

**Step 8**  
`address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.12

**Step 9**  
`key string`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123

**Step 10**  
`exit`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-radius-server)# exit

**Step 11**  
`interface interface-id`  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2

**Step 12**  
`switchport mode access`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access

**Step 13**  
`authentication port-control auto`  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto
## Configuring Periodic Reauthentication

You can enable periodic 802.1x client reauthentication and specify how often it occurs. If you do not specify a time period before enabling reauthentication, the number of seconds between attempts is 3600.

Follow these steps to enable periodic reauthentication of the client and to configure the number of seconds between reauthentication attempts. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface <code>interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enter interface configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</td>
<td>Specifying the interface to be configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> authentication periodic</td>
<td>Enables periodic reauthentication of the client, which is disabled by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring 802.1x Violation Modes

You can configure an 802.1x port so that it shuts down, generates a syslog error, or discards packets from a new device when:

- A device connects to an 802.1x-enabled port
- The maximum number of allowed about devices have been authenticated on the port

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure the security violation actions on the switch:

#### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>authentication periodic</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5**

Sets the number of seconds between reauthentication attempts.

The `authentication timer` keywords have these meanings:

- **inactivity**: Interval in seconds after which if there is no activity from the client then it is unauthorized
- **reauthenticate**: Time in seconds after which an automatic reauthentication attempt is initiated
- **restart value**: Interval in seconds after which an attempt is made to authenticate an unauthorized port
- **unauthorized value**: Interval in seconds after which an unauthorized session will get deleted

This command affects the behavior of the switch only if periodic reauthentication is enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>authentication timer</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{{[inactivity</td>
<td>`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`reauthenticate</td>
<td>restart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{value}</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate 180
```

**Step 6**

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-if)#</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```plaintext
Device(config-if)# end
```
## Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>aaa authentication dot1x {default} method1</code></td>
<td>Creates an 802.1x authentication method list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius</code></td>
<td>To create a default list that is used when a named list is not specified in the authentication command, use the <code>default</code> keyword followed by the method that is to be used in default situations. The default method list is automatically applied to all ports. For <code>method1</code>, enter the <code>group radius</code> keywords to use the list of all RADIUS servers for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>interface interface-type interface-number</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port connected to the client that is to be enabled for IEEE 802.1x authentication, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/4</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><code>switchport mode access</code></td>
<td>Sets the port to access mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>`authentication violation {shutdown</td>
<td>restrict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>shutdown</code>: Error disable the port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Changing the Quiet Period

When the switch cannot authenticate the client, the switch remains idle for a set period of time and then tries again. The `authentication timer restart` interface configuration command controls the idle period. A failed authentication of the client might occur because the client provided an invalid password. You can provide a faster response time to the user by entering a number smaller than the default.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to change the quiet period. This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action | Purpose
---|---
**Step 4** | 
authentication timer restart *seconds*  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# authentication timer restart 30  
Sets the number of seconds that the switch remains in the quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with the client.  
The range is 1 to 65535 seconds; the default is 60.

**Step 5** | 
end  
Example:  
Device(config-if)# end  
Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 6** | 
show authentication sessions interface *interface-id*  
Example:  
Device# show authentication sessions interface gigabitethernet2/0/1  
Verifies your entries.

**Step 7** | 
copy running-config startup-config  
Example:  
Device# copy running-config startup-config  
(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

---

### Changing the Switch-to-Client Retransmission Time

The client responds to the EAP-request/identity frame from the switch with an EAP-response/identity frame. If the switch does not receive this response, it waits a set period of time (known as the retransmission time) and then resends the frame.

**Note**  
You should change the default value of this command only to adjust for unusual circumstances such as unreliable links or specific behavioral problems with certain clients and authentication servers.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to change the amount of time that the switch waits for client notification. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable  
Example:  
* Enter your password if prompted.  
Enables privileged EXEC mode. |
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

Device> `enable`

**Purpose**

Enters global configuration mode.

### Step 2

**Command or Action**

Device# `configure terminal`

**Example**

Device# configure terminal

**Purpose**

Enters global configuration mode.

### Step 3

**Command or Action**

Device(config)# `interface interface-id`

**Example**

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1

**Purpose**

Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.

### Step 4

**Command or Action**

Device(config-if)# `authentication timer reauthenticate seconds`

**Example**

Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate 60

**Purpose**

Sets the number of seconds that the switch waits for a response to an EAP-request/identity frame from the client before resending the request. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds; the default is 5.

### Step 5

**Command or Action**

Device(config-if)# `end`

**Example**

Device(config-if)# end

**Purpose**

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Step 6

**Command or Action**

Device# `show authentication sessions interface interface-id`

**Example**

Device# show authentication sessions interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1

**Purpose**

Verifies your entries.

### Step 7

**Command or Action**

Device# `copy running-config startup-config`

**Example**

Device# copy running-config startup-config

**Purpose**

(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

---

### Setting the Switch-to-Client Frame-Retransmission Number

In addition to changing the switch-to-client retransmission time, you can change the number of times that the switch sends an EAP-request/identity frame (assuming no response is received) to the client before restarting the authentication process.
You should change the default value of this command only to adjust for unusual circumstances such as unreliable links or specific behavioral problems with certain clients and authentication servers.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to set the switch-to-client frame-retransmission number. This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device[# enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gigabitethernet2/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> dot1x max-reauth-req</td>
<td>Sets the number of times that the switch sends an EAP-request/identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>frame to the client before restarting the authentication process. The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>range is 1 to 10; the default is 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# dot1x max-reauth-req</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring Host Mode**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to allow multiple hosts (clients) on an IEEE 802.1x-authorized port that has the authentication port-control interface configuration command set to auto. Use the multi-domain keyword to configure and enable multidomain authentication (MDA), which
allows both a host and a voice device, such as an IP phone (Cisco or non-Cisco), on the same switch port. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Step 2      | configure terminal        | Enters global configuration mode.                                       |
| Example:    |                           |                                                                         |
|             | Device# configure terminal|                                                                         |

| Step 3      | interface interface-id    | Specifies the port to which multiple hosts are indirectly attached, and enters interface configuration mode. |
| Example:    |                           |                                                                         |
|             | Device(config)# interface |                                                                         |
|             | gigabitethernet 2/0/1      |                                                                         |

| Step 4      | authentication host-mode [multi-auth | multi-domain | multi-host | single-host] | Allows multiple hosts (clients) on an 802.1x-authorized port. |
| Example:    | authentication host-mode multi-host|                           |                                                                         |
|             | Device(config-if)#         |                                                                         |
|             | authentication host-mode multi-host |                                                                         |

The keywords have these meanings:

- **multi-auth**: Allow multiple authenticated clients on both the voice VLAN and data VLAN.

  **Note** The **multi-auth** keyword is only available with the **authentication host-mode** command.

- **multi-host**: Allow multiple hosts on an 802.1x-authorized port after a single host has been authenticated.

- **multi-domain**: Allow both a host and a voice device, such as an IP phone (Cisco or non-Cisco), to be authenticated on an IEEE 802.1x-authorized port.

  **Note** You must configure the voice VLAN for the IP phone when the host mode is set to **multi-domain**.
### Enabling MAC Move

MAC move allows an authenticated host to move from one port on the device to another.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to globally enable MAC move on the device. This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt;</code> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt;</code> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>authentication mac-move permit</code></td>
<td>Enables MAC move on the device. Default is deny.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>In Session Aware Networking mode, the default CLI is <code>access-session mac-move deny</code>. To enable Mac Move in Session Aware Networking, use the <code>no access-session mac-move</code> global configuration command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# authentication mac-move permit</code></td>
<td>In legacy mode (IBNS 1.0), default value for <code>mac-move</code> is <code>deny</code> and in C3PL mode (IBNS 2.0) default value is <code>permit</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Disabling MAC Move

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to disable MAC move from an authentication manager-enabled port to an authentication manager-disabled port on a device. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enter your password, if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>authentication mac-move deny-uncontrolled</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Disables MAC move to an authentication manager-disabled port on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# authentication mac-move deny-uncontrolled</td>
<td>To disable Mac move in session-aware networking, use the <code>access-session mac-move deny-uncontrolled</code> global configuration command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>end</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Enabling MAC Replace

MAC replace allows a host to replace an authenticated host on a port.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable MAC replace on an interface. This procedure is optional.
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
*Example:*  
Device> enable |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
*Example:*  
Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** interface interface-id | Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.  
*Example:*  
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/2 |
| **Step 4** authentication violation {protect | replace | restrict | shutdown} | Use the replace keyword to enable MAC replace on the interface. The port removes the current session and initiates authentication with the new host.  
*Example:*  
Device(config-if)# authentication violation replace |
| **Step 5** end | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.  
*Example:*  
Device(config-if)# end |

### Configuring 802.1x Accounting

Enabling AAA system accounting with 802.1x accounting allows system reload events to be sent to the accounting RADIUS server for logging. The server can then infer that all active 802.1x sessions are closed.
Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.x, periodic AAA accounting updates are not supported. The switch does not send periodic interim accounting records to the accounting server. Periodic AAA accounting updates are available in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x and later releases.

Because RADIUS uses the unreliable UDP transport protocol, accounting messages might be lost due to poor network conditions. If the switch does not receive the accounting response message from the RADIUS server after a configurable number of retransmissions of an accounting request, this system message appears:

```
Accounting message %s for session %s failed to receive Accounting Response.
```

When the stop message is not sent successfully, this message appears:

```
00:09:55: %RADIUS-4-RADIUS_DEAD: RADIUS server 172.20.246.201:1645,1646 is not responding.
```

You must configure the RADIUS server to perform accounting tasks, such as logging start, stop, and interim-update messages and time stamps. To turn on these functions, enable logging of “Update/Watchdog packets from this AAA client” in your RADIUS server Network Configuration tab. Next, enable “CVS RADIUS Accounting” in your RADIUS server System Configuration tab.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure 802.1x accounting after AAA is enabled on your switch. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/3</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group radius</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group radius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Enables 802.1x accounting using the list of all RADIUS servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>aaa accounting system default start-stop group radius</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# aaa accounting system default start-stop group radius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: (Optional) Enables system accounting (using the list of all RADIUS servers) and generates system accounting reload event messages when the switch reloads.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>end</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose**: Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Configuring 802.1x Readiness Check

The 802.1x readiness check monitors 802.1x activity on all the switch ports and displays information about the devices connected to the ports that support 802.1x. You can use this feature to determine if the devices connected to the switch ports are 802.1x-capable.

The 802.1x readiness check is allowed on all ports that can be configured for 802.1x. The readiness check is not available on a port that is configured as `dot1x force-unauthorized`.

Follow these steps to enable the 802.1x readiness check on the switch:

#### Before you begin

Follow these guidelines to enable the readiness check on the switch:

- The readiness check is typically used before 802.1x is enabled on the switch.
- If you use the `dot1x test eapol-capable` privileged EXEC command without specifying an interface, all the ports on the switch stack are tested.
- When you configure the `dot1x test eapol-capable` command on an 802.1x-enabled port, and the link comes up, the port queries the connected client about its 802.1x capability. When the client responds with a notification packet, it is 802.1x-capable. A syslog message is generated if the client responds within the timeout period. If the client does not respond to the query, the client is not 802.1x-capable. No syslog message is generated.
- The readiness check can be sent on a port that handles multiple hosts (for example, a PC that is connected to an IP phone). A syslog message is generated for each of the clients that respond to the readiness check within the timer period.
## Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  - Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | `dot1x test eapol-capable [interface interface-id]` | Enables the 802.1x readiness check on the switch.  
(Optional) For `interface-id` specify the port on which to check for IEEE 802.1x readiness.  
**Note** If you omit the optional `interface` keyword, all interfaces on the switch are tested. |
| **Step 3** | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 4** | `dot1x test timeout timeout` | (Optional) Configures the timeout used to wait for EAPOL response. The range is from 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 10 seconds. |
| **Step 5** | `end` | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### Configuring Switch-to-RADIUS Server Communication

Follow these steps to configure the RADIUS server parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  - Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | `dot1x test eapol-capable [interface interface-id]` | Enables the 802.1x readiness check on the switch.  
(Optional) For `interface-id` specify the port on which to check for IEEE 802.1x readiness.  
**Note** If you omit the optional `interface` keyword, all interfaces on the switch are tested. |
<p>| <strong>Step 3</strong> | <code>configure terminal</code> | Enters global configuration mode. |
| <strong>Step 4</strong> | <code>dot1x test timeout timeout</code> | (Optional) Configures the timeout used to wait for EAPOL response. The range is from 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 10 seconds. |
| <strong>Step 5</strong> | <code>end</code> | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ip radius source-interface vlan vlan interface number</td>
<td>Specifies that the RADIUS packets have the IP address of the indicated interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# ip radius source-interface vlan 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>radius server server name</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# radius server rsim address ipv4 172.16.0.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} ip address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.2 auth-port 1550 acct-port 1560</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>key string</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-radius-server)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>radius-server dead-criteria tries num-tries</td>
<td>Specifies the number of unanswered sent messages to a RADIUS server before considering the server to be inactive. The range of num-tries is 1 to 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria tries 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting the Reauthentication Number

You can also change the number of times that the device restarts the authentication process before the port changes to the unauthorized state.

---

**Note**

You should change the default value of this command only to adjust for unusual circumstances such as unreliable links or specific behavioral problems with certain clients and authentication servers.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to set the reauthentication number. This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td>Sets the port to access mode only if you previously configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

#### Configuring a Guest VLAN

When you configure a guest VLAN, clients that are not 802.1x-capable are put into the guest VLAN when the server does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame. Clients that are 802.1x-capable but that fail authentication are not granted network access. The switch supports guest VLANs in single-host or multiple-hosts mode.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a guest VLAN. This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> dot1x port-control auto</td>
<td>Enables 802.1x authentication on the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# dot1x port-control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> dot1x max-req count</td>
<td>Sets the number of times that the device restarts the authentication process before the port changes to the unauthorized state. The range is 0 to 10; the default is 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# dot1x max-req 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring a Restricted VLAN

When you configure a restricted VLAN on a device, clients that are IEEE 802.1x-compliant are moved into the restricted VLAN when the authentication server does not receive a valid username and password. The device supports restricted VLANs only in single-host mode.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a restricted VLAN. This procedure is optional.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2** configure terminal      | Enters global configuration mode.                                       |
| Example:                           |                                                                         |
| Device# configure terminal         |                                                                         |

| **Step 3** interface interface-id | Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode. |
| Example:                           |                                                                         |
| Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/2 |                                                                         |
Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

### Configuring the Number of Authentication Attempts on a Restricted VLAN

You can configure the maximum number of authentication attempts allowed before a user is assigned to the restricted VLAN by using the `authentication event fail retry retry count` interface configuration command. The range of allowable authentication attempts is 1 to 3. The default is 3 attempts.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure the maximum number of allowed authentication attempts. This procedure is optional.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device> enable |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** interface interface-id | Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device(config-if)# interface interface-id |
## Configuring 802.1x Inaccessible Authentication Bypass with Critical Voice VLAN

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure critical voice VLAN on a port and enable the inaccessible authentication bypass feature.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><a href="#">Enter your password if prompted.</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device&gt;</code> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>authentication port-control auto</code></td>
<td>Enables 802.1x authentication on the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><code>authentication event fail action authorize vlan vlan-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies an active VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094. You can configure any active VLAN except an internal VLAN (routed port), an RSPAN VLAN or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x restricted VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication event fail action authorize vlan 8</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><code>authentication event fail retry retry count</code></td>
<td>Specifies a number of authentication attempts before a port moves to the auth fail VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication event fail retry 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# end</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>radius-server dead-criteria {\text{time} \text{ seconds}} {\text{tries} \text{ number}}</td>
<td>Sets the conditions that determine when a RADIUS server is considered un-available or down (dead).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria time 20 tries 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• time: 1 to 120 seconds. The switch dynamically determines a default seconds value between 10 and 60.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• number: 1 to 100 tries. The switch dynamically determines a default tries number between 10 and 100.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>radius-server dead-time minutes</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the number of minutes during which a RADIUS server is not sent requests. The range is from 0 to 1440 minutes (24 hours). The default is 0 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server dead-time 60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>radius server server name</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius server rsim address ipv4 124.2.2.12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} ip address auth-port port_number acct-port port_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.2 auth-port 1550 acct-port 1560</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>key string</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123</td>
<td>the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10</td>
<td>dot1x critical {eapol</td>
<td>recovery delay milliseconds}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>(Optional) Configure the parameters for inaccessible authentication bypass:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# dot1x critical eapol</td>
<td>• eapol: Specify that the switch sends an EAPOL-Success message when the switch successfully authenticates the critical port.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# dot1x critical recovery delay 2000</td>
<td>• recovery delay milliseconds: Set the recovery delay period during which the switch waits to re-initialize a critical port when a RADIUS server that was unavailable becomes available. The range is from 1 to 10000 milliseconds. The default is 1000 milliseconds (a port can be re-initialized every second).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 11</td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Specify the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td>authentication event server dead action {authorize</td>
<td>reinitialize} vlan vlan-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Use these keywords to move hosts on the port if the RADIUS server is unreachable:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# authentication event server dead action reinitialize vlan 20</td>
<td>• authorize: Move any new hosts trying to authenticate to the user-specified critical VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• reinitialize: Move all authorized hosts on the port to the user-specified critical VLAN.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 13</td>
<td>switchport voice vlan vlan-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Specifies the voice VLAN for the port. The voice VLAN cannot be the same as the critical data VLAN configured in Step 6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

**Purpose**

Configures critical voice VLAN to move data traffic on the port to the voice VLAN if the RADIUS server is unreachable.

**Command or Action**

- `authentication event server dead action authorize voice`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# authentication event server dead action authorize voice
```

**Step 14**

- `end`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

**Step 15**

- `show authentication interface interface-id`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# show authentication interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
```

**Step 16**

(Optional) Verify your entries.

**Example**

To return to the RADIUS server default settings, use the `no radius-server dead-criteria`, the `no radius-server deadtime`, and the `no radius server` global configuration commands. To disable inaccessible authentication bypass, use the `no authentication event server dead action` interface configuration command. To disable critical voice VLAN, use the `no authentication event server dead action authorize voice` interface configuration command.

### Configuring 802.1x Authentication with Wake-on-LAN

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable 802.1x authentication with wake-on-LAN (WoL). This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

- `configure terminal`

**Example:**

- `Device(config)# configure terminal`

Enters global configuration mode.
**Configuring MAC Authentication Bypass**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable MAC authentication bypass. This procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
<p>| Example: | • Enter your password if prompted. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

configure terminal

Example:

Device# configure terminal

**Step 3**

interface interface-id

Example:

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1

**Step 4**

authentication port-control auto

Example:

Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto

**Step 5**

mab [eap]

Example:

Device(config-if)# mab

(Optional) Use the eap keyword to configure the device to use EAP for authorization.

**Step 6**

end

Example:

Device(config-if)# end

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

**Configuring 802.1x User Distribution**

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a VLAN group and to map a VLAN to it:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Enter your password if prompted.
### Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

#### Configuring NAC Layer 2 802.1x Validation

You can configure NAC Layer 2 802.1x validation, which is also referred to as 802.1x authentication with a RADIUS server.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure NAC Layer 2 802.1x validation. The procedure is optional.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **enable**         | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
| **Example:**       | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Device> enable** |         |

---

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td>Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> authentication event no-response action authorize vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Specifies an active VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094. You can configure any active VLAN except an internal VLAN (routed port), an RSPAN VLAN, or a voice VLAN as an 802.1x guest VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication event no-response action authorize vlan 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> authentication periodic</td>
<td>Enables periodic reauthentication of the client, which is disabled by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication periodic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> authentication timer reauthenticate</td>
<td>Sets reauthentication attempt for the client (set to one hour). This command affects the behavior of the switch only if periodic reauthentication is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication timer reauthenticate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring an Authenticator Switch with NEAT

Configuring this feature requires that one switch outside a wiring closet is configured as a supplicant and is connected to an authenticator switch.

**Note**

- The authenticator switch interface configuration must be restored to access mode by explicitly flapping it if a line card is removed and inserted in the chassis when CISP or NEAT session is active.
- The *cisco-av-pairs* must be configured as *device-traffic-class=switch* on the ISE, which sets the interface as a trunk after the supplicant is successfully authenticated.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a switch as an authenticator:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cisp enable</code></td>
<td>Enables CISP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# cisp enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/3</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring a Supplicant Switch with NEAT

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure a switch as a supplicant:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)#  interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td>Sets the port mode to access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> authentication port-control auto</td>
<td>Sets the port-authentication mode to auto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td>Configures the interface as a port access entity (PAE) authenticator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> spanning-tree portfast</td>
<td>Enables Port Fast on an access port connected to a single workstation or server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast trunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring a Supplicant Switch with NEAT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables CISP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisp enable</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# cisp enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Creates 802.1x credentials profile. This must be attached to the port that is configured as supplicant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1x credentials</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# dot1x credentials test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Creates a username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username suppswitch</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# username suppswitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Creates a password for the new username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password password</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# password myswitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>Forces the switch to send only multicast EAPOL packets when it receives either unicast or multicast packets. This also allows NEAT to work on the supplicant switch in all host modes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot1x supplicant</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# dot1x supplicant force-multicast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td>Sets the port to trunk mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switchport trunk</td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Encapsulation dot1q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q</td>
<td>Configures the interface as a VLAN trunk port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 10**  
switchport mode trunk  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk

**Step 11**  
dot1x pae supplicant  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae supplicant

**Step 12**  
dot1x credentials *profile-name*  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# dot1x credentials test

**Step 13**  
end  
**Example:**  
Device(config-if)# end

---

**Configuring 802.1x Authentication with Downloadable ACLs and Redirect URLs**

**Note**
You must configure a downloadable ACL on the ACS before downloading it to the switch.

After authentication on the port, you can use the `show ip access-list` privileged EXEC command to display the downloaded ACLs on the port.

**Note**
The output of the `show ip access-lists interface` command does not display dACL or ACL filter IDs. This is because the ACLs are attached to the virtual ports created by multidomain authentication for each authentication session; instead of the physical interface. To display dACL or ACL filter IDs, use the `show ip access-lists access-list-name` command.
## Configuring Downloadable ACLs

The policies take effect after client authentication and the client IP address addition to the IP device tracking table. The switch then applies the downloadable ACL to the port.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode:

### Before you begin

SISF-Based device tracking is a prerequisite to configuring 802.1x authentication. Ensure that you have enabled device tracking programmatically or manually. For more information, see the *Configuring SISF-Based Tracking* chapter.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.&lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>aaa new-model&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>aaa authorization network default local group radius&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# aaa authorization network default local group radius</td>
<td>Sets the authorization method to local. To remove the authorization method, use the <strong>no aaa authorization network default local group radius</strong> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>radius-server vsa send authentication&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# radius-server vsa send authentication</td>
<td>Configures the radius vsa send authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>interface <strong>interface-id</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

#### Configuring a Downloadable Policy

**Before you begin**

SISF-Based device tracking is a prerequisite to configuring 802.1x authentication. Ensure that you have enabled device tracking programmatically or manually.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> access-list access-list-number { deny</td>
<td>permit } { hostname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>The access-list-number is a decimal number from 1 to 99 or 1300 to 1999.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# access-list 1 deny any log</td>
<td>Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit access if conditions are matched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The source is the source address of the network or host that sends a packet, such as this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>hostname</strong>: The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>any</strong>: The keyword any as an abbreviation for source and source-wildcard value of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source-wildcard value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>host</strong>: The keyword host as an abbreviation for source and source-wildcard of source 0.0.0.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional)</td>
<td>Applies the source-wildcard wildcard bits to the source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional)</td>
<td>Enters log to cause an informational logging message about the packet that matches the entry to be sent to the console.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 4**

**interface** *interface-id*

*Example:*

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/2

Enters interface configuration mode.

**Step 5**

**ip access-group** *acl-id* **in**

*Example:*

Device(config-if)# ip access-group default_acl in

Configures the default ACL on the port in the input direction.

*Note*  
The *acl-id* is an access list name or number.

**Step 6**

**exit**

*Example:*

Device(config-if)# exit

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

**Step 7**

**aaa new-model**

*Example:*

Device(config)# aaa new-model

Enables AAA.

**Step 8**

**aaa authorization network default group radius**

*Example:*

Device(config)# aaa authorization

Sets the authorization method to local. To remove the authorization method, use the **no aaa authorization network default group radius** command.
Configuring VLAN ID Based MAC Authentication

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>configure terminal</th>
<th>Enters global configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>mab request format attribute 32 vlan access-vlan</th>
<th>Enables VLAN ID-based MAC authentication.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# mab request format attribute 32 vlan access-vlan</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Flexible Authentication Ordering

The examples used in the instructions below changes the order of Flexible Authentication Ordering so that MAB is attempted before IEEE 802.1X authentication (dot1x). MAB is configured as the first authentication method, so MAB will have priority over all other authentication methods.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>interface interface-id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>switchport mode access</code></td>
<td>Sets the port to access mode only if you previously configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>`authentication order [ dot1x</td>
<td>mab ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# authentication order mab dot1x</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>`authentication priority [ dot1x</td>
<td>mab ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>Device(config-if)# authentication priority mab dot1x</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Command or Action

**Step 7**

```
end
```

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

---

### Configuring Open1x

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to enable manual control of the port authorization state:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**

```enable```

**Example:**

```Device> enable```

Enters privileged EXEC mode.

- Enter your password if prompted.

| **Step 2**

```configure terminal```

**Example:**

```Device# configure terminal```

Enters global configuration mode.

| **Step 3**

```interface interface-id```

**Example:**

```Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1```

Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.

| **Step 4**

```switchport mode access```

**Example:**

```Device(config-if)# switchport mode access```

Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server.

| **Step 5**

```authentication control-direction {both | in}```

**Example:**

```Device(config-if)# authentication control-direction both```

(Optional) Configures the port control as unidirectional or bidirectional.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><code>authentication fallback name</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Configures a port to use web authentication as a fallback method for clients that do not support 802.1x authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication fallback profile1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>`authentication host-mode [multi-auth</td>
<td>multi-domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-auth</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td><code>authentication open</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Enables or disable open access on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication open</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>`authentication order [ dot1x</td>
<td>mab ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication order dot1x webauth</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10</td>
<td><code>authentication periodic</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Enables or disable reauthentication on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication periodic</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 11</td>
<td>`authentication port-control {auto</td>
<td>force-authorized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-if)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disabling 802.1x Authentication on a Port

You can disable 802.1x authentication on the port by using the `no dot1x pae` interface configuration command. Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to disable 802.1x authentication on the port. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/0/1</td>
<td>Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the port to access mode only if you configured the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> no dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# no dot1x pae authenticator</td>
<td>Disables 802.1x authentication on the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Resetting the 802.1x Authentication Configuration to Default Values

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to reset the 802.1x authentication configuration to the default values. This procedure is optional.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | **enable**  
  **Example:**  
  Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  • Enter your password if prompted. |
| Step 2 | **configure terminal**  
  **Example:**  
  Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Step 3 | **interface interface-id**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2 | Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the port to be configured. |
| Step 4 | **dot1x default**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# dot1x default | Resets the 802.1x parameters to the default values. |
| Step 5 | **end**  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config-if)# end | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### Configuring Voice-Aware 802.1x Security

You use the voice aware 802.1x security feature on the device to disable only the VLAN on which a security violation occurs, whether it is a data or voice VLAN. You can use this feature in IP phone deployments where a PC is connected to the IP phone. A security violation found on the data VLAN results in the shutdown of only the data VLAN. The traffic on the voice VLAN flows through the device without interruption.

Follow these guidelines to configure voice aware 802.1x voice security on the device:
• You enable voice aware 802.1x security by entering the `errdisable detect cause security-violation` `shutdown vlan` global configuration command. You disable voice aware 802.1x security by entering the `no` version of this command. This command applies to all 802.1x-configured ports in the device.

Note: If you do not include the `shutdown vlan` keywords, the entire port is shut down when it enters the error-disabled state.

• If you use the `errdisable recovery cause security-violation` global configuration command to configure error-disabled recovery, the port is automatically re-enabled. If error-disabled recovery is not configured for the port, you re-enable it by using the `shutdown` and `no shutdown` interface configuration commands.

• You can re-enable individual VLANs by using the `clear errdisable interface interface-id vlan [vlan-list]` privileged EXEC command. If you do not specify a range, all VLANs on the port are enabled.

Follow these steps to enable voice aware 802.1x security:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
* Example:  
  Device> enable |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
* Example:  
  Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** errdisable detect cause security-violation shutdown vlan | Shut down any VLAN on which a security violation error occurs.  
* Example:  
  Device(config)# errdisable detect cause security-violation shutdown vlan  
* Note: If the `shutdown vlan` keywords are not included, the entire port enters the error-disabled state and shuts down. |
| **Step 4** errdisable recovery cause security-violation | Enables the automatic recovery of ports that were disabled because of 802.1X security violations.  
* Example:  
  Device(config)# errdisable recovery cause security-violation |
| **Step 5** Enter the following:  
  • shutdown  
  • no shutdown | (Optional) Re-enables an error-disabled VLAN, and clear all error-disable indications. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# no shutdown</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear errdisable interface interface-id vlan [vlan-list]</td>
<td>(Optional) Reenables individual VLANs that have been error disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# clear errdisable interface gigabitethernet 0/1/1 vlan vlan_list</td>
<td>• For the interface-id argument, specify the port on which to reenable individual VLANs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) For the vlan-list argument, specify a list of VLANs to be re-enabled. If vlan-list is not specified, all VLANs are re-enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show errdisable detect</td>
<td>Displays the error-disabled detection status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show errdisable detect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration Examples for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication**

The following sections provide configuration examples for IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication.

**Example: Configuring Inaccessible Authentication Bypass**

This example shows how to configure the Inaccessible Authentication Bypass feature:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria time 30 tries 20
Device(config)# radius-server deadtime 60
Device(config)# radius server server1
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 172.29.36.49 acct-port 1618 auth-port 1612
Device(config-radius-server)# key abc1234
Device(config-radius-server)# exit
Device(config)# dot1x critical eapol
Device(config)# dot1x critical recovery delay 2000
```
Example: Configuring VLAN Groups

This example shows how to configure VLAN groups, map VLANs to groups, and verify VLAN group configurations and mappings to specified VLANs:

```
Device> enable
Device(config)# vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 10
Device(config)# exit
Device# show vlan group group-name eng-dept
Group Name VlansMapped
-----------------------------
eng-dept 10
```

```
Device# show dot1x vlan-group all
Group Name VlansMapped
-----------------------------
eng-dept 10
hr-dept 20
```

This example shows how to add a VLAN to an existing VLAN group and to verify that the VLAN is added:

```
Device> enable
Device(config)# vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 30
Device(config)# exit
Device(config)# show vlan group eng-dept
Group Name VlansMapped
-----------------------------
eng-dept 10,30
```

This example shows how to remove a VLAN from a VLAN group:

```
Device> enable
Device# no vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 10
```

This example shows that when all the VLANs are cleared from a VLAN group, the VLAN group is cleared:

```
Device> enable
Device(config)# no vlan group eng-dept vlan-list 30
Vlan 30 is successfully cleared from vlan group eng-dept.
Device(config)# exit
Device# show vlan group group-name eng-dept
```

This example shows how to clear all the VLAN groups:

```
Device> enable
Device(config)# no vlan group end-dept vlan-list all
Device(config)# exit
Device# show vlan-group all
```
Monitoring IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication Statistics and Status

This section lists the commands to monitor IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication statistics and status.

Table 29: Privileged EXEC show Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show dot1x all statistics</td>
<td>Displays 802.1x statistics for all ports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show dot1x interface interface-id statistics</td>
<td>Displays 802.1x statistics for a specific port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show dot1x all [count</td>
<td>details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show dot1x interface interface-id</td>
<td>Displays the 802.1x administrative and operational status for a specific port</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 30: Global Configuration Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>no dot1x logging verbose</td>
<td>Filters verbose 802.1x authentication messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication</td>
<td>IEEE 802.1x authentication prevents unauthorized devices (clients) from gaining access to the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1</td>
<td>Mac Move</td>
<td>MAC move from an authentication manager-enabled port to an authentication manager-disabled port on a device is now enabled by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1</td>
<td>Session Limit - To prevent MAC address flooding DOS attack</td>
<td>The access-session limit profile command was introduced to limit the number of voice and data hosts connecting to a port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is automatically enabled when IEEE 802.1X authentication is configured for an access port, which allows the RADIUS server to send a VLAN assignment to the device port. This assignment configures the device port so that network access can be limited for certain users.

- Prerequisites for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 517
- Restrictions for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 518
- Information About IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 519
- How to Configure IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 519
- Configuration Examples for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 523
- Additional References for IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Authentication, on page 524
- Feature History for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment, on page 524

### Prerequisites for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

The following tasks must be completed before implementing the IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature:

- IEEE 802.1X must be enabled on the device port.

- The device must have a RADIUS configuration and be connected to the Cisco secure access control server (ACS). You should understand the concepts of the RADIUS protocol and have an understanding of how to create and apply access control lists (ACLs).

- EAP support must be enabled on the RADIUS server.

- You must configure the IEEE 802.1X supplicant to send an EAP-logoff (Stop) message to the switch when the user logs off. If you do not configure the IEEE 802.1X supplicant, an EAP-logoff message is not sent to the switch and the accompanying accounting Stop message is not sent to the authentication server. See the Microsoft Knowledge Base article at the location [http://support.microsoft.com](http://support.microsoft.com) and set the SupplicantMode registry to 3 and the AuthMode registry to 1.

- Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) must be configured on the port for all network-related service requests. The authentication method list must be enabled and specified. A method list describes the sequence and authentication method to be queried to authenticate a user. See the IEEE 802.1X Authenticator feature module for information.

- The port must be successfully authenticated.
The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is available only on Cisco 89x and 88x series integrated switching routers (ISRs) that support switch ports.

The following ISR-G2 routers are supported:

- 1900
- 2900
- 3900
- 3900e

The following cards or modules support switch ports:

- Enhanced High-speed WAN interface cards (EHWICs) with ACL support:
  - EHWIC-4ESG-P
  - EHWIC-9ESG-P
  - EHWIC-4ESG
  - EHWIC-9ESG

- High-speed WAN interface cards (HWICs) without ACL support:
  - HWIC-4ESW-P
  - HWIC-9ESW-P
  - HWIC-4ESW
  - HWIC-9ES

### Restrictions for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

- The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is available only on a switch port.
- The device port is always assigned to the configured access VLAN when any of the following conditions occurs:
  - No VLAN is supplied by the RADIUS server.
  - The VLAN information from the RADIUS server is not valid.
  - IEEE 802.1X authentication is disabled on the port.
  - The port is in the force authorized, force unauthorized, unauthorized, or shutdown state.

**Note**

An access VLAN is a VLAN assigned to an access port. All packets sent from or received on this port belong to this VLAN.
• Assignment to the configured access VLAN prevents ports from appearing unexpectedly in an
inappropriate VLAN because of a configuration error. Examples of configuration errors include the
following:
  • A nonexistent or malformed VLAN ID
  • Attempted assignment to a voice VLAN ID

• When IEEE 802.1X authentication is enabled on a port, you cannot configure a port VLAN that is equal
to a voice VLAN.

• If the multihost mode is enabled on an IEEE 802.1X port, all hosts are placed in the same VLAN (specified
by the RADIUS server) as the first authenticated host.

• If an IEEE 802.1X port is authenticated and put in the RADIUS server-assigned VLAN, any change to
the port access VLAN configuration does not take effect.

• This feature does not support standard ACLs on the switch port.

Information About IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

Configuring Authorization

The AAA authorization feature is used to determine what a user can and cannot do. When AAA authorization
is enabled, the network access server uses information retrieved from the user profile that is located either in
the local user database or on the security server, to configure the user’s session. The user is granted access to
a requested service only if the information in the user profile allows it.

IEEE 802.1X Authentication with VLAN Assignment

Device ports support IEEE 802.1X authentication with VLAN assignment. After successful IEEE 802.1X
authentication of a port, the RADIUS server sends the VLAN assignment to configure the device port.

The RADIUS server database maintains the username-to-VLAN mappings, assigning the VLAN based on
the username of the supplicant connected to the device port.

How to Configure IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

Enabling AAA Authorization for VLAN Assignment

AAA authorization limits the services available to a user. When AAA authorization is enabled, the device
uses information retrieved from the user's profile, which is in the local user database or on the security server,
to configure the user's session. The user is granted access to a requested service only if the information in the
user profile allows it.
### Enabling IEEE 802.1X Authentication and Authorization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated</td>
<td>Configures the device for user RADIUS authorization for all network-related service requests. RADIUS authorization succeeds if the user has authenticated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated</td>
<td>Configures the device for user RADIUS authorization if the user has privileged EXEC access. RADIUS authorization succeeds if the user has authenticated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

| Step 3 | aaa new-model  
| Example: | Device(config)# aaa new-model  
| Purpose | Enables AAA.  

| Step 4 | aaa authentication dot1x {default | listname} method1 [method2...]  
| Example: | Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius  
| Purpose | Creates a series of authentication methods that are used to determine user privilege to access the privileged command level so that the device can communicate with the AAA server.  

| Step 5 | dot1x system-auth-control  
| Example: | Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control  
| Purpose | Globally enables 802.1X port-based authentication.  

| Step 6 | identity profile default  
| Example: | Device(config)# identity profile default  
| Purpose | Creates an identity profile and enters dot1x profile configuration mode.  

| Step 7 | exit  
| Example: | Device(config-identity-prof)# exit  
| Purpose | Exits dot1x profile configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.  

| Step 8 | interface type slot/port  
| Example: | Device(config)# interface Gigabitethernet 1/0/1  
| Purpose | Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the interface to be enabled for 802.1X authentication.  

| Step 9 | access-session port-control {auto | force-authorized | force-unauthorized}  
| Example: | Device(config-if)# access-session port-control auto  
| Purpose | Enables 802.1X port-based authentication on the interface.  

- **auto**—Enables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port changes from down to up or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The Device requests the identity of the supplicant and begins relaying authentication messages between the supplicant and the authentication server. Each supplicant attempting to access the network is uniquely identified by the Device by using the supplicant MAC address.
### Specifying an Authorized VLAN in the RADIUS Server Database

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the device and the RADIUS server by using the vendor-specific attribute (attribute 26). Vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) allow vendors to support their own extended attributes not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option by using the format recommended in the specification.

- You must assign the following vendor-specific tunnel attributes in the RADIUS server database. The RADIUS server must return these attributes to the device:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>force-authorized</strong>—Disables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to change to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. The port sends and receives normal traffic without IEEE 802.1X-based authentication of the client. This is the default setting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>force-unauthorized</strong>—Causes the port to remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the supplicant to authenticate. The Device cannot provide authentication services to the supplicant through the port.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 10**

**dot1x pae [supplicant | authenticator | both]**

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator
```

Sets the Port Access Entity (PAE) type.

- **supplicant**—The interface acts only as a supplicant and does not respond to messages that are meant for an authenticator.
- **authenticator**—The interface acts only as an authenticator and does not respond to any messages meant for a supplicant.
- **both**—The interface behaves both as a supplicant and as an authenticator and thus does respond to all dot1x messages.

**Step 11**

**end**

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

Exits interface configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 12**

**show dot1x**

**Example:**

```
Device# show dot1x
```

Displays whether 802.1X authentication has been configured on the device.
• [64] Tunnel-Type = VLAN
• [65] Tunnel-Medium-Type = 802
• [81] Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN name or VLAN ID

Attribute [64] must contain the value “VLAN” (type 13). Attribute [65] must contain the value “802” (type 6). Attribute [81] specifies the VLAN name or VLAN ID assigned to the IEEE 802.1X-authenticated user.

Configuration Examples for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

Example: Enabling AAA Authorization for VLAN Assignment

The following example shows how to enable AAA Authorization for VLAN assignment:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authorization network radius if-authenticated
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec radius if-authenticated
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Enabling 802.1X Authentication

The following example shows how to enable 802.1X authentication on a device:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius group radius
Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
```

The following `show dot1x` command output shows that 802.1X authentication has been configured on a device:

```
Device# show dot1x all
SysauthcontrolEnabled
Dot1x Protocol Version 2
Dot1x Info for GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
-------------------------------
PAE = AUTHENTICATOR
PortControl = AUTO
ControlDirection = Both
HostMode = MULTI_HOST
ReAuthentication = Enabled
QuietPeriod = 600
ServerTimeout = 60
SuppTimeout = 30
ReAuthPeriod = 1800 (Locally configured)
ReAuthMax = 2
MaxReq = 3
```
TxPeriod = 60
RateLimitPeriod = 60

Additional References for IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Authentication

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1X</td>
<td>Port Based Network Access Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 3580</td>
<td>IEEE 802.1X Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) Usage Guidelines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module. These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.
The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is automatically enabled when IEEE 802.1X authentication is configured for an access port, which allows the RADIUS server to send a VLAN assignment to the device port. This assignment configures the device port so that network access can be limited for certain users.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment</td>
<td>The IEEE 802.1X VLAN Assignment feature is automatically enabled when IEEE 802.1X authentication is configured for an access port, which allows the RADIUS server to send a VLAN assignment to the device port. This assignment configures the device port so that network access can be limited for certain users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 27

Web-Based Authentication

This chapter describes how to configure web-based authentication on the device. It contains these sections:

- Information About Web-Based Authentication, on page 527
- How to Configure Web-Based Authentication, on page 536
- Verifying Web-Based Authentication, on page 547
- Feature History for Web-Based Authentication, on page 548

Information About Web-Based Authentication

Web-Based Authentication Overview

Use the web-based authentication feature, known as web authentication proxy, to authenticate end users on host systems that do not run the IEEE 802.1x supplicant.

When you initiate an HTTP session, web-based authentication intercepts ingress HTTP packets from the host and sends an HTML login page to the users. The users enter their credentials, which the web-based authentication feature sends to the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server for authentication.

If authentication succeeds, web-based authentication sends a Login-Successful HTML page to the host and applies the access policies returned by the AAA server.

If authentication fails, web-based authentication forwards a Login-Fail HTML page to the user, prompting the user to retry the login. If the user exceeds the maximum number of attempts, web-based authentication forwards a Login-Expired HTML page to the host, and the user is placed on a watch list for a waiting period.

HTTPS traffic interception for central web authentication redirect is not supported.
You should use global parameter-map (for method-type, custom, and redirect) only for using the same web authentication methods like consent, web consent, and webauth, for all the clients and SSIDs. This ensures that all the clients have the same web-authentication method.

If the requirement is to use Consent for one SSID and Web-authentication for another SSID, then you should use two named parameter-maps. You should configure Consent in first parameter-map and configure webauth in second parameter-map.

The traceback that you receive when webauth client tries to do authentication does not have any performance or behavioral impact. It happens rarely when the context for which FFM replied back to EPM for ACL application is already dequeued (possibly due to timer expiry) and the session becomes ‘unauthorized’.

Based on where the web pages are hosted, the local web authentication can be categorized as follows:

- **Internal**—The internal default HTML pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) in the controller are used during the local web authentication.
- **Customized**—The customized web pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) are downloaded onto the controller and used during the local web authentication.
- **External**—The customized web pages are hosted on the external web server instead of using the in-built or custom web pages.

Based on the various web authentication pages, the types of web authentication are as follows:

- **Webauth**—This is a basic web authentication. Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the user name and password. You need to enter the correct credentials to access the network.
- **Consent or web-passthrough**—Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the Accept or Deny buttons. You need to click the Accept button to access the network.
- **Webconsent**—This is a combination of webauth and consent web authentication types. Herein, the controller presents a policy page with Accept or Deny buttons along with username or password. You need to enter the correct credentials and click the Accept button to access the network.

**Device Roles**

With web-based authentication, the devices in the network have these specific roles:

- **Client**—The device (workstation) that requests access to the LAN and the services and responds to requests from the switch. The workstation must be running an HTML browser with Java Script enabled.
- **Authentication server**—Authenticates the client. The authentication server validates the identity of the client and notifies the switch that the client is authorized to access the LAN and the switch services or that the client is denied.
- **Switch**—Controls the physical access to the network based on the authentication status of the client. The switch acts as an intermediary (proxy) between the client and the authentication server, requesting identity information from the client, verifying that information with the authentication server, and relaying a response to the client.
Host Detection

The switch maintains an IP device tracking table to store information about detected hosts.

For Layer 2 interfaces, web-based authentication detects IP hosts by using these mechanisms:

- ARP based trigger—ARP redirect ACL allows web-based authentication to detect hosts with a static IP address or a dynamic IP address.
- Dynamic ARP inspection
- DHCP snooping—Web-based authentication is notified when the switch creates a DHCP-binding entry for the host.

Session Creation

When web-based authentication detects a new host, it creates a session as follows:

- Reviews the exception list.
  If the host IP is included in the exception list, the policy from the exception list entry is applied, and the session is established.
- Reviews for authorization bypass
  If the host IP is not on the exception list, web-based authentication sends a nonresponsive-host (NRH) request to the server.
  If the server response is access accepted, authorization is bypassed for this host. The session is established.
- Sets up the HTTP intercept ACL
  If the server response to the NRH request is access rejected, the HTTP intercept ACL is activated, and the session waits for HTTP traffic from the host.

Authentication Process

When you enable web-based authentication, these events occur:

- The user initiates an HTTP session.
The HTTP traffic is intercepted, and authorization is initiated. The switch sends the login page to the user. The user enters a username and password, and the switch sends the entries to the authentication server.

If the authentication succeeds, the switch downloads and activates the user’s access policy from the authentication server. The login success page is sent to the user.

If the authentication fails, the switch sends the login fail page. The user retries the login. If the maximum number of attempts fails, the switch sends the login expired page, and the host is placed in a watch list. After the watch list times out, the user can retry the authentication process.

If the authentication server does not respond to the switch, and if an AAA fail policy is configured, the switch applies the failure access policy to the host. The login success page is sent to the user.

The switch reauthenticates a client when the host does not respond to an ARP probe on a Layer 2 interface, or when the host does not send any traffic within the idle timeout on a Layer 3 interface.

The switch reauthenticates a client when the host does not respond to an ARP probe on a Layer 2 interface.

The feature applies the downloaded timeout or the locally configured session timeout.

If the terminate action is RADIUS, the feature sends a nonresponsible host (NRH) request to the server. The terminate action is included in the response from the server.

If the terminate action is default, the session is dismantled, and the applied policy is removed.

**Local Web Authentication Banner**

With Web Authentication, you can create a default and customized web-browser banners that appears when you log in to a switch.

The banner appears on both the login page and the authentication-result pop-up pages. The default banner messages are as follows:

- **Authentication Successful**
- **Authentication Failed**
- **Authentication Expired**

The Local Web Authentication Banner can be configured in as follows:

- Legacy mode—Use the `ip admission auth-proxy-banner http` global configuration command.
- New-style mode—Use the `parameter-map type weauth global banner` global configuration command.

The default banner `Cisco Systems` and `Switch host-name Authentication` appear on the Login Page. `Cisco Systems` appears on the authentication result pop-up page.
The banner can be customized as follows:

- Add a message, such as switch, router, or company name to the banner:
  - Legacy mode—Use the `ip admission auth-proxy-banner http banner-text` global configuration command.
  - New-style mode—Use the `parameter-map type webauth global banner` global configuration command.

- Add a logo or text file to the banner:
  - Legacy mode—Use the `ip admission auth-proxy-banner http file-path` global configuration command.
  - New-style mode—Use the `parameter-map type webauth global banner` global configuration command.
If you do not enable a banner, only the username and password dialog boxes appear in the web authentication login screen, and no banner appears when you log into the switch.

Figure 31: Login Screen With No Banner
Web Authentication Customizable Web Pages

During the web-based authentication process, the switch internal HTTP server hosts four HTML pages to deliver to an authenticating client. The server uses these pages to notify you of these four-authentication process states:

- Login—Your credentials are requested.
- Success—The login was successful.
- Fail—The login failed.
- Expire—The login session has expired because of excessive login failures.

Guidelines

- You can substitute your own HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages.
- You can use a logo or specify text in the login, success, failure, and expire web pages.
- On the banner page, you can specify text in the login page.
- The pages are in HTML.
- You must include an HTML redirect command in the success page to access a specific URL.
- The URL string must be a valid URL (for example, http://www.cisco.com). An incomplete URL might cause page not found or similar errors on a web browser.
- If you configure web pages for HTTP authentication, they must include the appropriate HTML commands (for example, to set the page time out, to set a hidden password, or to confirm that the same page is not submitted twice).
- The CLI command to redirect users to a specific URL is not available when the configured login form is enabled. The administrator should ensure that the redirection is configured in the web page.
- If the CLI command redirecting users to specific URL after authentication occurs is entered and then the command configuring web pages is entered, the CLI command redirecting users to a specific URL does not take effect.
- Configured web pages can be copied to the switch boot flash or flash.
- The login page can be on one flash, and the success and failure pages can be another flash (for example, the flash on the active switch or a member switch).
- You must configure all four pages.
- The banner page has no effect if it is configured with the web page.
- All of the logo files (image, flash, audio, video, and so on) that are stored in the system directory (for example, flash, disk0, or disk) and that must be displayed on the login page must use web_auth_<filename> as the file name.
- The configured authentication proxy feature supports both HTTP and SSL.

You can substitute your HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages. You can also specify a URL to which users are redirected after authentication occurs, which replaces the internal Success page.
Figure 32: Customizable Authentication Page

Authentication Proxy Web Page Guidelines

When configuring customized authentication proxy web pages, follow these guidelines:

- To enable the custom web pages feature, specify all four custom HTML files. If you specify fewer than four files, the internal default HTML pages are used.

- The four custom HTML files must be present on the flash memory of the switch. The maximum size of each HTML file is 8 KB.

- Any images on the custom pages must be on an accessible HTTP server. Configure an intercept ACL within the admission rule.

- Any external link from a custom page requires configuration of an intercept ACL within the admission rule.

- To access a valid DNS server, any name resolution required for external links or images requires configuration of an intercept ACL within the admission rule.

- If the custom web pages feature is enabled, a configured auth-proxy-banner is not used.

- If the custom web pages feature is enabled, the redirection URL for successful login feature is not available.

- To remove the specification of a custom file, use the `no` form of the command.

Because the custom login page is a public web form, consider these guidelines for the page:

- The login form must accept user entries for the username and password and must show them as `uname` and `pwd`.

- The custom login page should follow best practices for a web form, such as page timeout, hidden password, and prevention of redundant submissions.
Redirection URL for Successful Login Guidelines

When configuring a redirection URL for successful login, consider these guidelines:

• If the custom authentication proxy web pages feature is enabled, the redirection URL feature is disabled and is not available in the CLI. You can perform redirection in the custom-login success page.

• If the redirection URL feature is enabled, a configured auth-proxy-banner is not used

• To remove the specification of a redirection URL, use the `no` form of the command.

• If the redirection URL is required after the web-based authentication client is successfully authenticated, then the URL string must start with a valid URL (for example, http://) followed by the URL information. If only the URL is given without http://, then the redirection URL on successful authentication might cause page not found or similar errors on a web browser.

Web-based Authentication Interactions with Other Features

Port Security

You can configure web-based authentication and port security on the same port. Web-based authentication authenticates the port, and port security manages network access for all MAC addresses, including that of the client. You can then limit the number or group of clients that can access the network through the port.

LAN Port IP

You can configure LAN port IP (LPIP) and Layer 2 web-based authentication on the same port. The host is authenticated by using web-based authentication first, followed by LPIP posture validation. The LPIP host policy overrides the web-based authentication host policy.

If the web-based authentication idle timer expires, the NAC policy is removed. The host is authenticated, and posture is validated again.

Gateway IP

You cannot configure Gateway IP (GWIP) on a Layer 3 VLAN interface if web-based authentication is configured on any of the switch ports in the VLAN.

You can configure web-based authentication on the same Layer 3 interface as Gateway IP. The host policies for both features are applied in software. The GWIP policy overrides the web-based authentication host policy.

ACLs

If you configure a VLAN ACL or a Cisco IOS ACL on an interface, the ACL is applied to the host traffic only after the web-based authentication host policy is applied.

For Layer 2 web-based authentication, it is more secure, though not required, to configure a port ACL (PACL) as the default access policy for ingress traffic from hosts connected to the port. After authentication, the web-based authentication host policy overrides the PACL. The Policy ACL is applied to the session even if there is no ACL configured on the port.

You cannot configure a MAC ACL and web-based authentication on the same interface.

You cannot configure web-based authentication on a port whose access VLAN is configured for VACL capture.
Context-Based Access Control

Web-based authentication cannot be configured on a Layer 2 port if context-based access control (CBAC) is configured on the Layer 3 VLAN interface of the port VLAN.

EtherChannel

You can configure web-based authentication on a Layer 2 EtherChannel interface. The web-based authentication configuration applies to all member channels.

How to Configure Web-Based Authentication

Default Web-Based Authentication Configuration

The following table shows the default web-based authentication configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• IP address</td>
<td>• None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• UDP authentication port</td>
<td>• None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value of inactivity timeout</td>
<td>3600 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity timeout</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Web-Based Authentication Configuration Guidelines and Restrictions

• Web-based authentication is an ingress-only feature.
• You can configure web-based authentication only on access ports. Web-based authentication is not supported on trunk ports, EtherChannel member ports, or dynamic trunk ports.
• External web authentication, where the switch redirects a client to a particular host or web server for displaying login message, is not supported.
• You cannot authenticate hosts on Layer 2 interfaces with static ARP cache assignment. These hosts are not detected by the web-based authentication feature because they do not send ARP messages.
• By default, the IP device tracking feature is disabled on a switch. You must enable the IP device tracking feature to use web-based authentication.
• You must enable SISF-Based device tracking to use web-based authentication. By default, SISF-Based device tracking is disabled on a switch.
• You must configure at least one IP address to run the switch HTTP server. You must also configure routes to reach each host IP address. The HTTP server sends the HTTP login page to the host.

• Hosts that are more than one hop away might experience traffic disruption if an STP topology change results in the host traffic arriving on a different port. This occurs because the ARP and DHCP updates might not be sent after a Layer 2 (STP) topology change.

• Web-based authentication does not support VLAN assignment as a downloadable-host policy.

• Web-based authentication supports IPv6 in Session-aware policy mode. IPv6 Web-authentication requires at least one IPv6 address configured on the switch and IPv6 Snooping configured on the switchport.

• Web-based authentication and Network Edge Access Topology (NEAT) are mutually exclusive. You cannot use web-based authentication when NEAT is enabled on an interface, and you cannot use NEAT when web-based authentication is running on an interface.

• Identify the following RADIUS security server settings that will be used while configuring switch-to-RADIUS-server communication:
  - Host name
  - Host IP address
  - Host name and specific UDP port numbers
  - IP address and specific UDP port numbers

The combination of the IP address and UDP port number creates a unique identifier, that enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service (for example, authentication) the second host entry that is configured functions as the failover backup to the first one. The RADIUS host entries are chosen in the order that they were configured.

• When you configure the RADIUS server parameters:
  - Specify the key string on a separate command line.
  - For key string, specify the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. The key is a text string that must match the encryption key used on the RADIUS server.
  - When you specify the key string, use spaces within and at the end of the key. If you use spaces in the key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks are part of the key. This key must match the encryption used on the RADIUS daemon.
  - You can globally configure the timeout, retransmission, and encryption key values for all RADIUS servers by using with the radius-server host global configuration command. If you want to configure these options on a per-server basis, use the radius-server timeout, radius-server transmit, and the radius-server key global configuration commands.

You need to configure some settings on the RADIUS server, including: the switch IP address, the key string to be shared by both the server and the switch, and the downloadable ACL (DAACL). For more information, see the RADIUS server documentation.
• For a URL redirect ACL:
  • Packets that match a permit access control entry (ACE) rule are sent to the CPU for forwarding to the AAA server.
  • Packets that match a deny ACE rule are forwarded through the switch.
  • Packets that match neither the permit ACE rule or deny ACE rule are processed by the next dACL, and if there is no dACL, the packets hit the implicit-deny ACL and are dropped.

### Configuring the Authentication Rule and Interfaces

Follow these steps to configure the authentication rule and interfaces:

**Before you begin**

SISF-Based device tracking is a prerequisite to Web Authentication. Ensure that you have enabled device tracking programmatically or manually.

For more information, see *Configuring SISF-Based Tracking*.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | **enable** | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  **Example:**  
  Device> enable |
| Step 2 | **configure terminal** | Enters global configuration mode.  
  **Example:**  
  Device# configure terminal |
| Step 3 | **ip admission name** name proxy http | Configures an authentication rule for web-based authorization.  
  **Example:**  
  Device(config)# ip admission name webauth1 proxy http |
| Step 4 | **interface** type slot/port | Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the ingress Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface to be enabled for web-based authentication.  
  **Example:**  
  Type can be FastEthernet, GigabitEthernet, or TenGigabitEthernet.  
  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1 |
### Configuring AAA Authentication

If a method-list is configured under VTY lines, the corresponding method list must be added to the AAA configuration:

```plaintext
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
Device(config-line)# authorization commands 15 list1
Device(config-line)# exit
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 list1 group tacacs+
```

If a method-list is not configured under VTY lines, you must add the default method list to the AAA configuration:

```plaintext
Device(config)# line vty 0 4
Device(config-line)# exit
Device(config)# aaa authorization commands 15 default group tacacs+
```

Follow these steps to configure AAA authentication:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Configuring Authentication

- **Step 5**
  - `ip access-group name`
  - **Example:**
    ```plaintext
    Device(config-if)# ip access-group webauthag
    ```
  - Applies the default ACL.

- **Step 6**
  - `ip admission name`
  - **Example:**
    ```plaintext
    Device(config)# ip admission name
    ```
  - Configures an authentication rule for web-based authorization for the interface.

- **Step 7**
  - `exit`
  - **Example:**
    ```plaintext
    Device# exit
    ```
  - Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

- **Step 8**
  - `show ip admission`
  - **Example:**
    ```plaintext
    Device# show ip admission
    ```
  - Displays the network admission cache entries and information about web authentication sessions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

**configure terminal**

*Example:*

```
Device# configure terminal
```

**Step 3**

**aaa new-model**

*Example:*

```
Device(config)# aaa new-model
```

**Step 4**

**aaa authentication login default group {tacacs+ | radius}**

*Example:*

```
Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
```

**Step 5**

**aaa authorization auth-proxy default group {tacacs+ | radius}**

*Example:*

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization auth-proxy default group tacacs+
```

**Step 6**

**tacacs server server-name**

*Example:*

```
Device(config)# tacacs server yourserver
```

**Step 7**

**address {ipv4 | ipv6} ip address**

*Example:*

```
Device(config-server-tacacs)# address ipv4 10.0.1.12
```

**Step 8**

**key string**

*Example:*

```
Device(config-server-tacacs)# key
```
### Configuring Switch-to-RADIUS-Server Communication

Follow these steps to configure the RADIUS server parameters:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip radius source-interface vlan <strong>vlan interface number</strong></td>
<td>Specifies that the RADIUS packets have the IP address of the indicated interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip radius source-interface vlan 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> radius server <strong>server name</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# radius server rsim address ipv4 124.2.2.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> address {ipv4</td>
<td>ipv6} <strong>ip address</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.0.1.2 auth-port 1550 acct-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Example:**

*Step 9*

```
Device(config-server-tacacs)# end
```

Exits the TACACS server mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1560</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> key string</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the switch and the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# key rad123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits the RADIUS server mode and enters the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> radius-server vsa send authentication string</td>
<td>Enable downloading of an ACL from the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server vsa send authentication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> radius-server dead-criteria tries num-tries</td>
<td>Specifies the number of unanswered sent messages to a RADIUS server before considering the server to be inactive. The range of num-tries is 1 to 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria tries 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring the HTTP Server

To use web-based authentication, you must enable the HTTP server within the device. You can enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS.

**Note**

The Apple psuedo-browser will not open if you configure only the `ip http secure-server` command. You should also configure the `ip http server` command.

Follow the procedure given below to enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS:
**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip http server</td>
<td>Enables the HTTP server. The web-based authentication feature uses the HTTP server to communicate with the hosts for user authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip http server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip http secure-server</td>
<td>Enables HTTPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>You can configure custom authentication proxy web pages or specify a redirection URL for successful login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip http secure-server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Customizing the Authentication Proxy Web Pages

You can configure web authentication to display four substitute HTML pages to the user in place of the default HTML pages during web-based authentication.

Follow these steps to specify the use of your custom authentication proxy web pages:

**Before you begin**

Store your custom HTML files on the device flash memory.
### Customizing the Authentication Proxy Web Pages

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the location in the device memory file system of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login page. The device: is flash memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip admission proxy http login page file disk1:login.htm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the location of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login success page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip admission proxy http success page file disk1:success.htm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the location of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login failure page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip admission proxy http fail page file disk1:fail.htm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the location of the custom HTML file to use in place of the default login expired page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# ip admission proxy http login expired page file disk1:expired.htm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifying a Redirection URL for a Successful Login

Follow these steps to specify a URL to which the user is redirected after authentication, effectively replacing the internal Success HTML page:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ip admission proxy http success redirect url-string</code></td>
<td>Specifies a URL for redirection of the user in place of the default login success page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# ip admission proxy http success redirect www.example.com</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Web-Based Authentication Parameters

Follow these steps to configure the maximum number of failed login attempts before the client is placed in a watch list for a waiting period:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring a Web-Based Authentication Local Banner

Follow these steps to configure a local banner on a switch that has web authentication configured.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip admission auth-proxy-banner http [banner-text</td>
<td>Enables the local banner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[file-path]</td>
<td>(Optional) Create a custom banner by entering C banner-text C (where C is a delimiting character), or file-path that indicates a file (for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Removing Web-Based Authentication Cache Entries

Follow these steps to remove web-based authentication cache entries:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
| enable
| Example:
| Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.
  | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
| clear ip auth-proxy cache { * | host ip address } |
| Example:
| Device# clear ip auth-proxy cache 192.168.4.5 | Delete authentication proxy entries. Use an asterisk to delete all cache entries. Enter a specific IP address to delete the entry for a single host. |
| **Step 3**
| clear ip admission cache { * | host ip address } |
| Example:
| # clear ip admission cache 192.168.4.5 | Delete authentication proxy entries. Use an asterisk to delete all cache entries. Enter a specific IP address to delete the entry for a single host. |

Verifying Web-Based Authentication

Use the commands in this topic to display the web-based authentication settings for all interfaces or for specific ports.

**Table 32: Privileged EXEC show Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show authentication sessions method webauth</td>
<td>Displays the web-based authentication settings for all interfaces for fastethernet, gigabitethernet, or tengigabitethernet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show authentication sessions interface type slot/port[details]</code></td>
<td>Displays the web-based authentication settings for the specified interface for fastethernet, gigabitethernet, or tengigabitethernet. In Session Aware Networking mode, use the <code>show access-session interface</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Feature History for Web-Based Authentication**

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Web-Based Authentication</td>
<td>The Web-Based Authentication feature authenticates end users on host systems that do not run the IEEE 802.1x supplicant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Configuring Port-Based Traffic Control

- Port-Based Traffic Control, on page 549

Port-Based Traffic Control

Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco devices used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions. The following port-based traffic control features are supported:

- Storm Control
- Protected Ports
- Port Blocking

Information About Port-Based Traffic Control

Storm Control

Storm control prevents traffic on a LAN from being disrupted by a broadcast, multicast, or unicast storm on one of the physical interfaces. A LAN storm occurs when packets flood the LAN, creating excessive traffic and degrading network performance. Errors in the protocol-stack implementation, mistakes in network configurations, or users issuing a denial-of-service attack can cause a storm.

Storm control (or traffic suppression) monitors packets passing from an interface to the switching bus and determines if the packet is unicast, multicast, or broadcast. The switch counts the number of packets of a specified type received within the 1-second time interval and compares the measurement with a predefined suppression-level threshold.

With the hardware rate limiter feature of the Storm Control Policer, all broadcast, multicast, and unicast packets with less than 1000 packets per second are blocked. This behavior is due to a hardware limitation on ASIC-based platforms. On these platforms, storm control will work with 1K and above packets per second, and 8K and above bits per second.

Measured Traffic Activity

Storm control uses one of these methods to measure traffic activity:
• Bandwidth as a percentage of the total available bandwidth of the port that can be used by the broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic
• Traffic rate in packets per second at which broadcast, multicast, or unicast packets are received
• Traffic rate in bits per second at which broadcast, multicast, or unicast packets are received

With each method, the port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The port remains blocked until the traffic rate drops below the falling threshold (if one is specified) and then resumes normal forwarding. If the falling suppression level is not specified, the device blocks all traffic until the traffic rate drops below the rising suppression level. In general, the higher the level, the less effective the protection against broadcast storms.

Storm control for unicast is a combination of known unicast and unknown unicast traffic. When storm control for unicast is configured, and it exceeds the configured value, the storm will hit each type of traffic through the hardware policer. The following example describes how the unicast traffic is filtered, when the configured storm is 10%:

• Incoming traffic is unknown unicast 8% + known unicast 7%. Total of 15% storm is not filtered in hardware by the hardware policer.
• Incoming traffic is unknown unicast 11% + known unicast 7%. Total of 18% storm will hit unknown unicast traffic type, and the hardware policer will filter unknown traffic that exceeds 11%.
• Incoming traffic is unknown unicast 11% + known unicast 11%. Total of 22% storm will hit unknown unicast traffic and known unicast traffic, and the hardware policer will filter both unknown and unknown unicast traffic.

Traffic Patterns

Broadcast traffic being forwarded exceeded the configured threshold between time intervals T1 and T2 and between T4 and T5. When the amount of specified traffic exceeds the threshold, all traffic of that kind is dropped for the next time period. Therefore, broadcast traffic is blocked during the intervals following T2 and T5. At the next time interval (for example, T3), if broadcast traffic does not exceed the threshold, it is again forwarded.

The combination of the storm-control suppression level and the 1-second time interval controls the way the storm control algorithm works. A higher threshold allows more packets to pass through. A threshold value of 100 percent means that no limit is placed on the traffic. A value of 0.0 means that all broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic on that port is blocked.

### Note

Because packets do not arrive at uniform intervals, the 1-second time interval during which traffic activity is measured can affect the behavior of storm control.

You use the `storm-control` interface configuration commands to set the threshold value for each traffic type.

### Storm Control Using a Hardware Rate Limiter

Traffic storm control monitors incoming traffic levels over a configured interval. However, the reaction time taken by storm control is slightly slower as it is based on statistics counters to identify a storm. With the hardware rate limiter, the action is taken at the ASIC level, and as a result, the storm control action starts immediately; as soon as the traffic rate reaches the set threshold level. The hardware rate limiter implements policers for broadcast, multicast, unicast, and unknown unicast traffic.
Protected Ports

Some applications require that no traffic be forwarded at Layer 2 between ports on the same device so that one neighbor does not see the traffic generated by another neighbor. In such an environment, the use of protected ports ensures that there is no exchange of unicast, broadcast, or multicast traffic between these ports on the device.

Protected ports have these features:

- A protected port does not forward any traffic (unicast, multicast, or broadcast) to any other port that is also a protected port. Data traffic cannot be forwarded between protected ports at Layer 2; only control traffic, such as PIM packets, is forwarded because these packets are processed by the CPU and forwarded in software. All data traffic passing between protected ports must be forwarded through a Layer 3 device.

- Forwarding behavior between a protected port and a nonprotected port proceeds as usual.

Protected Ports Guidelines

You can configure protected ports on a physical interface (for example, Gigabit Ethernet port 1) or an EtherChannel group (for example, port-channel 5). When you enable protected ports for a port channel, it is enabled for all ports in the port-channel group.

By default no protected ports are defined.

Port Blocking

By default, the device floods packets with unknown destination MAC addresses out of all ports. If unknown unicast and multicast traffic is forwarded to a protected port, there could be security issues. To prevent unknown unicast or multicast traffic from being forwarded from one port to another, you can block a port (protected or nonprotected) from flooding unknown unicast or multicast packets to other ports.

Note

With multicast traffic, the port blocking feature blocks only pure Layer 2 packets. Multicast packets that contain IPv4 or IPv6 information in the header are not blocked.

How to Configure Port-Based Traffic Control

Configuring Storm Control and Threshold Levels

You configure storm control on a port and enter the threshold level that you want to be used for a particular type of traffic.

However, because of hardware limitations and the way in which packets of different sizes are counted, threshold percentages are approximations. Depending on the sizes of the packets making up the incoming traffic, the actual enforced threshold might differ from the configured level by several percentage points.

Note

Storm control is supported on physical interfaces. You can also configure storm control on an EtherChannel. When storm control is configured on an EtherChannel, the storm control settings propagate to the EtherChannel physical interfaces.
Follow these steps to storm control and threshold levels:

**Before you begin**

Storm control is supported on physical interfaces. You can also configure storm control on an EtherChannel. When storm control is configured on an EtherChannel, the storm control settings propagate to the EtherChannel physical interfaces.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>storm-control {broadcast</td>
<td>multicast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• For level, specifies the rising threshold level for broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic as a percentage (up to two decimal places) of the bandwidth. The port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The range is 0.00 to 100.00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) For level-low, specifies the falling threshold level as a percentage (up to two decimal places) of the bandwidth. This value must be less than or equal to the rising suppression value. The port forwards traffic when traffic drops below this level. If you do not configure a falling suppression level, it is set to the rising suppression level. The range is 0.00 to 100.00.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|      | Device(config-if)# storm-control unicast level 87 65 | If you set the threshold to the maximum value (100 percent), no limit is placed on the traffic. If you set the threshold to 0.0,
### Configuring Storm Control and Threshold Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>all</strong> broadcast, multicast, and unicast traffic on that port is blocked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• For <strong>bps</strong> bps, specifies the rising threshold level for broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic in bits per second (up to one decimal place). The port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The range is 0.0 to 10000000000.0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) For <strong>bps-low</strong>, specifies the falling threshold level in bits per second (up to one decimal place). It can be less than or equal to the rising threshold level. The port forwards traffic when traffic drops below this level. The range is 0.0 to 10000000000.0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• For <strong>pps</strong> pps, specifies the rising threshold level for broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic in packets per second (up to one decimal place). The port blocks traffic when the rising threshold is reached. The range is 0.0 to 10000000000.0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Optional) For <strong>pps-low</strong>, specifies the falling threshold level in packets per second (up to one decimal place). It can be less than or equal to the rising threshold level. The port forwards traffic when traffic drops below this level. The range is <strong>0.0 to 10000000000.0</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For BPS and PPS settings, you can use metric suffixes such as k, m, and g for large number thresholds.

### Step 5

**storm-control action** {**shutdown** | **trap**}

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# storm-control action
trap
```

Specifies the action to be taken when a storm is detected. The default is to filter out the traffic and not to send traps.

- Select the **shutdown** keyword to error-disable the port during a storm.
- Select the **trap** keyword to generate an SNMP trap when a storm is detected.

### Step 6

**end**

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# end
```

Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Verifies the storm control suppression levels set on the interface for the specified traffic type. If you do not enter a traffic type, details for all traffic types (broadcast, multicast and unicast) are displayed.

### Configuring a Protected Port

**Before you begin**

Protected ports are not pre-defined. This is the task to configure one.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport protected</td>
<td>Configures the interface to be a protected port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport protected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Protected Ports

Table 33: Commands for Displaying Protected Port Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show interfaces [interface-id] switchport</code></td>
<td>Displays the administrative and operational status of all switching (nonrouting) ports or the specified port, including port blocking and port protection settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Blocking Flooded Traffic on an Interface

Before you begin

The interface can be a physical interface or an EtherChannel group. When you block multicast or unicast traffic for a port channel, it is blocked on all ports in the port-channel group.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switchport block multicast</td>
<td>Blocks unknown multicast forwarding out of the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport block multicast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport block unicast</td>
<td>Blocks unknown unicast forwarding out of the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport block unicast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose
Command or Action | Purpose
---|---
**Step 6**
end | Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:
Device(config-if)# end

---

Monitoring Port Blocking

**Table 34: Commands for Displaying Port Blocking Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show interfaces [interface-id] switchport</code></td>
<td>Displays the administrative and operational status of all switching (nonrouting) ports or the specified port, including port blocking and port protection settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Additional References for Port-Based Traffic Control

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port Security</td>
<td>Port Security chapter in the <em>Security Configuration Guide</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Technical Assistance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Feature History for Port-Based Traffic Control

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.
Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco Catalyst switches used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions.

With the hardware rate limiter, the storm control action is taken at the ASIC level, and as a result, the action starts immediately; as soon as the traffic rate reaches the set threshold level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Port-Based Traffic Control</td>
<td>Port-based traffic control is a set of Layer 2 features on the Cisco Catalyst switches used to filter or block packets at the port level in response to specific traffic conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Storm Control with a Hardware Rate Limiter</td>
<td>With the hardware rate limiter, the storm control action is taken at the ASIC level, and as a result, the action starts immediately; as soon as the traffic rate reaches the set threshold level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Port Security

Prerequisites for Port Security

If you try to set the maximum value to a number less than the number of secure addresses already configured on an interface, the command is rejected.

Restrictions for Port Security

- The maximum number of secure MAC addresses that you can configure on a switch is set by the maximum number of available MAC addresses allowed in the system. This number is the total of available MAC addresses, including those used for other Layer 2 functions and any other secure MAC addresses configured on interfaces.
- Port Security is not supported on EtherChannel interfaces.

Information About Port Security

Port Security

You can use the port security feature to restrict input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port. When you assign secure MAC addresses to a secure port, the port does not forward packets with source addresses outside the group of defined addresses. If you limit the number of secure MAC addresses to one and assign a single secure MAC address, the workstation attached to that port is assured the full bandwidth of the port.
If a port is configured as a secure port and the maximum number of secure MAC addresses is reached, when the MAC address of a station attempting to access the port is different from any of the identified secure MAC addresses, a security violation occurs. Also, if a station with a secure MAC address configured or learned on one secure port attempts to access another secure port, a violation is flagged.

**Types of Secure MAC Addresses**

The switch supports these types of secure MAC addresses:

- **Static secure MAC addresses**—These are manually configured by using the `switchport port-security mac-address mac-address` interface configuration command, stored in the address table, and added to the switch running configuration.

- **Dynamic secure MAC addresses**—These are dynamically configured, stored only in the address table, and removed when the switch restarts.

- **Sticky secure MAC addresses**—These can be dynamically learned or manually configured, stored in the address table, and added to the running configuration. If these addresses are saved in the configuration file, when the switch restarts, the interface does not need to dynamically reconfigure them.

**Default MAC Address Table Settings**

The following table shows the default settings for the MAC address table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aging time</td>
<td>300 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic addresses</td>
<td>Automatically learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static addresses</td>
<td>None configured</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MAC Address Table Creation**

With multiple MAC addresses supported on all ports, you can connect any port on the device to other network devices. The device provides dynamic addressing by learning the source address of packets it receives on each port and adding the address and its associated port number to the address table. As devices are added or removed from the network, the device updates the address table, adding new dynamic addresses and aging out those that are not in use.

The aging interval is globally configured. However, the device maintains an address table for each VLAN, and STP can accelerate the aging interval on a per-VLAN basis.

The device sends packets between any combination of ports, based on the destination address of the received packet. Using the MAC address table, the device forwards the packet only to the port associated with the destination address. If the destination address is on the port that sent the packet, the packet is filtered and not forwarded. The device always uses the store-and-forward method: complete packets are stored and checked for errors before transmission.
Sticky Secure MAC Addresses

You can configure an interface to convert the dynamic MAC addresses to sticky secure MAC addresses and to add them to the running configuration by enabling sticky learning. The interface converts all the dynamic secure MAC addresses, including those that were dynamically learned before sticky learning was enabled, to sticky secure MAC addresses. All sticky secure MAC addresses are added to the running configuration.

The sticky secure MAC addresses do not automatically become part of the configuration file, which is the startup configuration used each time the switch restarts. If you save the sticky secure MAC addresses in the configuration file, when the switch restarts, the interface does not need to relearn these addresses. If you do not save the sticky secure addresses, they are lost.

If sticky learning is disabled, the sticky secure MAC addresses are converted to dynamic secure addresses and are removed from the running configuration.

Security Violations

It is a security violation when one of these situations occurs:

- The maximum number of secure MAC addresses have been added to the address table, and a station whose MAC address is not in the address table attempts to access the interface.
- An address learned or configured on one secure interface is seen on another secure interface in the same VLAN.
- Running diagnostic tests with port security enabled.

You can configure the interface for one of three violation modes, based on the action to be taken if a violation occurs:

- protect—when the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. You are not notified that a security violation has occurred.

  Note

  We do not recommend configuring the protect violation mode on a trunk port. The protect mode disables learning when any VLAN reaches its maximum limit, even if the port has not reached its maximum limit.

- restrict—when the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. In this mode, you are notified that a security violation has occurred. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.

- shutdown—a port security violation causes the interface to become error-disabled and to shut down immediately, and the port LED turns off. When a secure port is in the error-disabled state, you can bring it out of this state by entering the errdisable recovery cause psecure-violation global configuration command, or you can manually re-enable it by entering the shutdown and no shut down interface configuration commands. This is the default mode.
• shutdown vlan—Use to set the security violation mode per-VLAN. In this mode, the VLAN is error disabled instead of the entire port when a violation occurs.

This table shows the violation mode and the actions taken when you configure an interface for port security.

### Table 36: Security Violation Mode Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Violation Mode</th>
<th>Traffic is forwarded</th>
<th>Sends SNMP trap</th>
<th>Sends syslog message</th>
<th>Displays error message</th>
<th>Violation counter increments</th>
<th>Shuts down port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>protect</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restrict</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown vlan</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 Packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses.
10 The switch returns an error message if you manually configure an address that would cause a security violation.
11 Shuts down only the VLAN on which the violation occurred.

### Port Security Aging

You can use port security aging to set the aging time for all secure addresses on a port. Two types of aging are supported per port:

- **Absolute**—The secure addresses on the port are deleted after the specified aging time.
- **Inactivity**—The secure addresses on the port are deleted only if the secure addresses are inactive for the specified aging time.

### Default Port Security Configuration

### Table 37: Default Port Security Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port security</td>
<td>Disabled on a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sticky address learning</td>
<td>Disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of secure MAC addresses per port</td>
<td>One address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Violation mode</td>
<td>Shutdown. The port shuts down when the maximum number of secure MAC addresses is exceeded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Port Security Configuration Guidelines

- Port security can only be configured on static access ports or trunk ports. A secure port cannot be a dynamic access port.
- A secure port cannot be a destination port for Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN).
- Voice VLAN is only supported on access ports and not on trunk ports, even though the configuration is allowed.
- When you enable port security on an interface that is also configured with a voice VLAN, set the maximum allowed secure addresses on the port to two. When the port is connected to a Cisco IP phone, the IP phone requires one MAC address. The Cisco IP phone address is learned on the voice VLAN, but is not learned on the access VLAN. If you connect a single PC to the Cisco IP phone, no additional MAC addresses are required. If you connect more than one PC to the Cisco IP phone, you must configure enough secure addresses to allow one for each PC and one for the phone.
- When a trunk port configured with port security and assigned to an access VLAN for data traffic and to a voice VLAN for voice traffic, entering the `switchport voice` and `switchport priority extend` interface configuration commands has no effect.
- When a connected device uses the same MAC address to request an IP address for the access VLAN and then an IP address for the voice VLAN, only the access VLAN is assigned an IP address.
- When you enter a maximum secure address value for an interface, and the new value is greater than the previous value, the new value overwrites the previously configured value. If the new value is less than the previous value and the number of configured secure addresses on the interface exceeds the new value, the command is rejected.
- The switch does not support port security aging of sticky secure MAC addresses.

This table summarizes port security compatibility with other port-based features.

**Table 38: Port Security Compatibility with Other Switch Features**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Port or Feature on Port</th>
<th>Compatible with Port Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTP port 12, port 13</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic-access port 14</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routed port</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAN source port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of Port or Feature on Port</td>
<td>Compatible with Port Security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAN destination port</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtherChannel</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunneling port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE 802.1x port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice VLAN port 15</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP source guard</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flex Links</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 DTP = Dynamic Trunking Protocol
13 A port configured with the `switchport mode dynamic` interface configuration command.
14 A VLAN Query Protocol (VQP) port configured with the `switchport access vlan dynamic` interface configuration command.
15 You must set the maximum allowed secure addresses on the port to two plus the maximum number of secure addresses allowed on the access VLAN.

## How to Configure Port Security

### Enabling and Configuring Port Security

#### Before you begin

This task restricts input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface interface-id</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Sets the interface switchport mode as access or trunk; an interface in the default mode (dynamic auto) cannot be configured as a secure port.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switchport mode {access</td>
<td>trunk}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport mode access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>** Enables voice VLAN on a port.**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switchport voice vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>vlan-id—Specifies the VLAN to be used for voice traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>** Enables port security on the interface.**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switchport port-security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# switchport port-security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td><strong>(Optional) Sets the maximum number of secure MAC addresses for the interface.</strong> The maximum number of secure MAC addresses that you can configure on a switch or switch stack is set by the maximum number of available MAC addresses allowed in the system. This number is the total of available MAC addresses, including those used for other Layer 2 functions and any other secure MAC addresses configured on interfaces.** (Optional) vlan—sets a per-VLAN maximum value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switchport port-security [maximum value [vlan [vlan-list</td>
<td>{access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 20</td>
<td>• vlan-list—On a trunk port, you can set a per-VLAN maximum value on a range of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VLANs separated by a hyphen or a series of VLANs separated by commas. For nonspecified VLANs, the per-VLAN maximum value is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Step 8

`switchport port-security violation {protect | restrict | shutdown | shutdown vlan}`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security violation restrict
```

(Optional) Sets the violation mode, the action to be taken when a security violation is detected, as one of these:

- **protect** — When the number of port secure MAC addresses reaches the maximum limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses to drop below the maximum value or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. You are not notified that a security violation has occurred.

**Note** We do not recommend configuring the protect mode on a trunk port. The protect mode disables learning when any VLAN reaches its maximum limit, even if the port has not reached its maximum limit.

- **restrict** — When the number of secure MAC addresses reaches the limit allowed on the port, packets with unknown source addresses are dropped until you remove a sufficient number of secure MAC addresses or increase the number of maximum allowable addresses. An SNMP
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• shutdown — The interface is error-disabled when a violation occurs, and the port LED turns off. An SNMP trap is sent, a syslog message is logged, and the violation counter increments.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• shutdown vlan — Use to set the security violation mode per VLAN. In this mode, the VLAN is error disabled instead of the entire port when a violation occurs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

When a secure port is in the error-disabled state, you can bring it out of this state by entering the `errdisable recovery cause psecure-violation` global configuration command. You can manually re-enable it by entering the `shutdown` and `no shutdown` interface configuration commands or by using the `clear errdisable interface vlan` privileged EXEC command.

### Step 9

```
switchport port-security [mac-address mac-address [vlan {vlan-id | {access | voice} {}}]
Example:
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 00:A0:C7:12:C9:25 vlan 3 voice
```

(Optional) Enters a secure MAC address for the interface. You can use this command to enter the maximum number of secure MAC addresses. If you configure fewer secure MAC addresses than the maximum, the remaining MAC addresses are dynamically learned.

**Note**

If you enable sticky learning after you enter this command, the secure addresses that were dynamically learned are converted to sticky secure MAC addresses and are added to the running configuration.

(Optional) `vlan`—sets a per-VLAN maximum value.

Enter one of these options after you enter the `vlan` keyword:

• `vlan-id` — On a trunk port, you can specify the VLAN ID and the MAC address. If
### Purpose

- **Command or Action**
- **Purpose**

  - You do not specify a VLAN ID, the native VLAN is used.
  - **access**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN.
  - **voice**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as a voice VLAN.

**Note**
The `voice` keyword is available only if a voice VLAN is configured on a port and if that port is not the access VLAN. If an interface is configured for voice VLAN, configure a maximum of two secure MAC addresses.

#### Step 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>switchport port-security mac-address sticky</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```plaintext
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky
```

(Optional) Enables sticky learning on the interface.

#### Step 11

| switchport port-security mac-address sticky [mac-address | **vlan** {vlan-id | {access | voice}]} |
|-------------------------------------------|
| **Example:** |

```plaintext
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 00:A0:C7:12:C9:25 vlan voice
```

(Optional) Enters a sticky secure MAC address, repeating the command as many times as necessary. If you configure fewer secure MAC addresses than the maximum, the remaining MAC addresses are dynamically learned, are converted to sticky secure MAC addresses, and are added to the running configuration.

**Note**
If you do not enable sticky learning before this command is entered, an error message appears, and you cannot enter a sticky secure MAC address.

(Optional) `vlan`—sets a per-VLAN maximum value.

Enter one of these options after you enter the `vlan` keyword:

- **vlan-id**—On a trunk port, you can specify the VLAN ID and the MAC address. If you do not specify a VLAN ID, the native VLAN is used.
- **access**—On an access port, specifies the VLAN as an access VLAN.
### Enabling and Configuring Port Security Aging

Use this feature to remove and add devices on a secure port without manually deleting the existing secure MAC addresses and to still limit the number of secure addresses on a port. You can enable or disable the aging of secure addresses on a per-port basis.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Step 2 | configure terminal         | Enters global configuration mode. |
|        | Example:                   |         |
|        | Device# configure terminal |         |

| Step 3 | interface interface-id    | Specifies the interface to be configured, and enter interface configuration mode. |
|        | Example:                   |         |
|        | Device(config)# interface  |         |
|        | gigabitethernet1/0/1       |         |

| Step 4 | switchport port-security aging {static | time | type {absolute | inactivity}} | Enables or disable static aging for the secure port, or set the aging time or type. |
|        | Example:                   |         |

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 12</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 12</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 13</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 13</td>
<td>show port-security</td>
<td>Displays information about the port-security settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show port-security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Changing the Address Aging Time

Follow these steps to configure the dynamic address table aging time:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example:

```
Device> enable
```
Purpose
Command or Action | Purpose
---|---
Step 2 | **configure terminal**
Example:  
Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.

Step 3 | **mac address-table aging-time [0 | 10-1000000] [routed-mac | vlan vlan-id]**
Example:  
Device(config)# mac address-table aging-time 500 vlan 2 | Sets the length of time that a dynamic entry remains in the MAC address table after the entry is used or updated. The range is 10 to 1000000 seconds. The default is 300. You can also enter 0, which disables aging. Static address entries are never aged or removed from the table.

vlan-id—Valid IDs are 1 to 4094.

Step 4 | **end**
Example:  
Device(config)# end | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

---

**Monitoring Port Security**

This table displays port security information.

*Table 39: Commands for Displaying Port Security Status and Configuration*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>show port-security [interface interface-id]</strong></td>
<td>Displays port security settings for the device or for the specified interface, including the maximum allowed number of secure MAC addresses for each interface, the number of secure MAC addresses on the interface, the number of security violations that have occurred, and the violation mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>show port-security [interface interface-id] address</strong></td>
<td>Displays all secure MAC addresses configured on all device interfaces or on a specified interface with aging information for each address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>show port-security interface interface-id vlan</strong></td>
<td>Displays the number of secure MAC addresses configured per VLAN on the specified interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Configuration Examples for Port Security**

This example shows how to enable port security on a port and to set the maximum number of secure addresses to 50. The violation mode is the default, no static secure MAC addresses are configured, and sticky learning is enabled.
This example shows how to configure a static secure MAC address on VLAN 3 on a port:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 50
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky
Device(config-if)# end

This example shows how to enable sticky port security on a port, to manually configure MAC addresses for data VLAN and voice VLAN, and to set the total maximum number of secure addresses to 20 (10 for data VLAN and 10 for voice VLAN).

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0200.0004 vlan 3
Device(config-if)# end

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface tengigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 21
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport voice vlan 22
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 20
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 0000.0000.0002
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0000.0003
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address sticky 0000.0000.0001 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 0000.0000.0004 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 10 vlan access
Device(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 10 vlan voice
Device(config-if)# end

Feature History for Port Security

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Port Security</td>
<td>The Port Security feature restricts input to an interface by limiting and identifying MAC addresses of the stations allowed to access the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Port Security MAC Aging</td>
<td>When devices are added or removed from a network, the device updates the address table, adding new dynamic addresses and aging out those that are not in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
Configuring Control Plane Policing

Restrictions for CoPP

Restrictions for control plane policing (CoPP) include the following:

- Only ingress CoPP is supported. The `system-cpp-policy` policy-map is available on the control plane interface, and only in the ingress direction.

- Only the `system-cpp-policy` policy-map can be installed on the control plane interface.

- The `system-cpp-policy` policy-map and the system-defined classes cannot be modified or deleted.

- Only the `police` action is allowed under the `system-cpp-policy` policy-map. The police rate for system-defined classes must be configured only in packets per second (pps).

- One or more CPU queues are part of each class-map. Where multiple CPU queues belong to one class-map, changing the policer rate of a class-map affects all CPU queues that belong to that class-map. Similarly, disabling the policer in a class-map disables all queues that belong to that class-map. See Table: System-Defined Values for CoPP for information about which CPU queues belong to each class-map.

- We recommend not disabling the policer for a system-defined class map, that is, do not configure `no police rate rate pps` command. Doing so affects the overall system health in case of high traffic towards the CPU. Further, even if you disable the policer rate for a system-defined class map, the systems automatically reverts to the default policer rate after system bootup in order to protect the system bring-up process.

- The `show run` command does not display information about classes configured under `system-cpp policy`, when they are left at default values. Use the `show policy-map system-cpp-policy` or the `show policy-map control-plane` commands instead.

You can continue use the `show run` command to display information about custom policies.
Information About CoPP

This chapter describes how control plane policing (CoPP) works on your device and how to configure it.

CoPP Overview

The CoPP feature improves security on your device by protecting the CPU from unnecessary traffic and denial of service (DoS) attacks. It can also protect control traffic and management traffic from traffic drops caused by high volumes of other, lower priority traffic.

Your device is typically segmented into three planes of operation, each with its own objective:

- The data plane, to forward data packets.
- The control plane, to route data correctly.
- The management plane, to manage network elements.

You can use CoPP to protect most of the CPU-bound traffic and ensure routing stability, reachability, and packet delivery. Most importantly, you can use CoPP to protect the CPU from a DoS attack.

CoPP uses the modular QoS command-line interface (MQC) and CPU queues to achieve these objectives. Different types of control plane traffic are grouped together based on certain criteria, and assigned to a CPU queue. You can manage these CPU queues by configuring dedicated policers in hardware. For example, you can modify the policer rate for certain CPU queues (traffic-type), or you can disable the policer for a certain type of traffic.

Although the policers are configured in hardware, CoPP does not affect CPU performance or the performance of the data plane. But since it limits the number of packets going to CPU, the CPU load is controlled. This means that services waiting for packets from hardware may see a more controlled rate of incoming packets (the rate being user-configurable).

System-Defined Aspects of CoPP

When you power-up the device for the first time, the system automatically performs the following tasks:

- Looks for policy-map system-cpp-policy. If not found, the system creates and installs it on the control-plane.
- Creates eighteen class-maps under system-cpp-policy.

The next time you power-up the device, the system detects the policy and class maps that have already been created.
• Enables all CPU queues by default, with their respective default rate. The default rates are indicated in the table System-Defined Values for CoPP.

The `system-cpp-policy` policy map is a system-default policy map, and normally, you do not have to expressly save it to the startup configuration of the device. But, a failed bulk synchronization with a standby device can result in the configuration being erased from the startup configuration. In case this happens, you have to manually save the `system-cpp-policy` policy map to the startup configuration. Use the `show running-config` privileged EXEC command to verify that it has been saved:

```
policy-map system-cpp-policy
```

The following table lists the class-maps that the system creates when you load the device. It lists the policer that corresponds to each class-map and one or more CPU queues that are grouped under each class-map. There is a one-to-one mapping of class-maps to policers; and one or more CPU queues map to a class-map.

### Table 40: System-Defined Values for CoPP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Maps Names</th>
<th>Policer Index (Policer No.)</th>
<th>CPU queues (Queue No.)</th>
<th>Default Policer Rate (pps)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-data</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_DATA(0)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_ICMP_GEN(3)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_BROADCAST(12)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_ICMP_REDIRECT(6)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-l2-control</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_L2_CONTROL(1)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_L2_CONTROL(1)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-routing-control</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_ROUTING_CONTROL(4)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_ROUTING_CONTROL(4)</td>
<td>5400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_LOW_LATENCY(27)</td>
<td>5400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-punt-webauth</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_PUNT_WEBAUTH(7)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_PUNT_WEBAUTH(22)</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-topology-control</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_TOPOLOGY_CONTROL(15)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_TOPOLOGY_CONTROL(15)</td>
<td>13000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-multicast</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_MULTICAST(6)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_TRANSIT_TRAFFIC(18)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_MCAST_DATA(30)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-sys-data</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_SYS_DATA(10)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_OPENFLOW(13)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_CRYPTO_CONTROL(23)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_EXCEPTION(24)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_EGR_EXCEPTION(28)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_NFL_SAMPLED_DATA(26)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_GOLD_PKT(31)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_RPF_FAILED(19)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_DOT1X(11)</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_DOT1X_AUTH(0)</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping</code></td>
<td>WK_CPP_POLICE_PR</td>
<td>WK_CPU_Q_PROTO_SNOOPING(16)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## User-Configurable Aspects of CoPP

You can perform these tasks to manage control plane traffic:

### Note

All `system-cpp-policy` configurations must be saved so they are retained after reboot.

### Enable or Disable a Policier for CPU Queues

Enable a policier for a CPU queue, by configuring a policier action (in packets per second) under the corresponding class-map, within the `system-cpp-policy` policy-map.

Disable a policier for CPU queue, by removing the policier action under the corresponding class-map, within the `system-cpp-policy` policy-map.
If a default policer is already present, carefully consider and control its removal; otherwise the system may see a CPU hog or other anomalies, such as control packet drops.

**Note**

**Change the Policer Rate**

You can do this by configuring a policer rate action (in packets per second), under the corresponding class-map, within the `system-cpp-policy` policy-map.

**Set Policer Rates to Default**

Set the policer for CPU queues to their default values, by entering the `cpp system-default` command in global configuration mode.

### Upgrading or Downgrading the Software Version

**Software Version Upgrades and CoPP**

When you upgrade the software version on your device, the system checks and make the necessary updates as required for CoPP (For instance, it checks for the `system-cpp-policy` policy map and creates it if missing). You may also have to complete certain tasks before or after the upgrade activity. This is to ensure that any configuration updates are reflected correctly and CoPP continues to work as expected. Depending on the method you use to upgrade the software, upgrade-related tasks may be optional or recommended in some scenarios, and mandatory in others.

The system actions and user actions for an upgrade, are described here. Also included, are any release-specific caveats.

**System Actions for an Upgrade**

When you upgrade the software version on your device, the system performs these actions. This applies to all upgrade methods:

- If the device did not have a `system-cpp-policy` policy map before upgrade, then on upgrade, the system creates a default policy map.
- If the device had a `system-cpp-policy` policy map before upgrade, then on upgrade, the system does not re-generate the policy.

**User Actions for an Upgrade**

User actions for an upgrade – depending on upgrade method:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Upgrade Method</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Action Time and Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regular[^16]</td>
<td>None</td>
<td><strong>After upgrade (required)</strong></td>
<td>To get the latest, default policer rates.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[^16]: Enter the `cpp system-default` command in global configuration mode
### Software Version Downgrades and CoPP

The system actions and user actions for a downgrade, are described here.

#### System Actions for a Downgrade

When you downgrade the software version on your device, the system performs these actions. This applies to all downgrade methods:

- The system retains the `system-cpp-policy` policy map on the device, and installs it on the control plane.

#### User Actions for a Downgrade

User actions for a downgrade:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Upgrade Method</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Action Time and Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regular&lt;sup&gt;18&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No action required</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-Service Software Upgrade (ISSU)&lt;sup&gt;19&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No action required</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>18</sup> Refers to a software upgrade method that involves a reload of the switch. Can be install or bundle mode.

<sup>19</sup> ISSU downgrades are not supported.

If you downgrade the software version and then upgrade, the system action and user actions that apply are the same as those mentioned for upgrades.
## How to Configure CoPP

### Enabling a CPU Queue or Changing the Policer Rate

The procedure to enable a CPU queue and change the policer rate of a CPU queue is the same. Follow these steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**
Device> enable |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**
Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** | policy-map *policy-map-name* | Enters the policy map configuration mode.  
**Example:**
Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy |
| **Step 4** | class *class-name* | Enters the class action configuration mode. Enter the name of the class that corresponds to the CPU queue you want to enable. See table *System-Defined Values for CoPP*.  
**Example:**
Device(config-pmap)# class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping |
| **Step 5** | police rate *rate* pps | Specifies an upper limit on the number of incoming packets processed per second, for the specified traffic class.  
**Example:**
Device(config-pmap-c)# police rate 100 pps |
| **Step 6** | exit | Returns to the global configuration mode.  
**Example:**
Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exit |

Note: The rate you specify is applied to all CPU queues that belong to the class-map you have specified.
### Disabling a CPU Queue

Follow these steps to disable a CPU queue:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>policy-map policy-map-name</code></td>
<td>Enters the policy map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>policy-map</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Purpose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-pmap)# exit Device(config)#</code></td>
<td>Enters the control plane (config-cp) configuration mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td><code>control-plane</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# control-plane Device(config-cp)#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td><code>service-policy input policy-name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# control-plane Device(config-cp)#service-policy input system-cpp-policy Device(config-cp)#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device(config-cp)# end</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td><code>show policy-map control-plane</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><code>Device# show policy-map control-plane</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Control Plane Policing

#### Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues

Follow these steps to set the policer rates for all CPU queues to their default rates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device> enable |  
| **Step 2** | configure terminal| Enters global configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device# configure terminal |  
| **Step 3** | cpp system-default | Sets the policer rates for all the classes to the default rate.  
  Example:  
  Device# |
### Configuration Examples for CoPP

#### Example: Enabling a CPU Queue or Changing the Policer Rate of a CPU Queue

This example shows how to enable a CPU queue or to change the policer rate of a CPU queue. Here the **class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping** CPU queue is enabled with the policer rate of **2000 pps**.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy
Device(config-pmap)# class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
Device(config-pmap-c)# police rate 2000 pps
Device(config-pmap-c-police)# end
```

```
Device# show policy-map control-plane
Control Plane

Service-policy input: system-cpp-policy

<output truncated>

Class-map: system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth (match-any)
  0 packets, 0 bytes
  5 minute offered rate 0000 bps, drop rate 0000 bps
  Match: none
  police:
    rate 1000 pps, burst 244 packets
    conformed 0 bytes; actions:
    transmit
    exceeded 0 bytes; actions:
    drop

Class-map: system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping (match-any)
  0 packets, 0 bytes
  5 minute offered rate 0000 bps, drop rate 0000 bps
  Match: none
  police:
    rate 2000 pps, burst 488 packets
```
Example: Disabling a CPU Queue

This example shows how to disable a CPU queue. Here the class `system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping` CPU queue is disabled.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# policy-map system-cpp-policy
Device(config-pmap)# class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
Device(config-pmap-c)# no police rate 100 pps
Device(config-pmap-c)# end

Device# show running-config | begin system-cpp-policy

policy-map system-cpp-policy
class system-cpp-police-data
  police rate 200 pps
class system-cpp-police-sys-data
  police rate 100 pps
class system-cpp-police-sw-forward
  police rate 1000 pps
class system-cpp-police-multicast
  police rate 500 pps
class system-cpp-police-multicast-end-station
  police rate 2000 pps
class system-cpp-police-punt-webauth
class system-cpp-police-l2-control
class system-cpp-police-routing-control
  police rate 500 pps
class system-cpp-police-control-low-priority
class system-cpp-police-wireless-priority1
class system-cpp-police-wireless-priority2
class system-cpp-police-wireless-priority3-4-5
class system-cpp-police-topology-control
class system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth
class system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping
class system-cpp-police-forus
class system-cpp-default

<output truncated>
```

Example: Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues

This example shows how to set the policer rates for all CPU queues to their default and then verify the setting.
Example: Setting the Default Policer Rates for All CPU Queues

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# cpp system-default
Defaulting CFP: Policer rate for all classes will be set to their defaults
Device(config)# end

Device# show platform hardware fed switch 1 qos queue stats internal cpu policer

CPU Queue Statistics
============================================================================================
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QId</th>
<th>PlcIdx</th>
<th>Queue Name</th>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>(default) Rate</th>
<th>(set) Rate</th>
<th>Queue Drop(Bytes)</th>
<th>Queue Drop(Frames)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>DOT1X Auth</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L2 Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Forus traffic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ICMP GEN</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Routing Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Forus Address resolution</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ICMP Redirect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Inter FED Traffic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>L2 LVX Cont Pack</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>EWLC Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>EWLC Data</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>L2 LVX Data Pack</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>BROADCAST</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Openflow</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Sw forwarding</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Topology Control</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Proto Snooping</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>DHCP Snooping</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Transit Traffic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>RPF Failed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>MCAST END STATION</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>LOGGING</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Punt Webauth</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>High Rate App</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Exception</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CPU Queue Policer Statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policer Index</th>
<th>Policer Accept Bytes</th>
<th>Policer Accept Frames</th>
<th>Policer Drop Bytes</th>
<th>Policer Drop Frames</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CPP Classes to queue map

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PlcIdx</th>
<th>CPP Class</th>
<th>Queues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-data</td>
<td>ICMP GEN/BROADCAST/ICMP Redirect/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-sys-data</td>
<td>Openflow/Exception/EGR Exception/NFL SAMPLED DATA/Gold Pkt/RPF Failed/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-sw-forward</td>
<td>Sw forwarding/LOGGING/L2 LVX Data Pack/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-multicast</td>
<td>Transit Traffic/MCAST Data/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-multicast-end-station</td>
<td>MCAST END STATION/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-punt-webauth</td>
<td>Punt Webauth/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-l2-control</td>
<td>L2 Control/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-routing-control</td>
<td>Routing Control/Low Latency/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-system-critical</td>
<td>System Critical/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-l2lvx-control</td>
<td>L2 LVX Cont Pack/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-topology-control</td>
<td>Topology Control/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-dot1x-auth</td>
<td>DOT1X Auth/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-protocol-snooping</td>
<td>Proto Snooping/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-dhcp-snooping</td>
<td>DHCP Snooping/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-forus</td>
<td>Forus Address resolution/Forus traffic/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>system-cpp-police-stackwise-virt-control</td>
<td>Stackwise Virtual OOB/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring CoPP

Use these commands to display policer settings, such as, traffic types and policer rates (user-configured and default rates) for CPU queues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show policy-map control-plane</td>
<td>Displays the rates configured for the various traffic types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show policy-map system-cpp-policy</td>
<td>Displays all the classes configured under system-cpp policy, and policer rates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for CoPP

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1</td>
<td>Control Plane Policing (CoPP) or CPP</td>
<td>The CoPP feature improves security on your device by protecting the CPU from unnecessary traffic, or DoS traffic, and by prioritizing control plane and management traffic. The feature provides CLI configuration options to enable and disable CPU queues, to change the policer rate, and set policer rates to default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to https://cfng.cisco.com.
Chapter 31

Configuring Lawful Intercept

- Prerequisites for Lawful Intercept, on page 589
- Restrictions for Lawful Intercept, on page 589
- Information About Lawful Intercept, on page 590
- How to Configure Lawful Intercept, on page 597
- Configuration Examples for Lawful Intercept, on page 600
- Feature History for Lawful Intercept, on page 601

Prerequisites for Lawful Intercept

- You must be running images that support secure shell (SSH). Lawful intercept is not supported on images that do not support SSH.

- The switch you are logged into must have the highest access level (L15). To log in with L15 access, enter the `enable` command and specify the highest-level password defined for the switch.

- The time of day on the switch and the mediation device (supplied by a third-party vendor) connected to the network must be synchronized; also, configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) on both the switch and the mediation device.

- (Optional) It might be helpful to use a loopback interface for the switch to communicate with the mediation device. If you do not use a loopback interface, you must configure the mediation device with multiple physical interfaces on the switch to handle network failures.

Restrictions for Lawful Intercept

- Intercept or tap can be configured using only SNMP. Also, configuring interface-specific intercept is not allowed.

- The CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB does not support the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) OID citapStreamVRF.

- IPv4 multicast, IPv6 unicast, and IPv6 multicast flows are not supported. Only IPv4 unicast traffic is supported.

- Lawful Intercept is not supported on Layer 2 interfaces. However, lawful intercept can intercept traffic on VLANs that run over a Layer 2 interface.
• Lawful Intercept is not supported in packets that are encapsulated within other packets, for example, tunneled packets or Q-in-Q packets.

• Lawful Intercept is not supported for Layer 2 taps.

• Lawful Intercept is not supported in packets that are subject to Layer 3 or Layer 4 rewrite, for example, Network Address Translation (NAT) or TCP reflexive.

Information About Lawful Intercept

Overview of Lawful Intercept

Lawful intercept is a process that enables a law enforcement agency to perform electronic surveillance on an individual (a target) as authorized by a judicial (court) or administrative order. To facilitate the lawful intercept process, certain legislation and regulations require service providers and Internet Service Providers (ISPs) to implement their networks to explicitly support authorized electronic surveillance.

Surveillance is performed through the use of wiretaps on traditional telecommunications and internet services in voice, data, and multiservice networks. The law enforcement agencies deliver a request for a wiretap to the target’s service provider who is responsible for intercepting data communication to and from the individual. The service provider uses the target’s IP address to determine which of its edge devices handles the target’s traffic (data communication). The service provider then intercepts the target’s traffic as it passes through the device, and sends a copy of the intercepted traffic to the LEA without the target’s knowledge.

The Lawful Intercept feature supports the Communications Assistance for Law Enforcement Act (CALEA), which describes how service providers in the United States must support lawful intercept. Currently, lawful intercept is defined by the following standards:

- Telephone Industry Association (TIA) specification J-STD-025
- Packet Cable Electronic Surveillance Specification (PKT-SP-ESP-101-991229)

For information about the Cisco lawful intercept solution, contact your Cisco account representative.

Note

The Lawful Intercept feature supports the interception of IPv4 protocol as defined by the citapStream protocol object in the CISCO-IP-TAB-MIB that includes voice and date interception.

Benefits of Lawful Intercept

• Allows multiple LEAs to run a lawful intercept on the same target without each other’s knowledge.

• Does not affect subscriber services on the device.

• Supports wiretaps in both the input and output direction.

• Supports wiretaps of Layer 1 and Layer 3 traffic. Layer 2 traffic is supported as IP traffic over VLANs.

• Supports Layer 3 physical interfaces or Switch Virtual Interfaces (SVI).

• Supports wiretaps of individual subscribers that share a single physical interface.
Cannot be detected by the target. Neither the network administrator nor the calling party is aware that packets are being copied or that the call is being tapped.

Uses Simple Network Management Protocol Version 3 (SNMPv3) and security features such as the View-based Access Control Model (SNMP-VACM-MIB) and the User-based Security Model (SNMP-USM-MIB) to restrict access to lawful intercept information and components.

Hides information about lawful intercepts from all but the most privileged users. An administrator must set up access rights to enable privileged users to access lawful intercept information.

Provides two secure interfaces for performing an intercept; one for setting up the wiretap and one for sending the intercepted traffic to the LEA.

### CALEA for Voice

The Communications Assistance for Law Enforcement Act (CALEA) for Voice feature allows the lawful interception of voice conversations that are running on VoIP. Although the devices are not voice gateway devices, VoIP packets traverse the devices at the edge of the service provider network.

When an approved government agency determines that a telephone conversation is interesting, CALEA for Voice copies the IP packets comprising the conversation and sends the duplicate packets to the appropriate monitoring device for further analysis.

### Configuration Guidelines

- To deploy Lawful Intercept at a node, do not configure optimized ACL logging, VLAN access control list (VACL) capture, or Intrusion Detection System (IDS) at the node. Deploying lawful intercept at the node causes unpredictable behavior in optimized ACL logging, VACL capture, and IDS.

- When provisioning the mediation device, if the interface index passed is zero, the switch selects the best possible interface to reach the mediation device. If the interface index is set to another value, the switch uses that interface index to reach the mediation device.

- (Optional) The domain name for both the device and the mediation device can be registered in the Domain Name System (DNS).

- The mediation device must have an access function.

- You must add the mediation device to the SNMP user group that has access to the CISCO-TAP2-MIB view. Specify the username of the mediation device as the user to add to the group.

- When you add the mediation device as a CISCO-TAP2-MIB user, you must also include the mediation device’s authorization password.

- The device intercepts and replicates packets even if the packets are later dropped, for example, due to rate limiting or an access control list (ACL) deny statement.

- Lawful intercept ACLs are applied internally to both the ingress and the egress directions of an interface.

- Packets that are subject to hardware rate limiting are processed by lawful intercept as follows:

  - Packets that are dropped by the rate limiter are not intercepted or processed.

  - Packets that are passed by the rate limiter are intercepted and processed.
Network Components Used for Lawful Intercept

This section describes the network components used for lawful intercept.

Mediation Device

A mediation device (supplied by a third-party vendor) handles most of the processing for lawful intercept. The mediation device:

- Provides the interface used to set up and provision the lawful intercept.
- Generates requests to other network devices to set up and run the lawful intercept.
- Converts the intercepted traffic into the format required by the LEA (which can vary from country to country) and sends a copy of the intercepted traffic to the LEA without the target’s knowledge.

Note

If multiple LEAs are performing intercepts on the same target, the mediation device must make a copy of the intercepted traffic for each LEA. The mediation device is also responsible for restarting the lawful intercepts that are disrupted due to a failure.

Lawful Intercept Administration

Lawful intercept administration (LIA) provides the authentication interface for lawful intercept or wiretap requests and administration.

Intercept Access Point

An intercept access point (IAP) is a device that provides information to lawful intercept. There are two types of IAPs:

- Identification (ID) IAP—A device, such as an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server that provides intercept-related information (IRI) for the intercept (for example, the target’s username and system IP address) or call agents for VoIP. The IRI helps a service provider determine which content IAP (switch) the target’s traffic passes through.

- If multiple law enforcement agencies use a single mediation device and each of these agencies is executing a wiretap on the same target, the device sends a single packet to the mediation device. It is up to the mediation device to duplicate the packet for each law enforcement agency.

- Lawful intercept can intercept IPv4 packets with values that match a combination of one or more of the following fields:
  - Destination IP address and mask
  - Destination port range
  - Source IP address and mask
  - Source port range
  - Protocol ID
• Content IAP—A device that the target’s traffic passes through. The content IAP:
  - Intercepts traffic to and from the target for the length of time specified in the court order. The device continues to forward traffic to its destination to ensure that the wiretap is undetected.
  - Creates a copy of the intercepted traffic, encapsulates it in User Datagram Protocol (UDP) packets, and forwards the packets to the mediation device without the target’s knowledge. Note that the IP option header is not supported.

**Note**
If multiple LEAs are performing intercepts on the same target, the mediation device must make a copy of the intercepted traffic for each LEA.

**Content Intercept Access Point**
Content IAP intercepts the interested data stream, duplicates the content, and sends the duplicated content to the mediation device. The mediation device receives the data from the ID IAP and content IAP, converts the information to the required format depending on country-specific requirements and forwards it to the law enforcement agency.

**Lawful Intercept Processing**

After acquiring a court order or warrant to perform surveillance, the LEA delivers a surveillance request to the target’s service provider. Service provider personnel use an administration function that runs on the mediation device to configure a lawful intercept to monitor the target’s electronic traffic for a specific period of time (as defined in the court order).

After the intercept is configured, user intervention is no longer required. The administration function communicates with other network devices to set up and execute the lawful intercept. The following sequence of events occurs during a lawful intercept:

1. The administration function contacts the ID IAP for intercept-related information (IRI), such as the target’s username and the IP address of the system, to determine which content IAP (switch) the target’s traffic passes through.

2. After identifying the device that handles the target’s traffic, the administration function sends SNMPv3 get and set requests to the device’s Management Information Base (MIB) to set up and activate the lawful intercept. The CISCO-TAP2-MIB is the supported lawful intercept MIB to provide per-subscriber intercepts.

3. During lawful intercept, the device:
   a. Examines incoming and outgoing traffic and intercepts any traffic that matches the specifications of the lawful intercept request.
   b. Creates a copy of the intercepted traffic and forwards the original traffic to its destination so that the target does not suspect anything.
   c. Encapsulates the intercepted traffic in UDP packets, and forwards the packets to the mediation device without the target’s knowledge.
The process of intercepting and duplicating the target’s traffic does not add detectable latency in the traffic stream.

4. The mediation device converts the intercepted traffic into the required format and sends it to a collection function running at the LEA. Here, the intercepted traffic is stored and processed.

If the device intercepts traffic that is not allowed by the judicial order, the mediation device filters out the excess traffic and sends only the traffic allowed by the judicial order to the LEA.

5. When the lawful intercept expires, the device stops intercepting the target’s traffic.

**Lawful Intercept MIBs**

- CISCO-TAP2-MIB: Used for lawful intercept processing.
- CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB: Used for intercepting Layer 3 (IPv4) traffic.

Due to its sensitive nature, the Cisco lawful intercept MIBs are only available in software images that support the Lawful Intercept feature. To access the Cisco IOS MIB Locator page, go to: [http://mibs.cloudapps.cisco.com/ITDIT/MIBS/servlet/index](http://mibs.cloudapps.cisco.com/ITDIT/MIBS/servlet/index).

**CISCO-TAP2-MIB**

The CISCO-TAP2-MIB contains SNMP management objects that control lawful intercepts. The mediation device uses the MIB to configure and run lawful intercepts on targets whose traffic passes through the device.

The CISCO-TAP2-MIB contains several tables that provide information for lawful intercepts that are running on the device:

- cTap2MediationTable: Contains information about each mediation device that is currently running lawful intercept on the device. Each table entry provides information that the device uses to communicate with the mediation device, for example, the device’s address, the interfaces to send intercepted traffic over, and the protocol to use to transmit the intercepted traffic.

- cTap2StreamTable: Contains information used to identify the traffic to intercept. Each table entry contains a pointer to a filter that is used to identify the traffic stream associated with the target of a lawful intercept. Traffic that matches the filter is intercepted, copied, and sent to the corresponding mediation device application (cTap2MediationContentId).

  The cTap2StreamTable table also contains counts of the number of packets that were intercepted, and counts of dropped packets that should have been intercepted, but were not.

- cTap2DebugTable: Contains debug information for troubleshooting lawful intercept errors.

The CISCO-TAP2-MIB also contains several SNMP notifications for lawful intercept events. For detailed descriptions of MIB objects, see corresponding MIBs.
CISCO-TAP2-MIB Processing

The administration function (running on the mediation device) issues SNMPv3 set and get requests to the device’s CISCO-TAP2-MIB to set up and initiate a lawful intercept. To do this, the administration function performs the following actions:

1. Creates a cTap2MediationTable entry to define how the device is to communicate with the mediation device executing the intercept.

   The cTap2MediationNewIndex object provides a unique index for the mediation table entry.

2. Creates an entry in the cTap2StreamTable to identify the traffic stream to intercept.

3. Sets cTap2StreamInterceptEnable to true (1) to start the intercept. The device intercepts traffic in the stream until the intercept expires (cTap2MediationTimeout).

CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB

The CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB contains the SNMP management objects to configure and execute lawful intercepts on IPv4 traffic streams that flow through the device. This MIB is an extension of the CISCO-TAP2-MIB.

You can use the CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB to configure lawful intercept on a device to intercept IPv4 packets with values that match a combination of one or more of the following fields:

- Destination IP address and mask
- Destination port range
- Source IP address and mask
- Source port range
- Protocol ID

CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB Processing

When data is intercepted, two streams are created. One stream is for packets that originate from the target IP address to any other IP address using any port. The second stream is created for packets that are routed to the target IP address from any other address using any port. For VoIP, two streams are created, one for RTP packets from the target and the second stream for the RTP packets to target using the specific source and destination IP addresses and ports specified in the SDP information used to set up the RTP stream.

MIB Guidelines

The following Cisco MIBs are used for lawful intercept processing. Include these MIBs in the SNMP view of lawful intercept MIBs to enable the mediation device to configure and execute wiretaps on traffic that flows through the device.

- CISCO-TAP2-MIB: Required for both types of lawful intercepts: regular and broadband.
- CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB: Required for wiretaps on Layer 3 (IPv4) streams. Supported for regular and broadband lawful intercept.
• The CISCO-IP-TAB-MIB imposes limitations on the following features:
  • If one or all of the following features are configured and functioning and lawful intercept is enabled, lawful intercept takes precedence, and the feature behaves as follows:
    • Optimized ACL logging (OAL): Does not function.
    • VLAN access control list (VACL) capturing: Does not function properly.
    • Intrusion detection system (IDS): Does not function properly.

  These features start to function after you disable or unconfigure lawful intercept.
  • IDS cannot capture traffic on its own, but captures traffic that has been intercepted by lawful intercept.

Security Considerations

• SNMP notifications for lawful intercept must be sent to UDP port 161 on the mediation device, not port 162 (which is the SNMP default).
• The only users who should be allowed to access the lawful intercept MIBs are the mediation device and system administrators who need to know about lawful intercepts on the device. In addition, these users must have authPriv or authNoPriv access rights to access the lawful intercept MIBs. Users with NoAuthNoPriv access cannot access the lawful intercept MIBs.
• You cannot use the SNMP-VACM-MIB to create a view that includes the lawful intercept MIBs.
• The default SNMP view excludes the following MIBs:
  • CISCO-TAP2-MIB
  • CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB
  • SNMP-COMMUNITY-MIB
  • SNMP-USM-MIB
  • SNMP-VACM-MIB

We recommend that you also see the information provided in Restrictions for Lawful Intercept, on page 589 and Prerequisites for Lawful Intercept, on page 589.

Restricting Access to the Lawful Intercept MIBs

Only the mediation device and users who need to know about lawful intercepts should be allowed to access the lawful intercept MIBs. To restrict access to these MIBs, you must:

1. Create a view that includes the Cisco lawful intercept MIBs.
2. Create an SNMP user group that has read-and-write access to the view. Only users assigned to this user group can access information in the MIBs.
3. Add users to the Cisco lawful intercept user groups to define who can access the MIBs along with information, if any, related to lawful intercepts. Be sure to add the mediation device as a user in this group; otherwise, the device cannot perform lawful intercepts.
AccesstotheCisco lawful intercept MIB view should be restricted to the mediation device and to system
administrators who need to be aware of lawful intercepts on the device. To access the MIB, users must have
level-15 access rights on the device.

How to Configure Lawful Intercept

Creating a Restricted SNMP View of Lawful Intercept MIBs

To create and assign users to an SNMP view that includes the Cisco lawful intercept MIBs, perform the steps
provided in this section.

Before you begin

• SNMPv3 must be configured on the device.

Note

Issue the commands in global configuration mode with level-15 access rights.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included</td>
<td>Creates an SNMP view that includes the CISCO-TAP2-MIB, where exampleView is the name of the view to create for the MIB. This MIB is required for both regular and broadband lawful intercept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoTap2MIB included</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included</td>
<td>Adds the CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoIpTapMIB included</td>
<td>Add the CISCO-802-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included</strong></td>
<td>Adds the CISCO-802-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView cisco802TapMIB included</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included</strong></td>
<td>Adds the CISCO-USER-CONNECTION-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoUserConnectionTapMIB included</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>snmp-server view view-name MIB-name included</strong></td>
<td>Adds the CISCO-MOBILITY-TAP-MIB to the SNMP view.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server view exampleView ciscoMobilityTapMIB included</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>snmp-server group group-name v3 auth read view-name write view-name</strong></td>
<td>Creates an SNMP user group that has access to the LI MIB view and defines the group’s access rights to the view.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server group exampleGroup v3 auth read exampleView write exampleView</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>snmp-server user user-name group-name v3 auth md5 auth-password</strong></td>
<td>Adds users to the specified user group.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# snmp-server user exampleUser exampleGroup v3 auth md5 examplePassword</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>end</strong></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enabling SNMP Notifications for Lawful Intercept

SNMP automatically generates notifications for lawful intercept events. To configure the device to send lawful intercept notifications to the mediation device, perform the steps in this section.

Before you begin

- SNMPv3 must be configured on the device.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> snmp-server host ip-address community-string udp-port port notification-type</td>
<td>Specifies the IP address of the mediation device and the password-like community-string that is sent with a notification request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# snmp-server host 10.2.2.1 community-string udp-port 161 udp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication linkup linkdown coldstart warmstart</td>
<td>Configures the device to send RFC 1157 notifications to the mediation device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication linkup linkdown coldstart warmstart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disabling SNMP Notifications

To disable SNMP notifications on the device, perform the steps provided in this section.

**Note**

To disable lawful intercept notifications, use SNMPv3 to set the CISCO-TAP2-MIB object cTap2MediationNotificationEnable to false(2). To re-enable lawful intercept notifications through SNMPv3, reset the object to true(1).

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> no snmp-server enable traps</td>
<td>Disables all SNMP notification types that are available on your system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# no snmp-server enable traps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration Examples for Lawful Intercept

Example: Enabling Mediation Device Access Lawful Intercept MIBs

The following example shows how to enable the mediation device to access the lawful intercept MIBs. It creates an SNMP view (tapV) that includes three LI MIBs (CISCO-TAP2-MIB, CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB, CISCO-802-TAP-MIB). It also creates a user group that has read, write, and notify access to MIBs in the tapV view.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# snmp-server view tapV ciscoTap2MIB included
Device(config)# snmp-server view tapV ciscoIpTapMIB included
Device(config)# snmp-server view tapV cisco802TapMIB included
Device(config)# snmp-server group tapGrp v3 auth read tapV write tapV notify tapV
Device(config)# snmp-server user MDuser tapGrp v3 auth md5 MDpasswd
Device(config)# snmp-server engineID local 1234
Device(config)# end

Feature History for Lawful Intercept

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Lawful Intercept</td>
<td>The Lawful Intercept feature supports service providers in meeting the requirements of law enforcement agencies to provide electronic surveillance as authorized by a judicial or administrative order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

This module describes the authorization and revocation of certificates in a public key infrastructure (PKI).

Prerequisites for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

Plan Your PKI Strategy

Tip

It is strongly recommended that you plan your entire PKI strategy before you begin to deploy actual certificates.

Authorization and revocation can occur only after you or a network administrator have completed the following tasks:

• Configured the certificate authority (CA).

• Enrolled peer devices with the CA.

• Identified and configured the protocol (such as IPsec or secure socket layer [SSL]) that is to be used for peer-to-peer communication.

You should decide which authorization and revocation strategy you are going to configure before enrolling peer devices because the peer device certificates might have to contain authorization and revocation-specific information.
High Availability

For high availability, IPsec-secured Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) must be configured on both the active and the standby devices. For synchronization to work, the redundancy mode on the certificate servers must be set to ACTIVE/STANDBY after you configure SCTP.

Restrictions for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

- Depending on your Cisco IOS XE release, Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is supported.

Information About Authorization and Revocation of Certificates

PKI Authorization

PKI authentication does not provide authorization. Current solutions for authorization are specific to the router that is being configured, although a centrally managed solution is often required.

There is not a standard mechanism by which certificates are defined as authorized for some tasks and not for others. This authorization information can be captured in the certificate itself if the application is aware of the certificate-based authorization information. But this solution does not provide a simple mechanism for real-time updates to the authorization information and forces each application to be aware of the specific authorization information embedded in the certificate.

When the certificate-based access control list (ACL) mechanism is configured as part of the trustpoint authentication, the application is no longer responsible for determining this authorization information, and it is no longer possible to specify for which application the certificate is authorized. In some cases, the certificate-based ACL on the router gets so large that it cannot be managed. Additionally, it is beneficial to retrieve certificate-based ACL indications from an external server.

Current solutions to the real-time authorization problem involve specifying a new protocol and building a new server (with associated tasks, such as management and data distribution).

PKI and AAA Server Integration for Certificate Status

Integrating your PKI with an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server provides an alternative online certificate status solution that leverages the existing AAA infrastructure. Certificates can be listed in the AAA database with appropriate levels of authorization. For components that do not explicitly support PKI-AAA, a default label of “all” from the AAA server provides authorization. Likewise, a label of “none” from the AAA database indicates that the specified certificate is not valid. (The absence of any application label is equivalent, but “none” is included for completeness and clarity). If the application component does support PKI-AAA, the component may be specified directly; for example, the application component could be “ipsec,” “ssl,” or “osp.” (ipsec=IP Security, ssl=Secure Sockets Layer, and osp=Open Settlement Protocol.)

Note

Currently, no application component supports specification of the application label.

- There may be a time delay when accessing the AAA server. If the AAA server is not available, the authorization fails.
RADIUS or TACACS+ Choosing a AAA Server Protocol

The AAA server can be configured to work with either the RADIUS or TACACS+ protocol. When you are configuring the AAA server for the PKI integration, you must set the RADIUS or TACACS attributes that are required for authorization.

If the RADIUS protocol is used, the password that is configured for the username in the AAA server should be set to “cisco,” which is acceptable because the certificate validation provides authentication and the AAA database is only being used for authorization. When the TACACS protocol is used, the password that is configured for the username in the AAA server is irrelevant because TACACS supports authorization without requiring authentication (the password is used for authentication).

In addition, if you are using TACACS, you must add a PKI service to the AAA server. The custom attribute “cert-application=all” is added under the PKI service for the particular user or user group to authorize the specific username.

Attribute-Value Pairs for PKI and AAA Server Integration

The table below lists the attribute-value (AV) pairs that are to be used when setting up PKI integration with a AAA server. (Note the values shown in the table are possible values.) The AV pairs must match the client configuration. If they do not match, the peer certificate is not authorized.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AV Pair</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cisco-avpair=pki:cert-application=all</td>
<td>Valid values are “all” and “none.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-avpair=pki:cert-trustpoint=msca</td>
<td>The value is a Cisco IOS XE command-line interface (CLI) configuration trustpoint label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: The cert-trustpoint AV pair is normally optional. If it is specified, the device query must be coming from a certificate trustpoint that has a matching label, and the certificate that is authenticated must have the specified certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-avpair=pki:cert-serial=16318DB7000100001671</td>
<td>The value is a certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: The cert-serial AV pair is normally optional. If it is specified, the Cisco device query must be coming from a certificate trustpoint that has a matching label, and the certificate that is authenticated must have the specified certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AV Pair | Value
---|---
cisco-avpair=pki:cert-lifetime-end=1:00 jan 1, 2003 | The cert-lifetime-end AV pair is available to artificially extend a certificate lifetime beyond the time period that is indicated in the certificate itself. If the cert-lifetime-end AV pair is used, the cert-trustpoint and cert-serial AV pairs must also be specified. The value must match the following form: hours:minutes month day, year.

Note | Only the first three characters of a month are used: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec. If more than three characters are entered for the month, the remaining characters are ignored (for example Janxxxx).

CRLs or OCSP Server Choosing a Certificate Revocation Mechanism

After a certificate is validated as a properly signed certificate, a certificate revocation method is performed to ensure that the certificate has not been revoked by the issuing CA. Cisco IOS XE software supports two revocation mechanisms--certificate revocation lists (CRLs) and Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP). Cisco IOS XE software also supports AAA integration for certificate checking; however, additional authorization functionality is included. For more information on PKI and AAA certificate authorization and status check, see the PKI and AAA Server Integration for Certificate Status section.

The following sections explain how each revocation mechanism works:

What Is a CRL

A certificate revocation list (CRL) is a list of revoked certificates. The CRL is created and digitally signed by the CA that originally issued the certificates. The CRL contains dates for when each certificate was issued and when it expires.

CAs publish new CRLs periodically or when a certificate for which the CA is responsible has been revoked. By default, a new CRL is downloaded after the currently cached CRL expires. An administrator may also configure the duration for which CRLs are cached in router memory or disable CRL caching completely. The CRL caching configuration applies to all CRLs associated with a trustpoint.

When the CRL expires, the router deletes it from its cache. A new CRL is downloaded when a certificate is presented for verification; however, if a newer version of the CRL that lists the certificate under examination is on the server but the router is still using the CRL in its cache, the router does not know that the certificate has been revoked. The certificate passes the revocation check even though it should have been denied.

When a CA issues a certificate, the CA can include in the certificate the CRL distribution point (CDP) for that certificate. Cisco IOS client devices use CDPs to locate and load the correct CRL. The Cisco IOS client supports multiple CDPs, but the Cisco IOS CA currently supports only one CDP; however, third-party vendor CAs may support multiple CDPs or different CDPs per certificate. If a CDP is not specified in the certificate, the client device uses the default Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) method to retrieve the CRL. (The CDP location can be specified through the cdp-url command.)

When implementing CRLs, you should consider the following design considerations:

- CRL lifetimes and the security association (SA) and Internet Key Exchange (IKE) lifetimes.
The CRL lifetime determines the length of time between CA-issued updates to the CRL. The default CRL lifetime value, which is 168 hours [1 week], can be changed through the `lifetime crl` command.

The method of the CDP determines how the CRL is retrieved; some possible choices include HTTP, Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), SCEP, or TFTP. HTTP, TFTP, and LDAP are the most commonly used methods. Although Cisco IOS software defaults to SCEP, an HTTP CDP is recommended for large installations using CRLs because HTTP can be made highly scalable.

The location of the CDP determines from where the CRL is retrieved; for example, you can specify the server and file path from which to retrieve the CRL.

**Querying All CDPs During Revocation Check**

When a CDP server does not respond to a request, the Cisco IOS XE software reports an error, which may result in the peer’s certificate being rejected. To prevent a possible certificate rejection and if there are multiple CDPs in a certificate, the Cisco IOS XE software will attempt to use the CDPs in the order in which they appear in the certificate. The device will attempt to retrieve a CRL using each CDP URL or directory specification. If an error occurs using a CDP, an attempt will be made using the next CDP.

Although the Cisco IOS XE software will make every attempt to obtain the CRL from one of the indicated CDPs, it is recommended that you use an HTTP CDP server with high-speed redundant HTTP servers to avoid application timeouts because of slow CDP responses.

**What Is OCSP**

OCSP is an online mechanism that is used to determine certificate validity and provides the following flexibility as a revocation mechanism:

- OCSP can provide real-time certificate status checking.
- OCSP allows the network administrator to specify a central OCSP server, which can service all devices within a network.
- OCSP also allows the network administrator the flexibility to specify multiple OCSP servers, either per client certificate or per group of client certificates.
- OCSP server validation is usually based on the root CA certificate or a valid subordinate CA certificate, but may also be configured so that external CA certificates or self-signed certificates may be used. Using external CA certificates or self-signed certificates allows the OCSP servers certificate to be issued and validated from an alternative PKI hierarchy.

A network administrator can configure an OCSP server to collect and update CRLs from different CA servers. The devices within the network can rely on the OCSP server to check the certificate status without retrieving and caching each CRL for every peer. When peers have to check the revocation status of a certificate, they send a query to the OCSP server that includes the serial number of the certificate in question and an optional unique identifier for the OCSP request, or a nonce. The OCSP server holds a copy of the CRL to determine if the CA has listed the certificate as being revoked; the server then responds to the peer including the nonce. If the nonce in the response from the OCSP server does not match the original nonce sent by the peer, the response is considered invalid and certificate verification fails. The dialog between the OCSP server and the peer consumes less bandwidth than most CRL downloads.

If the OCSP server is using a CRL, CRL time limitations will be applicable; that is, a CRL that is still valid might be used by the OCSP server although a new CRL has been issued by the CRL containing additional...
Certificate revocation information. Because fewer devices are downloading the CRL information on a regular basis, you can decrease the CRL lifetime value or configure the OCSP server not to cache the CRL. For more information, check your OCSP server documentation.

Note

OCSP multiple response handling: Support has been enabled for handling of multiple OCSP single responses from an OCSP responder in a response packet. In addition to the debug log messages the following debug log message will be displayed:

CRYPTO_PKI: Number of single Responses in OCSP response: 1 (this value can change depending upon the number of responses).

When to Use an OCSP Server

OCSP may be more appropriate than CRLs if your PKI has any of the following characteristics:

- Real-time certificate revocation status is necessary. CRLs are updated only periodically and the latest CRL may not always be cached by the client device. For example, if a client does not yet have the latest CRL cached and a newly revoked certificate is being checked, that revoked certificate will successfully pass the revocation check.

- There are a large number of revoked certificates or multiple CRLs. Caching a large CRL consumes large portions of Cisco IOS memory and may reduce resources available to other processes.

- CRLs expire frequently, causing the CDP to handle a larger load of CRLs.

When to Use Certificate-Based ACLs for Authorization or Revocation

Certificates contain several fields that are used to determine whether a device or user is authorized to perform a specified action.

Because certificate-based ACLs are configured on the device, they do not scale well for large numbers of ACLs; however, certificate-based ACLs do provide very granular control of specific device behavior. Certificate-based ACLs are also leveraged by additional features to help determine when PKI components such as revocation, authorization, or a trustpoint should be used. They provide a general mechanism allowing users to select a specific certificate or a group of certificates that are being validated for either authorization or additional processing.

Certificate-based ACLs specify one or more fields within the certificate and an acceptable value for each specified field. You can specify which fields within a certificate should be checked and which values those fields may or may not have.

There are six logical tests for comparing the field with the value—equal, not equal, contains, does not contain, less than, and greater than or equal. If more than one field is specified within a single certificate-based ACL, the tests of all of the fields within the ACL must succeed to match the ACL. The same field may be specified multiple times within the same ACL. More than one ACL may be specified, and ACL will be processed in turn until a match is found or all of the ACLs have been processed.

Ignore Revocation Checks Using a Certificate-Based ACL

Certificate-based ACLs can be configured to instruct your router to ignore the revocation check and expired certificates of a valid peer. Thus, a certificate that meets the specified criteria can be accepted regardless of the validity period of the certificate, or if the certificate meets the specified criteria, revocation checking does
not have to be performed. You can also use a certificate-based ACL to ignore the revocation check when the communication with a AAA server is protected with a certificate.

Ignoring Revocation Lists
To allow a trustpoint to enforce CRLs except for specific certificates, enter the `match certificate` command with the `skip revocation-check` keyword. This type of enforcement is most useful in a hub-and-spoke configuration in which you also want to allow direct spoke-to-spoke connections. In pure hub-and-spoke configurations, all spokes connect only to the hub, so CRL checking is necessary only on the hub. For one spoke to communicate directly with another spoke, the `match certificate` command with the `skip revocation-check` keyword can be used for neighboring peer certificates instead of requiring a CRL on each spoke.

Ignoring Expired Certificates
To configure your router to ignore expired certificates, enter the `match certificate` command with the `allow expired-certificate` keyword. This command has the following purposes:

- If the certificate of a peer has expired, this command may be used to “allow” the expired certificate until the peer can obtain a new certificate.

- If your router clock has not yet been set to the correct time, the certificate of a peer will appear to be not yet valid until the clock is set. This command may be used to allow the certificate of the peer even though your router clock is not set.

---

**Note**
If Network Time Protocol (NTP) is available only via the IPSec connection (usually via the hub in a hub-and-spoke configuration), the router clock can never be set. The tunnel to the hub cannot be “brought up” because the certificate of the hub is not yet valid.

- “Expired” is a generic term for a certificate that is expired or that is not yet valid. The certificate has a start and end time. An expired certificate, for purposes of the ACL, is one for which the current time of the router is outside the start and end times specified in the certificate.

Skipping the AAA Check of the Certificate
If the communication with an AAA server is protected with a certificate, and you want to skip the AAA check of the certificate, use the `match certificate` command with the `skip authorization-check` keyword. For example, if a virtual private network (VPN) tunnel is configured so that all AAA traffic goes over that tunnel, and the tunnel is protected with a certificate, you can use the `match certificate` command with the `skip authorization-check` keyword to skip the certificate check so that the tunnel can be established.

The `match certificate` command and the `skip authorization-check` keyword should be configured after PKI integration with an AAA server is configured.

---

**Note**
If the AAA server is available only via an IPSec connection, the AAA server cannot be contacted until after the IPSec connection is established. The IPSec connection cannot be “brought up” because the certificate of the AAA server is not yet valid.
PKI Certificate Chain Validation

A certificate chain establishes a sequence of trusted certificates --from a peer certificate to the root CA certificate. Within a PKI hierarchy, all enrolled peers can validate the certificate of one another if the peers share a trusted root CA certificate or a common subordinate CA. Each CA corresponds to a trustpoint.

When a certificate chain is received from a peer, the default processing of a certificate chain path continues until the first trusted certificate, or trustpoint, is reached. An administrator may configure the level to which a certificate chain is processed on all certificates including subordinate CA certificates.

Configuring the level to which a certificate chain is processed allows for the reauthentication of trusted certificates, the extension of a trusted certificate chain, and the completion of a certificate chain that contains a gap.

Reauthentication of Trusted Certificates

The default behavior is for the device to remove any trusted certificates from the certificate chain sent by the peer before the chain is validated. An administrator may configure certificate chain path processing so that the device does not remove CA certificates that are already trusted before chain validation, so that all certificates in the chain are re-authenticated for the current session.

Extending the Trusted Certificate Chain

The default behavior is for the device to use its trusted certificates to extend the certificate chain if there are any missing certificates in the certificate chain sent by the peer. The device will validate only certificates in the chain sent by the peer. An administrator may configure certificate chain path processing so that the certificates in the peer’s certificate chain and the device’s trusted certificates are validated to a specified point.

Completing Gaps in a Certificate Chain

An administrator may configure certificate chain processing so that if there is a gap in the configured trustpoint hierarchy, certificates sent by the peer can be used to complete the set of certificates to be validated.

Note

If the trustpoint is configured to require parent validation and the peer does not provide the full certificate chain, the gap cannot be completed and the certificate chain is rejected and invalid.

Note

It is a configuration error if the trustpoint is configured to require parent validation and there is no parent trustpoint configured. The resulting certificate chain gap cannot be completed and the subordinate CA certificate cannot be validated. The certificate chain is invalid.

How to Configure Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

Configuring PKI Integration with a AAA Server

Perform this task to generate a AAA username from the certificate presented by the peer and specify which fields within a certificate should be used to build the AAA database username.
The following restrictions should be considered when using the `all` keyword as the subject name for the `authorization username` command:

- Some AAA servers limit the length of the username (for example, to 64 characters). As a result, the entire certificate subject name cannot be longer than the limitation of the server.

- Some AAA servers limit the available character set that may be used for the username (for example, a space `[]` and an equal sign `=[]` may not be acceptable). You cannot use the `all` keyword for a AAA server having such a character-set limitation.

- The `subject-name` command in the trustpoint configuration may not always be the final AAA subject name. If the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), serial number, or IP address of the router are included in a certificate request, the subject name field of the issued certificate will also have these components. To turn off the components, use the `fqdn`, `serial-number`, and `ip-address` commands with the `none` keyword.

- CA servers sometimes change the requested subject name field when they issue a certificate. For example, CA servers of some vendors switch the relative distinguished names (RDNs) in the requested subject names to the following order: CN, OU, O, L, ST, and C. However, another CA server might append the configured LDAP directory root (for example, `O=cisco.com`) to the end of the requested subject name.

- Depending on the tools you choose for displaying a certificate, the printed order of the RDNs in the subject name could be different. Cisco IOS software always displays the least significant RDN first, but other software, such as Open Source Secure Socket Layer (OpenSSL), does the opposite. Therefore, if you are configuring a AAA server with a full distinguished name (DN) (subject name) as the corresponding username, ensure that the Cisco IOS software style (that is, with the least significant RDN first) is used.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>enable</em></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device&gt; enable</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>configure terminal</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device# configure terminal</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables the AAA access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>aaa new-model</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device(config)# aaa new-model</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Sets the parameters that restrict user access to a network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>aaa authorization network listname [method]</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies the following enrollment parameters of the CA:</td>
<td>enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url <a href="http://caserver.myexample.com">http://caserver.myexample.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- or-</td>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) The mode keyword specifies the registration authority (RA) mode, if your CA system provides an RA. By default, RA mode is disabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) The retry period keyword and minutes argument specifies the period, in minutes, in which the router waits before sending the CA another certificate request. Valid values are from 1 to 60. The default is 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) The retry count keyword and number argument specifies the number of times a router will resend a certificate request when it does not receive a response from the previous request. Valid values are from 1 to 100. The default is 10.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The url argument is the URL of the CA to which your router should send certificate requests.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>An IPv6 address can be added to the http: enrollment method. For example: http://[ipv6-address]:80. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in brackets in the URL.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) The pem keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) Checks the revocation status of a certificate.</td>
<td>revocation-check method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 8

**Example:**

Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit

Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

### Step 9

**authorization username subjectname**

**subjectname**

**Example:**

Device(config)# authorization username subjectname serialnumber

Sets parameters for the different certificate fields that are used to build the AAA username.

The *subjectname* argument can be any of the following:

- **all** — Entire distinguished name (subject name) of the certificate.
- **commonname** — Certification common name.
- **country** — Certificate country.
- **email** — Certificate e-mail.
- **ipaddress** — Certificate IP address.
- **locality** — Certificate locality.
- **organization** — Certificate organization.
- **organizationalunit** — Certificate organizational unit.
- **postalcode** — Certificate postal code.
- **serialnumber** — Certificate serial number.
- **state** — Certificate state field.
- **streetaddress** — Certificate street address.
- **title** — Certificate title.
- **unstructuredname** — Certificate unstructured name.

### Step 10

**authorization list listname**

**Example:**

Device(config)# authorization list maxaaa

Specifies the AAA authorization list.
### Troubleshooting Tips

To display debug messages for the trace of interaction (message type) between the CA and the router, use the `debug crypto pki transactions` command. (See the sample output, which shows a successful PKI integration with AAA server exchange and a failed PKI integration with AAA server exchange.)

#### Successful Exchange

```
Device# debug crypto pki transactions
Apr 22 23:15:03.695: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
Apr 22 23:15:03.955: CRYPTO_PKI: Certificate validated without revocation check
```

Each line that shows “CRYPTO_PKI_AAA” indicates the state of the AAA authorization checks. Each of the AAA AV pairs is indicated, and then the results of the authorization check are shown.

```
Apr 22 23:15:04.019: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: checking AAA authorization (ipsecaa_script_aalist, PKIAAA-L, <all>)
Apr 22 23:15:04.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-application" = "all")
Apr 22 23:15:04.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-trustpoint" = "CA1")
Apr 22 23:15:04.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-serial" = "15DE")
Apr 22 23:15:04.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: authorization passed
```

#### Failed Exchange

```
Device# debug crypto pki transactions
Apr 22 23:11:13.703: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: checking AAA authorization
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-application" = "all")
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-trustpoint" = "CA1")
Apr 22 23:11:14.203: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: parsed cert-lifetime-end as: 21:30:00
```

---

---
In the above failed exchange, the certificate has expired.

**Configuring a Revocation Mechanism for PKI Certificate Status Checking**

Perform this task to set up a CRL as the certificate revocation mechanism--CRLs or OCSP--that is used to check the status of certificates in a PKI.

**The revocation-check Command**

Use the **revocation-check** command to specify at least one method (OCSP, CRL, or skip the revocation check) that is to be used to ensure that the certificate of a peer has not been revoked. For multiple methods, the order in which the methods are applied is determined by the order specified via this command.

If your device does not have the applicable CRL and is unable to obtain one or if the OCSP server returns an error, your device will reject the peer’s certificate--unless you include the **none** keyword in your configuration. If the **none** keyword is configured, a revocation check will not be performed and the certificate will always be accepted.

**Nonces and Peer Communications with OCSP Servers**

When using OCSP, nonces, unique identifiers for OCSP requests, are sent by default during peer communications with your OCSP server. The use of nonces offers a more secure and reliable communication channel between the peer and OCSP server.

If your OCSP server does not support nonces, you may disable the sending of nonces. For more information, see your OCSP server documentation.

**Before you begin**

- Before issuing any client certificates, the appropriate settings on the server (such as setting the CDP) should be configured.

- When configuring an OCSP server to return the revocation status for a CA server, the OCSP server must be configured with an OCSP response signing certificate that is issued by that CA server. Ensure that the signing certificate is in the correct format, or the router will not accept the OCSP response. See your OCSP manual for additional information.

---

**Note**

- OCSP transports messages over HTTP, so there may be a time delay when you access the OCSP server.

- If the OCSP server depends on normal CRL processing to check revocation status, the same time delay that affects CRLs will also apply to OCSP.

---

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>crypto pki trustpoint name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint hazel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ocsp url url</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url <a href="http://ocsp-server">http://ocsp-server</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- or -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url <a href="http://10.10.10.1:80">http://10.10.10.1:80</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- or -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url http://[2001DB8:1::2]:80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>revocation-check method1 [method2 method3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check ocsp none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>ocsd disable-nonce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsd disable-nonce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays information about your certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show crypto pki certificates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# show crypto pki certificates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>Displays information about the trustpoint configured in router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show crypto pki trustpoints [status</td>
<td>label[status]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device# show crypto pki trustpoints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring Certificate Authorization and Revocation Settings**

Perform this task to specify a certificate-based ACL, to ignore revocation checks or expired certificates, to manually override the default CDP location, to manually override the OCSP server setting, to configure CRL caching, or to set session acceptance or rejection based on a certificate serial number, as appropriate.

**Configuring Certificate-Based ACLs to Ignore Revocation Checks**

To configure your router to use certificate-based ACLs to ignore revocation checks and expired certificates, perform the following steps:

• Identify an existing trustpoint or create a new trustpoint to be used when verifying the certificate of the peer. Authenticate the trustpoint if it has not already been authenticated. The router may enroll with this trustpoint if you want. Do not set optional CRLs for the trustpoint if you plan to use the `match certificate` command and `skip revocation-check` keyword.

• Determine the unique characteristics of the certificates that should not have their CRL checked and of the expired certificates that should be allowed.

• Define a certificate map to match the characteristics identified in the prior step.

• You can add the `match certificate` command and `skip revocation-check` keyword and the `match certificate command` and `allow expired-certificate` keyword to the trustpoint that was created or identified in the first step.

**Note**

Certificate maps are checked even if the peer’s public key is cached. For example, when the public key is cached by the peer, and a certificate map is added to the trustpoint to ban a certificate, the certificate map is effective. This prevents a client with the banned certificate, which was once connected in the past, from reconnecting.

**Manually Overriding CDPs in a Certificate**

Users can override the CDPs in a certificate with a manually configured CDP. Manually overriding the CDPs in a certificate can be advantageous when a particular server is unavailable for an extended period of time. The certificate’s CDPs can be replaced with a URL or directory specification without reissuing all of the certificates that contain the original CDP.
Manually Overriding the OCSP Server Setting in a Certificate

Administrators can override the OCSP server setting specified in the Authority Information Access (AIA) field of the client certificate or set by the issuing the `ocsp url` command. One or more OCSP servers may be manually specified, either per client certificate or per group of client certificates by the `match certificate override ocsp` command. The `match certificate override ocsp` command overrides the client certificate AIA field or the `ocsp url` command setting if a client certificate is successfully matched to a certificate map during the revocation check.

**Note**

Only one OCSP server can be specified per client certificate.

Configuring CRL Cache Control

By default, a new CRL will be downloaded after the currently cached CRL expires. Administrators can either configure the maximum amount of time in minutes a CRL remains in the cache by issuing the `crl cache delete-after` command or disable CRL caching by issuing the `crl cache none` command. Only the `crl-cache delete-after` command or the `crl-cache none` command may be specified. If both commands are entered for a trustpoint, the last command executed will take effect and a message will be displayed.

Neither the `crl-cache none` command nor the `crl-cache delete-after` command affects the currently cached CRL. If you configure the `crl-cache none` command, all CRLs downloaded after this command is issued will not be cached. If you configure the `crl-cache delete-after` command, the configured lifetime will only affect CRLs downloaded after this command is issued.

This functionality is useful when a CA issues CRLs with no expiration date or with expiration dates days or weeks ahead.

Configuring Certificate Serial Number Session Control

A certificate serial number can be specified to allow a certificate validation request to be accepted or rejected by the trustpoint for a session. A session may be rejected, depending on certificate serial number session control, even if a certificate is still valid. Certificate serial number session control may be configured by using either a certificate map with the `serial-number` field or an AAA attribute, with the `cert-serial-not` command.

Using certificate maps for session control allows an administrator to specify a single certificate serial number. Using the AAA attribute allows an administrator to specify one or more certificate serial numbers for session control.

**Before you begin**

- The trustpoint should be defined and authenticated before attaching certificate maps to the trustpoint.
- The certificate map must be configured before the CDP override feature can be enabled or the `serial-number` command is issued.
- The PKI and AAA server integration must be successfully completed to use AAA attributes as described in “PKI and AAA Server Integration for Certificate Status.”

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Certificate Serial Number Session Control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>- Enteryourpasswordifprompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong>  configure terminal</td>
<td>Entersglobalconfigurationmode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong>  crypto pki certificate map label sequence-number</td>
<td>Definesvaluesinacertificatethatshouldbematchedornotmatchedandentersca-certificate-mapconfigurationmode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# crypto pki certificate map Group 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong>  field-name match-criteria match-value</td>
<td>Specifiesoneormorecertificatefieldstogetherwiththeirmatchingcriteriaandthevalueto match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-certificate-map)# subject-name co MyExample</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**  
- Date field format is dd mm yyyy hh:mm:ss or mmm dd yyyy hh:mm:ss.  
- The **field-name** is one of the following case-insensitive name strings or a date:  
  - alt-subject-name  
  - expires-on  
  - issuer-name  
  - name  
  - serial-number  
  - subject-name  
  - unstructured-subject-name  
  - valid-start

- The **match-criteria** is one of the following logical operators:  
  - **co** — contains (valid only for name fields and serial number field)  
  - **eq** — equal (valid for name, serial number, and date fields)  
  - **ge** — greater than or equal (valid only for date fields)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• lt —less than (valid only for date fields)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• nc —does not contain (valid only for name fields and serial number field)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ne —not equal (valid for name, serial number, and date fields)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **match-values** is the name or date to test with the logical operator assigned by match-criteria.

**Note** Use this command only when setting up a certificate-based ACL—not when setting up a certificate-based ACL to ignore revocation checks or expired certificates.

---

**Step 5**

exit

Example:

Device(ca-certificate-map)# exit

Exits ca-certificate-map configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

**Step 6**

crypto pki trustpoint name

Example:

Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint Access2

Declares the trustpoint, given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.

**Step 7**

Do one of the following:

• crl-cache none

• crl-cache delete-after time

Example:

Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl-cache none

Example:

Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl-cache delete-after 20

(Optional) Disables CRL caching completely for all CRLs associated with the trustpoint.

The **crl-cache none** command does not affect any currently cached CRLs. All CRLs downloaded after this command is configured will not be cached.

(Optional) Specifies the maximum time CRLs will remain in the cache for all CRLs associated with the trustpoint.

• time —The amount of time in minutes before the CRL is deleted.

The **crl-cache delete-after** command does not affect any currently cached CRLs. The configured lifetime will only affect CRLs downloaded after this command is configured.

**Step 8**

match certificate certificate-map-label [allow expired-certificate | skip revocation-check | skip authorization-check]

(Optional) Associates the certificate-based ACL (that was defined via the **crypto pki certificate map** command) to a trustpoint.
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example:</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• certificate-map-label — Must match the label argument specified via the <code>crypto pki certificate map</code> command.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• allow-expired-certificate — Ignores expired certificates.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• skip revocation-check — Allows a trustpoint to enforce CRLs except for specific certificates.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• skip authorization-check — Skips the AAA check of a certificate when PKI integration with an AAA server is configured.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Optimal) Manually overrides the existing CDP entries for a certificate with a URL or directory specification.

• certificate-map-label — A user-specified label that must match the label argument specified in a previously defined `crypto pki certificate map` command.

• url — Specifies that the certificate’s CDPs will be overridden with an HTTP or LDAP URL.

• directory — Specifies that the certificate’s CDPs will be overridden with an LDAP directory specification.

• string — The URL or directory specification.

**Note**

Some applications may time-out before all CDPs have been tried and will report an error message. The error message will not affect the router, and the Cisco IOS software will continue attempting to retrieve a CRL until all CDPs have been tried.

### Step 9

**match certificate**  
**certificate-map-label**  
**override cdp**  
**[url | directory] string**

**Example:**

Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate Group1 override cdp url http://server.cisco.com

### Step 10

**match certificate**  
**certificate-map-label**  
**override ocsnp**  
**[trustpoint trustpoint-label]**  
**sequence-number url ocsnp-url**

**Example:**

Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate

(Optional) Specifies an OCSP server, either per client certificate or per group of client certificates, and may be issued more than once to specify additional OCSP servers and client certificate settings including alternative PKI hierarchies.
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| mycertmapname override ocsp trustpoint mytp 15 url http://192.0.2.2 | • certificate-map-label — The name of an existing certificate map.  
• trustpoint — The trustpoint to be used when validating the OCSP server certificate.  
• sequence-number — The order the match certificate override ocsp command statements apply to the certificate being verified. Matches are performed from the lowest sequence number to the highest sequence number. If more than one command is issued with the same sequence number, it overwrites the previous OCSP server override setting.  
• url — The URL of the OCSP server. |

When the certificate matches a configured certificate map, the AIA field of the client certificate and any previously issued `ocsp url` command settings are overwritten with the specified OCSP server.

If no map-based match occurs, one of the following two cases will continue to apply to the client certificate.

• If OCSP is specified as the revocation method, the AIA field value will continue to apply to the client certificate.

• If the `ocsp url` configuration exists, the `ocsp url` configuration settings will continue to apply to the client certificates.

### Examples

**Step 11**

**exit**

*Example:*

device(config)# exit

**Step 12**

**aaa new-model**

*Example:*

device(config)# aaa new-model

**Step 13**

**aaa attribute list list-name**

*Example:*

device(config)# aaa attribute list crl

(Optional) Enables the AAA access control model.

(Optional) Defines an AAA attribute list locally on a router and enters config-attr-list configuration mode.
### Configuring Certificate Serial Number Session Control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 14 | attribute type `{name}` `{value}` | (Optional) Defines an AAA attribute type that is to be added to an AAA attribute list locally on a router.  
To configure certificate serial number session control, an administrator may specify a specific certificate in the `value` field to be accepted or rejected based on its serial number where `name` is set to `cert-serial-not`. If the serial number of the certificate matches the serial number specified by the attribute type setting, the certificate will be rejected.  
For a full list of available AAA attribute types, execute the `show aaa attributes` command. |
|       | Example: | |
|       | Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type cert-serial-not 6C4A | |
| Step 15 | exit | Returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
|       | Example: | |
|       | Device(ca-trustpoint)# end | |
|       | Device(config-attr-list)# end | |
| Step 16 | show crypto pki certificates | (Optional) Displays the components of the certificates installed on the router if the CA certificate has been authenticated. |
|       | Example: | |
|       | Device# show crypto pki certificates | |

### Example

The following is a sample certificate. The OCSP-related extensions are shown using exclamation points.

Certificate:

Data:

- Version: v3
- Serial Number: 0x14
- Signature Algorithm: SHAwithRSA - 1.2.840.113549.1.1.4
- Issuer: CN=CA server, OU=PKI, O=Cisco Systems
- Validity:
  - Not Before: Thursday, August 8, 2002 4:38:05 PM PST
  - Not After: Tuesday, August 7, 2003 4:38:05 PM PST
- Subject: CN=OCSP server, OU=PKI, O=Cisco Systems
- Subject Public Key Info:
  - Algorithm: RSA - 1.2.840.113549.1.1.1
  - Public Key:
    - Exponent: 65537
    - Public Key Modulus: (2048 bits):
      - <snip>
- Extensions:
  - Identifier: Subject Key Identifier - 2.5.29.14
The following example shows an excerpt of the running configuration output when adding a **match certificate override ocs** command to the beginning of an existing sequence:

```
match certificate map3 override ocs 5 url http://192.0.2.3/
show running-configuration
```

The following example shows an excerpt of the running configuration output when an existing **match certificate override ocs** command is replaced and a trustpoint is specified to use an alternative PKI hierarchy:

```
match certificate map4 override ocs trustpoint tp4 10 url http://192.0.2.4/newvalue
show running-configuration
```

### Troubleshooting Tips

If you ignored revocation check or expired certificates, you should carefully check your configuration. Verify that the certificate map properly matches either the certificate or certificates that should be allowed or the AAA checks that should be skipped. In a controlled environment, try modifying the certificate map and determine what is not working as expected.
Configuring Certificate Chain Validation

Perform this task to configure the processing level for the certificate chain path of your peer certificates.

**Before you begin**

- The device must be enrolled in your PKI hierarchy.
- The appropriate key pair must be associated with the certificate.

**Note**

- A trustpoint associated with the root CA cannot be configured to be validated to the next level.

The `chain-validation` command is configured with the `continue` keyword for the trustpoint associated with the root CA, an error message will be displayed and the chain validation will revert to the default `chain-validation` command setting.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> crypto pki trustpointname</td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint ca-sub1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> chain-validation ({\text{stop}</td>
<td>\text{continue}} [\text{parent-trustpoint}])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue ca-sub1</td>
<td>• Use the <code>stop</code> keyword to specify that the certificate is already trusted. This is the default setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the <code>continue</code> keyword to specify that the that the subordinate CA certificate associated with the trustpoint must be validated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuration Examples for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

Configuration and Verification Examples for PKI AAA Authorization

This section provides configuration examples of PKI AAA authorizations:

Example: Device Configuration

The following `show running-config` command output shows the working configuration of a device that is set up to authorize VPN connections using the PKI Integration with AAA Server feature:

```
Device#show running-config
Building configuration...

! version 16.8

! hostname catxxxx

! aaa new-model

! aaa authentication login default group tacacs+

aaa authentication login no_tacacs enable

aaa authentication ppp default group tacacs+

aaa authorization exec ACSLab group tacacs+

aaa authorization network ACSLab group tacacs+

aaa accounting exec ACSLab start-stop group tacacs+

aaa accounting network default start-stop group ACSLab

aaa session-id common

! ip domain name example.com

! crypto pki trustpoint EM-CERT-SERV

enrollment url http://192.0.2.33:80

serial-number

! crl optional

rsakeypair STOREVPN 2048

auto-enroll

authorization list ACSLab

! crypto pki certificate chain EM-CERT-SERV

certificate 04

30820214 3082017D A0030201 02020104 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 04050030
```
Configuring Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

Example: Device Configuration

Security Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)
Example: Debug of a Successful PKI AAA Authorization

The following show debugging command output shows a successful authorization using the PKI Integration with AAA Server feature:

```
Device# show debugging

General OS:
  TACACS access control debugging is on
  AAA Authentication debugging is on
  AAA Authorization debugging is on

Cryptographic Subsystem:
  Crypto PKI Trans debugging is on

Device#
```

```
May 28 19:36:11.117: CRYPTO_PKI: Trust-Point EM-CERT-SERV picked up
May 28 19:36:12.789: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
May 28 19:36:12.813: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: checking AAA authorization (ACSLab, POD5.example.com, <all>)
May 28 19:36:12.813: AAA/BIND(00000042): Bind i/f
May 28 19:36:12.813: AAA/AUTHOR (0x42): Pick method list 'ACSLab'
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: processing authorization request id 66
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Protocol set to None ......Skipping
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Sending AV service=pki
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Authorization request created for 66(POD5.example.com)
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Using server 192.0.2.55
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS(00000042)/0/NB_WAIT/203A4628: Started 5 sec timeout
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS(00000042)/0/NB_WAIT: wrote entire 46 bytes request
May 28 19:36:12.813: TPLUS: Would block while reading pak header
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/READ: read entire 12 header bytes (expect 27 bytes)
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/READ: read entire 39 bytes response
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS(00000042)/0/203A4628: Processing the reply packet
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS: Processed AV cert-application=all
May 28 19:36:12.817: TPLUS: received authorization response for 66: PASS
May 28 19:36:12.817: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: reply attribute ("cert-application" = "all")
May 28 19:36:12.817: CRYPTO_PKI_AAA: authorization passed
```
Example: Debug of a Failed PKI AAA Authorization

The following `show debug` command output shows that the device is not authorized to connect using VPN. The messages are typical of those that you might see in such a situation.

In this example, the peer username was configured as not authorized, by moving the username to a Cisco Secure ACS group called VPN_Disabled in Cisco Secure ACS. The device, device9.example.com, has been configured to check with a Cisco Secure ACS AAA server prior to establishing a VPN connection to any peer.

```
Device# show debugging

General OS:
  TACACS access control debugging is on
  AAA Authentication debugging is on
  AAA Authorization debugging is on

Cryptographic Subsystem:
  Crypto PKI Trans debugging is on

Device# show crypto isakmp sa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dst</th>
<th>src</th>
<th>state</th>
<th>conn-id</th>
<th>slot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>192.0.2.22</td>
<td>192.0.2.102</td>
<td>QM_IDLE</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Examples: Configuring a Revocation Mechanism

This section contains the following configuration examples that can be used when specifying a revocation mechanism for your PKI:

Example: Configuring an OCSP Server

The following example shows how to configure the router to use the OCSP server that is specified in the AIA extension of the certificate:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp revocation-check ocsp
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Specifying a CRL and Then an OCSP Server

The following example shows how to configure the router to download the CRL from the CDP. If the CRL is unavailable, the OCSP server that is specified in the AIA extension of the certificate will be used. If both options fail, certificate verification will also fail.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp revocation-check crl
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp revocation-check ocsp
Device(config)# end
```
Example: Specifying an OCSP Server

The following example shows how to configure your router to use the OCSP server at the HTTP URL “http://myocspserver:81.” If the server is down, the revocation check will be ignored.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url http://myocspserver:81
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check ocsp none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
```

Example: Disabling Nonces in Communications with the OCSP Server

The following example shows communications when a nonce, or a unique identifier for the OCSP request, is disabled for communications with the OCSP server:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint mytp
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp url http://myocspserver:81
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check ocsp none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ocsp disable-nonce
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
```

Example: Configuring a Hub Device at a Central Site for Certificate Revocation Checks

The following example shows a hub device at a central site that is providing connectivity for several branch offices to the central site.

The branch offices are also able to communicate directly with each other using additional IPSec tunnels between the branch offices.

The CA publishes CRLs on an HTTP server at the central site. The central site checks CRLs for each peer when setting up an IPSec tunnel with that peer.

The example does not show the IPSec configuration—only the PKI-related configuration is shown.

**Home Office Hub Configuration**

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# fqdn none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Central VPN Gateway
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
```

**Central Site Hub Device**

```
Device# show crypto ca certificate
Certificate
  Status: Available
```
Example: Configuring a Hub Device at a Central Site for Certificate Revocation Checks

Certificate Serial Number: 2F62BE14000000000CA0
Certificate Usage: General Purpose
Issuer:
  cn=Central Certificate Authority
  o=Home Office Inc
Subject:
  Name: Central VPN Gateway
  cn=Central VPN Gateway
  o=Home Office Inc
CRL Distribution Points:
  http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
Validity Date:
  start date: 00:43:26 GMT Sep 26 2003
  end date: 00:53:26 GMT Sep 26 2004
  renew date: 00:00:00 GMT Jan 1 1970
Associated Trustpoints: VPN-GW
CA Certificate
Status: Available
Certificate Serial Number: 1244325DE0369880465F977A18F61CA8
Certificate Usage: Signature
Issuer:
  cn=Central Certificate Authority
  o=Home Office Inc
Subject:
  cn=Central Certificate Authority
  o=Home Office Inc
CRL Distribution Points:
  http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
Validity Date:
  start date: 22:19:29 GMT Oct 31 2002
  end date: 22:27:27 GMT Oct 31 2017
Associated Trustpoints: VPN-GW

Trustpoint on the Branch Office Device

Device＞enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(ca-trustpoint)# crypto pki trustpoint home-office
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Branch 1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end

A certificate map is entered on the branch office device.

branch1# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
branch1(config)# crypto pki certificate map central-site 10
branch1(ca-certificate-map)# end

The output from the show certificate command on the central site hub device shows that the certificate was issued by the following:

cn=Central Certificate Authority
o=Home Office Inc
These two lines are combined into one line using a comma (,) to separate them, and the original lines are added as the first criteria for a match.

Device(ca-certificate-map)# issuer-name co cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
! The above line wrapped but should be shown on one line with the line above it.

The same combination is done for the subject name from the certificate on the central site device (note that the line that begins with “Name:” is not part of the subject name and must be ignored when creating the certificate map criteria). This is the subject name to be used in the certificate map.

cn=Central VPN Gateway
o=Home Office Inc

Device(ca-certificate-map)# subject-name eq cn=central vpn gateway, o=home office inc

Now the certificate map is added to the trustpoint that was configured earlier.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(ca-certificate-map)# crypto pki trustpoint home-office
Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate central-site skip revocation-check
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end

The configuration is checked (most of configuration is not shown).

Device# write term

! Many lines left out
.
.
.
crypto pki trustpoint home-office
enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
serial-number none
fqdn none
ip-address none
subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Branch 1
revocation-check crl
match certificate central-site skip revocation-check
!
crypto pki certificate map central-site 10
issuer-name co cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
subject-name eq cn=central vpn gateway, o=home office inc
! Many lines left out

Note that the issuer-name and subject-name lines have been reformatted to make them consistent for later matching with the certificate of the peer.

If the branch office is checking the AAA, the trustpoint will have lines similar to the following:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint home-office
Device(ca-trustpoint)# authorization list allow_list
Device(ca-trustpoint)# authorization username subjectname commonname
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
After the certificate map has been defined as was done above, the following command is added to the trustpoint to skip AAA checking for the central site hub.

```
Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate central-site skip authorization-check
```

In both cases, the branch site device has to establish an IPSec tunnel to the central site to check CRLs or to contact the AAA server. However, without the `match certificate` command and `central-site skip authorization-check` argument and keyword, the branch office cannot establish the tunnel until it has checked the CRL or the AAA server. (The tunnel will not be established unless the `match certificate` command and `central-site skip authorization-check` argument and keyword are used.)

The `match certificate` command and `allow expired-certificate` keyword would be used at the central site if the device at a branch site had an expired certificate and it had to establish a tunnel to the central site to renew its certificate.

**Trustpoint on the Central Site Device**

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# fqdn none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Central VPN Gateway
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
```

**Trustpoint on the Branch 1 Site Device**

```
Device# show crypto ca certificate
Certificate
  Status: Available
  Certificate Serial Number: 2F62BE140000000000CA0
  Certificate Usage: General Purpose
  Issuer:
    cn=Central Certificate Authority
    o=Home Office Inc
  Subject:
    Name: Branch 1 Site
    cn=Branch 1 Site
    o=Home Office Inc
  CRL Distribution Points:
    http://ca.home-office.com/CertEnroll/home-office.crl
  Validity Date:
    start date: 00:43:26 GMT Sep 26 2003
    end date: 00:53:26 GMT Oct 3 2003
    renew date: 00:00:00 GMT Jan 1 1970
  Associated Trustpoints: home-office
CA Certificate
  Status: Available
  Certificate Serial Number: 1244325DE0369880465F977A18F61CA8
  Certificate Usage: Signature
  Issuer:
    cn=Central Certificate Authority
    o=Home Office Inc
  Subject:
    cn=Central Certificate Authority
```
A certificate map is entered on the central site device.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Device(config)# crypto pki certificate map branch1 10
Device(ca-certificate-map)# issuer-name co cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
!The above line wrapped but should be part of the line above it.
Device(ca-certificate-map)# subject-name eq cn=Branch 1 Site,o=Home Office Inc
Device(ca-certificate-map)# end

The certificate map is added to the trustpoint.

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(ca-certificate-map)# crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
Device(ca-trustpoint)# match certificate branch1 allow expired-certificate
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit

Device (config) # exit

The configuration should be checked (most of the configuration is not shown).

Device# write term

!many lines left out
crypto pki trustpoint VPN-GW
enrollment url http://ca.home-office.com:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
serial-number none
fqdn none
ip-address none
subject-name o=Home Office Inc,cn=Central VPN Gateway
revocation-check crl
match certificate branch1 allow expired-certificate
!

crypto pki certificate map central-site 10
issuer-name co cn=Central Certificate Authority, ou=Home Office Inc
subject-name eq cn=central vpn gateway, o=home office inc
! many lines left out

The **match certificate** command and **branch1 allow expired-certificate** (argument and keyword) and the certificate map should be removed as soon as the branch device has a new certificate.

### Examples: Configuring Certificate Authorization and Revocation Settings

This section contains the following configuration examples that can be used when specifying a CRL cache control setting or certificate serial number session control:

#### Example: Configuring CRL Cache Control

The following example shows how to disable CRL caching for all CRLs associated with the CA1 trustpoint:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint CA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://CA1:80
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address FastEthernet0/0
Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl query ldap://ldap_CA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl cache none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end

The current CRL is still cached immediately after executing the example configuration shown above:

Device# show crypto pki crls

CRL Issuer Name:
   cn-name Cert Manager,ou=pki,o=example.com,c=US
LastUpdate: 18:57:42 GMT Nov 26 2005
NextUpdate: 22:57:42 GMT Nov 26 2005
Retrieved from CRL Distribution Point:
   ldap://ldap.example.com/CN=name Cert Manager,O=example.com

When the current CRL expires, a new CRL is then downloaded to the router at the next update. The crl-cache none command takes effect and all CRLs for the trustpoint are no longer cached; caching is disabled. You can verify that no CRL is cached by executing the show crypto pki crls command. No output will be shown because there are no CRLs cached.

The following example shows how to configure the maximum lifetime of 2 minutes for all CRLs associated with the CA1 trustpoint:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint CA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://CA1:80
Device(ca-trustpoint)# ip-address FastEthernet 0/0
Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl query ldap://ldap_CA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(ca-trustpoint)# crl cache delete-after 2
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end

The current CRL is still cached immediately after executing the example configuration above for setting the maximum lifetime of a CRL:

Device# show crypto pki crls

CRL Issuer Name:
   cn-name Cert Manager,ou=pki,o=example.com,c=US
LastUpdate: 18:57:42 GMT Nov 26 2005
NextUpdate: 22:57:42 GMT Nov 26 2005
Retrieved from CRL Distribution Point:
   ldap://ldap.example.com/CN=name Cert Manager,O=example.com

When the current CRL expires, a new CRL is downloaded to the router at the next update and the crl-cache delete-after command takes effect. This newly cached CRL and all subsequent CRLs will be deleted after a maximum lifetime of 2 minutes.

You can verify that the CRL will be cached for 2 minutes by executing the show crypto pki crls command. Note that the NextUpdate time is 2 minutes after the LastUpdate time.

Device# show crypto pki crls

CRL Issuer Name:
   cn-name Cert Manager,ou=pki,o=example.com,c=US
LastUpdate: 22:57:42 GMT Nov 26 2005
**Example: Configuring Certificate Serial Number Session Control**

The following example shows the configuration of certificate serial number session control using a certificate map for the CA1 trustpoint:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint CA1
Device(config-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://CA1
Device(config-trustpoint)# chain-validation stop
Device(config-trustpoint)# crl query ldap://ldap_server
Device(config-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(config-trustpoint)# match certificate crl
Device(config-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# crypto pki certificate map crl 10
Device(config-certificate-map)# serial-number co 279d
Device(config-certificate-map)# end
```

---

**Note**

If the **match-criteria** value is set to **eq** (equal) instead of **co** (contains), the serial number must match the certificate map serial number exactly, including any spaces.

The following example shows the configuration of certificate serial number session control using AAA attributes. In this case, all valid certificates will be accepted if the certificate does not have the serial number “4ACA.”

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint CA1
Device(config-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://CA1
Device(config-trustpoint)# ip-address FastEthernet0/0
Device(config-trustpoint)# crl query ldap://ldap_CA1
Device(config-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
Device(config-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa attribute list crl
Device(config-attr-list)# attribute-type aaa-cert-serial-not 4ACA
Device(config-attr-list)# end
```

The server log shows that the certificate with the serial number “4ACA” was rejected. The certificate rejection is shown using exclamation points.

```
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: Trust-Point CA1 picked up
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: locked trustpoint CA1, refcount is 1
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: unlocked trustpoint CA1, refcount is 0
Dec 3 04:24:39.051: CRYPTO_PKI: locked trustpoint CA1, refcount is 1
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: validation path has 1 certs
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: Found a issuer match
Dec 3 04:24:39.135: CRYPTO_PKI: Using CA1 to validate certificate
```
Examples: Configuring Certificate Chain Validation

This section contains the following configuration examples that can be used to specify the level of certificate chain processing for your device certificates:

Configuring Certificate Chain Validation from Peer to Root CA

In the following configuration example, all of the certificates will be validated—the peer, SubCA11, SubCA1, and RootCA certificates.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint RootCA
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation stop
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair RootCA
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint SubCA1
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue RootCA
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair SubCA1
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint SubCA11
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue SubCA1
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair SubCA11
Device(config-ca-trustpoint)# end
```
Configuring Certificate Chain Validation from Peer to Subordinate CA

In the following configuration example, the following certificates will be validated--the peer and SubCA1 certificates.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint RootCA
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation stop
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair RootCA
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint SubCA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue RootCA
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair SubCA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint SubCA11
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue SubCA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair SubCA11
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
```

Configuring Certificate Chain Validation Through a Gap

In the following configuration example, SubCA1 is not in the configured Cisco IOS hierarchy but is expected to have been supplied in the certificate chain presented by the peer.

If the peer supplies the SubCA1 certificate in the presented certificate chain, the following certificates will be validated--the peer, SubCA11, and SubCA1 certificates.

If the peer does not supply the SubCA1 certificate in the presented certificate chain, the chain validation will fail.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint RootCA
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation stop
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair RootCA
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit
Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint SubCA11
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment terminal
Device(ca-trustpoint)# chain-validation continue SubCA1
Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none
Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair SubCA11
Device(ca-trustpoint)# end
```

Feature History for Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.
Certificates contain several fields that are used to determine whether a device or user is authorized to perform a specified action. Certificate-based ACLs also help determine when PKI components such as revocation, authorization, or a trustpoint should be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE</td>
<td>Authorization and Revocation of Certificates in a PKI</td>
<td>Certificates contain several fields that are used to determine whether a device or user is authorized to perform a specified action. Certificate-based ACLs also help determine when PKI components such as revocation, authorization, or a trustpoint should be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn).
CHAPTER 33

Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

The Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority feature allows the IP address of an interface to be specified and used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint when a designated trustpoint has been configured.

- Information About Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 641
- How to Configure Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 642
- Configuration Examples for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 644
- Feature History for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority, on page 645

Information About Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

Certificates That Identify an Entity

Certificates can be used to identify an entity. A trusted server, known as the certification authority (CA), issues the certificate to the entity after determining the identity of the entity. A device that is running Cisco IOS XE software obtains its certificate by making a network connection to the CA. Using the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP), the device transmits its certificate request to the CA and receives the granted certificate. The device obtains the certificate of the CA in the same manner using SCEP. When validating a certificate from a remote device, the device may again contact the CA or a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) or HTTP server to determine whether the certificate of the remote device has been revoked. (This process is known as checking the certificate revocation list [CRL].)

In some configurations, the device may make the outgoing TCP connection using an interface that does not have a valid or IP address that can be routed. The user must specify that the address of a different interface be used as the source IP address for the outgoing connection. Cable modems are a specific example of this requirement because the outgoing cable interface (the RF interface) usually does not have an IP address that can be routed. However, the user interface (usually Ethernet) does have a valid IP address.
Source Interface for Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint

The `crypto ca trustpoint` command is used to specify a trustpoint. The `source interface` command is used along with the `crypto ca trustpoint` command to specify the address of the interface that is to be used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint.

Note

If the interface address is not specified using the `source interface` command, the address of the outgoing interface is used.

How to Configure Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

Configuring the Interface for All Outgoing TCP Connections Associated with a Trustpoint

Perform this task to configure the interface that you want to use as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with a trustpoint.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Declares the Certificate Authority (CA) that your device should use and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# crypto ca trustpoint ms-ca</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]</td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url <a href="http://caserver.myexample.com">http://caserver.myexample.com</a></td>
<td>Specifies the following enrollment parameters of the CA:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (Optional) The mode keyword specifies the registration authority (RA) mode, if your CA system provides an RA. By default, RA mode is disabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>- or-</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80</code></td>
<td>(Optional) The <code>retry period</code> keyword and <code>minutes</code> argument specifies the period, in minutes, in which the device waits before sending the CA another certificate request. Valid values are from 1 to 60. The default is 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) The <code>retry count</code> keyword and <code>number</code> argument specifies the number of times a device will resend a certificate request when it does not receive a response from the previous request. Valid values are from 1 to 100. The default is 10.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) The <code>url</code> argument is the URL of the CA to which your device should send certificate requests.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) The <code>pem</code> keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>source interface</code> <code>interface-address</code></td>
<td>Interface to be used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(ca-trustpoint)# source interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0
```

**Step 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(ca-trustpoint)# exit
```

**Step 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>interface</code> <code>type</code> <code>slot</code> <code>/</code> <code>port</code></td>
<td>Configures an interface type and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
```

**Step 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>description</code> <code>string</code></td>
<td>Adds a description to an interface configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Device(config-if)# description inside interface
```

**Step 9**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ip address</code> <code>ip-address</code> <code>mask</code></td>
<td>Sets a primary or secondary IP address for an interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
```
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong> description string</td>
<td>Adds a description to an interface configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# description outside interface 10.1.1.205 255.255.255.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong> ip address ip-address mask</td>
<td>Sets a primary or secondary IP address for an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.2.2.205 255.255.255.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong> crypto map map-name</td>
<td>Applies a previously defined crypto map set to an interface and enters crypto map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# crypto map mymap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 15</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-crypto-map)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration Examples for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

#### Example: Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

In the following example, the device is located in a branch office. The device uses IPSec to communicate with the main office. GigabitEthernet 1/0/1 is the “outside” interface that connects to the ISP. GigabitEthernet
0/1/0 is the interface connected to the LAN of the branch office. To access the CA server located in the main office, the device must send its IP datagrams out interface Ethernet 1 (address 10.2.2.205) using the IPSec tunnel. Address 10.2.2.205 is assigned by the ISP. Address 10.2.2.205 is not a part of the branch office or main office.

The CA cannot access any address outside the company because of a firewall. The CA sees a message coming from 10.2.2.205 and cannot respond (that is, the CA does not know that the device is located in a branch office at address 10.1.1.1, which it is able to reach).

Adding the source interface command tells the device to use address 10.1.1.1 as the source address of the IP datagram that it sends to the CA. The CA is able to respond to 10.1.1.1.

This scenario is configured using the source interface command and the interface addresses as described above.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto ca trustpoint ms-ca
Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://ms-ca:80/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
Device(ca-trustpoint)# source interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0
Device(config)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0
description inside interface
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
description outside interface
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.2.2.205 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# crypto map main-office
Device(config-if)# end
```

Feature History for Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE</td>
<td>Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority</td>
<td>The Source Interface Selection for Outgoing Traffic with Certificate Authority feature allows you to specify that the address of an interface be used as the source address for all outgoing TCP connections associated with that trustpoint when a designated trustpoint has been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
CHAPTER 34

Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

The Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP feature allows you to configure a dedicated LDAP source interface IP address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details on Cisco Integrated Services Routers (ISR) Generation 2. The source interface address (the address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address) and VRF details are populated while creating a TCP connection between the Cisco ISR Generation 2 and the LDAP server. This module describes how to configure this feature.

- Information About Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 647
- How to Configure Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 648
- Configuration Examples for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 649
- Feature History for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP, on page 649

Information About Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP Overview

Prior to the introduction of the Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP feature, the source interface address cannot be specified in the source IP field of the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) query; instead the tunnel interface IP address was used in the source IP field.

The Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP feature helps you configure a dedicated LDAP source interface address on a Cisco device. The source interface address is configured on the Cisco device, and the device uses this interface address to originate all LDAP packets it sends to the LDAP server. The source interface address is also used for polling the end-server to ensure the reachability of the end-server.

The source interface IP (either an IPv4 or IPv6 address) address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details are populated in the LDAP query while creating a TCP connection between the Cisco device (client) and the LDAP server.

The VRF instance is configured on the Cisco device and VRF table ID details are set in the socket option before creating a TCP connection to allow multiple instances of a routing table to coexist on the same device at the same time. Because routing instances are independent of each other, the same or overlapping IP address can be used without conflict.
How to Configure Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

Configuring LDAP Source Interface and VRF

If you have configured the source interface address and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance under the `aaa group server ldap` command and in global configuration mode, the configuration under the `aaa group server ldap` command has the highest priority.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>✓ Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config)# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>aaa new-model</code></td>
<td>Enables the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config)# aaa new-model</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>aaa group server ldap group-name</code></td>
<td>Groups different Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) servers into distinct lists and methods and enters LDAP server-group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config)# aaa group server ldap ldap-server-group</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>`{ip</td>
<td>ipv6} ldap source-interface interface-type interface-number`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>`{ip</td>
<td>ipv6} vrf forwarding vrf-name`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip vrf forwarding cws-vrf</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td><code>server name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Device(config-ldap-sg)# server ldap-server</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Step 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exits LDAP server-group configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device(config-ldap-sg)# exit

---

**Step 9**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifies the source interface IP address in the LDAP packets.</td>
<td>{ip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device(config)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0 vrf cws-vrf-1

---

**Step 10**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device(config)# end

### Configuration Examples for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

#### Example: Configuring LDAP Source Interface and VRF

Device> enable
Device(config)# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# aaa group server ldap ldap-server-group
Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
Device(config-ldap-sg)# ip vrf forwarding cws-vrf
Device(config-ldap-sg)# server ldap-server
Device(config-ldap-sg)# exit
Device(config)# ip ldap source-interface gigabitethernet 0/1/0 vrf cws-vrf-1
Device(config)# end

### Feature History for Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>Source Interface and VRF Support in LDAP</td>
<td>The source interface, which can be an IPv4 or IPv6 interface, and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) details are populated while creating a TCP connection between a Cisco device and the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.
CHAPTER 35

Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP

- Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP, on page 651
- Information About Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP, on page 651
- LDAP Operations, on page 652
- How to Configure IPv6 Support for LDAP, on page 653
- Configuration Examples of IPv6 Support for LDAP, on page 658
- Additional References, on page 659
- Feature History for IPv6 Support for LDAP, on page 659

Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP

- Only bind, search, and compare operations are supported.
- The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) referrals are not supported.
- Unsolicited messages or notifications from LDAP server are not handled.

Information About Configuring IPv6 Support for LDAP

IPv6 Support for LDAP

To support Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) over IPv6, changes are made to authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) transactions in terms of authentication and authorization while communicating over an IPv6 network. In order to support LDAP over an IPv6 network, transport calls have been modified to support both IPv4 and IPv6 based on the server configuration.

Transport Layer Security

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data through privacy, authentication, and data integrity. It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys for clients to prove the identity. Certificates are issued by Certificate Authorities (CAs). Each certificate includes the name of the authority that issued it, the name of the entity to which the certificate was issued, the entity’s public key, and time stamps that indicate the certificate’s expiration date. TLS support for LDAP is mentioned in RFC 2830 as an extension to the LDAP protocol.
LDAP Operations

Bind

The bind operation is used to authenticate a user to the server. It is used to start a connection with the LDAP server. LDAP is a connection-oriented protocol. The client specifies the protocol version and the client authentication information. LDAP supports the following binds:

- Authenticated bind
- Anonymous bind

An authenticated bind is performed when a root distinguished name (DN) and password are available. In the absence of a root DN and password, an anonymous bind is performed. In LDAP deployments, the search operation is performed first and the bind operation later. This is because, if a password attribute is returned as part of the search operation, the password verification can be done locally on an LDAP client. Thus, there is no need to perform an extra bind operation. If a password attribute is not returned, the bind operation can be performed later. Another advantage of performing a search operation first and a bind operation later is that the DN received in the search result can be used as the user DN instead of forming a DN by prefixing the username (cn attribute) with the base DN. All entries stored in an LDAP server have a unique DN. The DN consists of two parts: the Relative Distinguished Name (RDN) and the location within the LDAP server where the record resides.

Most of the entries that you store in an LDAP server will have a name, and the name is frequently stored in the Common Name (cn) attribute. Because every object has a name, most objects you store in an LDAP will use their cn value as the basis for their RDN.

Compare

The compare operation is used to replace a bind request with a compare request for an authentication. The compare operation helps to maintain the initial bind parameters for the connection.

Search

A search operation is used to search the LDAP server. The client specifies the starting point (base DN) of the search, the search scope (either the object, its children, or the subtree rooted at the object), and a search filter.

For authorization requests, the search operation is directly performed without a bind operation. The LDAP server can be configured with certain privileges for the search operation to succeed. This privilege level is established with the bind operation.

An LDAP search operation can return multiple user entries for a specific user. In such cases, the LDAP client returns an appropriate error code to AAA. To avoid these errors, appropriate search filters that help to match a single entry must be configured.
How to Configure IPv6 Support for LDAP

Configuring Device-to-LDAP Server Communication

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) host is a multiuser system running LDAP server software, such as Active Directory (Microsoft) and OpenLDAP. Configuring device-to-LDAP server communication can have several components:

- Hostname or IP address
- Port number
- Timeout period
- Base distinguished name (DN)

To configuring Device-to-LDAP server communication, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>aaa new-model&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>ldap server name&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ldap server server1</td>
<td>Configures a device as an LDAP protocol and enters LDAP server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>ipv6 ipv6-address&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-ldap-server)# ipv6 2001:DB8:0:0:8:800</td>
<td>Specifies an IPv6 address to the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring LDAP Protocol Parameters

To configure LDAP protocol parameters, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ldap server name</td>
<td>Defines a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server and enters LDAP server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# ldap server server1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>bind authenticate root-dn password [0 string</td>
<td>Specifies a shared secret text string used between the device and an LDAP server. Use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7 string] string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request

To configure search and bind operations for an authentication request, perform this procedure:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-ldap-server)# bind authenticate root-dn &quot;cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=nac-bl2,dc=example,dc=com password&quot;</td>
<td>the 0 line option to configure an unencrypted shared secret. Use the 7 line option to configure an encrypted shared secret.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>search-filter user-object-type string</th>
<th>Specifies the search filter to be used in the search requests.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-ldap-server)# search-filter user-object-type string1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>base-dn string</th>
<th>Specifies the base distinguished name (DN) of the search.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-ldap-server)# base-dn &quot;dc=sns,dc=example,dc=com&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>mode secure [no-negotiation]</th>
<th>Configures LDAP to initiate the transport layer security (TLS) connection and specifies the secure mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-ldap-server)# mode secure no-negotiation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 9</th>
<th>secure cipher 3des-ede-cbc-sha</th>
<th>Specifies the ciphersuite in the case of a secure connection.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-ldap-server)# secure cipher 3des-ede-cbc-sha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 10</th>
<th>exit</th>
<th>Exits LDAP server configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-ldap-server)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring and Maintaining LDAP Scalability Enhancements

The following `show` and `debug` commands can be entered in any order.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Command or Action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defines a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server and enter LDAP server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configures the sequence of search and bind operations for an authentication request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replaces the bind request with the compare request for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exits LDAP server configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Example:**

- `configure terminal`
  - Device# configure terminal
- `aaa new-model`
  - Device(config)# aaa new-model
- `ldap server name` (where `name` is the name of the LDAP server)
  - Device(config)# ldap server server1
- `authentication bind-first`
  - Device(config-ldap-server)# authentication bind-first
- `authentication compare`
  - Device(config-ldap-server)# authentication compare
- `exit`
  - Device(config-ldap-server)# exit
Enter your password if prompted.

**Step 2**  
**configure terminal**

*Example:*

```
# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3**  
**clear ldap server**

Clears the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server of the TCP connection.

*Example:*

```
# clear ldap server
```

**Step 4**  
**debug ldap**

Displays information associated with LDAP.

*Example:*

```
# debug ldap
```

**Step 5**  
**show ldap server**

Displays the LDAP server state information and various other counters for the server.

*Example:*

```
# show ldap server
```

**Step 6**  
**show ldap attributes**

Displays information about default LDAP attribute mapping.

*Example:*

```
Device# show ldap attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LDAP Attribute</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>AAA Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airespaceBwDataBurstContract</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-data-bandwidth-burst-contr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userPassword</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceBwRealBurstContract</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-realtime-bandwidth-burst-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employeeType</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>employee-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceServiceType</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>service-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceAClName</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>bsn-acl-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priv-lvl</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>priv-lvl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memberOf</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>DN supplicant-group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cn</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceDSCP</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-dscp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policyTag</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>tag-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceQOSLevel</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-qos-level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespace8021PType</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-8021p-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceBwRealAveContract</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-realtime-bandwidth-average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceVlanInterfaceName</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>bsn-vlan-interface-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceVapId</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-wlan-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airespaceBwDataAveContract</td>
<td>Ulong</td>
<td>bsn-data-bandwidth-average-con</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sAMAccountName</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>sam-account-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meetingContactInfo</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>contact-info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Configuration Examples of IPv6 Support for LDAP

Example: Device-to-LDAP Server Communication

The following example shows how to create server group server1 and specify the IP address, transport port 200, and retransmit values:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# ldap server server1
Device(config-ldap-server)# ipv6 2001:DB8:0:0:8:800
Device(config-ldap-server)# transport port 200
Device(config-ldap-server)# timeout retransmit 20
Device(config-ldap-server)# exit
```

Example: LDAP Protocol Parameters

The following example shows how to configure Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) parameters:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# ldap server server1
Device(config-ldap-server)# bind authenticate root-dn "cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=nac-blr2,dc=example,dc=com" password
Device(config-ldap-server)# base-dn "dc=sns,dc=example,dc=com"
Device(config-ldap-server)# mode secure no-negotiation
Device(config-ldap-server)# secure cipher 3des-ede-cbc-sha
Device(config-ldap-server)# exit
```

Example: Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request

The following example shows how to configure the sequence of search and bind operations for an authentication request:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# aaa new-model
Device(config)# ldap server server1
Device(config-ldap-server)# authentication bind-first
Device(config-ldap-server)# authentication compare
Device(config-ldap-server)# exit
```
Example: Server Information from an LDAP Server

The following is sample output from an LDAP server:

```
Device# show ldap server all

Server Information for server1
--------------------------------------------
Server name : server1
Server IP : 2001:DB8:0:0:8:800
Server listening Port : 389
Connection status : DOWN
Root Bind status : No Bind
Server mode : Non-Secure
Cipher Suite : 0x00
Authentication Seq : Search first. Then Bind/Compare password next
Authentication Procedure : Bind with user password
Request timeout : 30

---------------------------------------------
* LDAP STATISTICS *
Total messages [Sent:0, Received:0]
Response delay(ms) [Average:0, Maximum:0]
Total search [Request:0, ResultEntry:0, ResultDone:0]
Total bind [Request:0, Response:0]
Total extended [Request:0, Response:0]
Total compare [Request:0, Response:0]
Search [Success:0, Failures:0]
Bind [Success:0, Failures:0]
Missing attrs in Entry [0]

--------------------------------------------
```

Additional References

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.</td>
<td>Command Reference (Catalyst 9600 Series Switches)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 4511</td>
<td>Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature History for IPv6 Support for LDAP

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.
These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1</td>
<td>IPv6 Support for LDAP</td>
<td>The IPv6 Support for LDAP feature describes IPv6 transport support for the LDAP protocol by introducing changes in authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) transactions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn.